

GUIDE

New Hello! ENGLISH

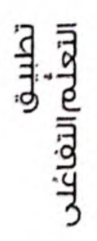
...rvisors



موقع التفوق
AltFwok

SECOND TERM

1st Prep. 2023





الصف الأول الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

UNIT 7

How was your weekend ?

SB pages 2-11 WB pages 70-76

Objectives

- **Reading :**

  A diary entry; Robinson Crusoe



- **Speaking :**

  Talking about your weekend; discussing types of music

- **Language :**

  Past simple time expressions; questions review; responding to past events with although or because

- **Life Skills :**

  Making decisions



- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

لإتقان الوحدة

- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف في نهاية كل وحدة والملح
- اختبارات شهرية داخل كتاب الشرح.
- جزء المتابعة اليومية وإتقان المفردات اللغوية (التسميع) ف

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 2 - 5 WB pages 70 & 71



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

aquarium (n)	متحف الأحياء المائية / حوض أسماك	whale (n)	حوت
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضي	statue (n)	تمثال
funfair (n)	مدينة الملاهي	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
planetarium (n)	القبة السماوية	area (n)	منطقة / مساحة
football stadium (n)	ستاد كرة القدم	exhibition (n)	معرض - عرض
bowling alley (n)	صالة البولينج	diary (n)	مفكرة (يوميات)
museum (n)	متحف	school uniform (n)	الزي المدرسي
big wheel (n)	العجلة الدوارة (في مدينة الملاهي)	school canteen (n)	مقصف المدرسة (كانتين)
nervous (adj)	متوتر / عصبي		



• Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى: اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية: تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

• يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

diary - funfair - planetarium - aquarium - stadium

1. I watched the final match between Egypt and Tunisia at the ....
2. You can see beautiful planets in Helwan ....
3. Children like to ride on the big wheel at the ....
4. I saw some colourful fish in the ....

CamScanner حة ضوئيا بـ

UNIT 7

Lesson 1
SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 70

closed (adj)	مغلق	arrive (d) (v)	يصل
football match (n)	مباراة كرة قدم	bowling (n)	البولينج (لعبة الكرات الخشبية)
dolphin (n)	دولفين	shark (n)	سمكة القرش

Lesson 2
SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 71

move (d) (v)	ينتقل - يتنقل	decision (n)	قرار
hope (d) (v)	يأمل - يتمنى	exciting (adj)	مثير
swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة	dark (adj) , (n)	مظلم / الظلام
friendly (adj)	ودود	challenge (d) (v) , (n)	يتحدى / تحدى
fantastic (adj)	رائع	solution (n)	حل
quite (adv)	الى حد ما - تماما	history (n)	تاريخ

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
know	يعرف	knew	known
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
leave	يغادر / يترك	left	left
teach	يعلم يدرس	taught	taught

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
nervous	متوتر / عصبى	quiet / relaxed	هادئ / مسترخ
heavy	ثقيل	light	خفيف
effective	فعال / مؤثر	ineffective	غير فعال / غير مؤثر
delicious	لذيذ	terrible	سئ / فظيع

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

aquarium	an indoor centre where you can look at sea animals and fish living in water	متحف الأحياء المائية

bowling alley	a place where you can go bowling	صالة بولينج
canteen	a dining room in an office, building or school	كانتين (مطعم) / (مقصف المدرسة)
funfair	a park with fun rides and games	مدينة ملاهى
museum	a building to keep and display important things from the past	متحف
planetarium	an indoor centre where you can learn about stars and planets	مرصد فلكى / قبة سماوية
sports centre	a place where you can do sports indoors	مركز رياضى
stadium	a place where you can play or watch sports matches	ستاد رياضى
nervous	worried or frightened about something	متوتر / عصبى

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

have a maths lesson	لديه حصة رياضيات	meet my best friend	أقابل صديقى المفضل
have a haircut	يحصل على قصة شعر	watch a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم
have a fantastic weekend	يقضى اجازة رائعة	do different things	يقوم بأشياء مختلفة
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	do the same things	يقوم بعمل نفس الأشياء
go on the big wheel	يركب العجلة الدوارة	do homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلى
go to bed early	يذهب للفراش مبكرا	do a sport	يمارس رياضة
go shopping	يتسوق	make a decision	يتخذ قرار
listen to music	يستمع للموسيقى	make things	يصنع أشياء

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 frightened of (inf. + ing) / noun خائف من

ex.: - He is frightened of the dark.
- She is frightened of crossing the road.

2 لاحظ أن جميع أسماء الرياضات لا تأخذ **(a , an , the)**

ex.: - SB I played tennis.
- Do you like football ?

أما إذا استخدمت تلك الألعاب الرياضية كصفات (يتبعها اسم) تستخدم (a, an , the) قبلها :

ex.: - SB I watched a football match yesterday.
- The tennis match I played yesterday was exciting. SB page 2

موقع التفوق AltFwak.com
ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

ملحوظة :

3 sport - sports

تستخدم كاسم بمعنى رياضة

- **sport (n)**
  ex.: - My favourite sport is football.

تستخدم كصفة بمعنى رياضي (متعلق بالأنشطة الرياضية)

- **sports (adj)**
  ex.: - Ali is at the sports centre.

SB page 5

4 exhibition - exhibit

عرض / معرض (للفنون أو التحف والتماثيل)

- **exhibition (n)**
  ex.: - I saw an exhibition of old statues.

شيء معروض (التحفة أو التمثال المعروض)

- **exhibit (n)**
  ex.: - I saw a lot of exhibits in the Egyptian Museum such as coins and statues.

SB page 2

5 go + (activity + ing)

لاحظ غالبًا ما يأتي هذا الفعل مع الأنشطة والرياضات التي تنتهي بـ (ing)

ex.: - I went bowling.
- She goes shopping every Friday.

SB pages 2 & 4

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk about	يتحدث عن	in order to + inf. ...	لكي ...
ride on the big wheel	يركب على العجلة الدوارة (في مدينة الملاهي)	quite nervous	متوتر إلى حد ما
		at the end of ...	في نهاية ...
look at the stars	ينظر إلى النجوم	It was a lot of fun !	كان ممتعًا جدًا !
learn a lot about	يتعلم الكثير عن	work with	يعمل / يتعامل مع
move to a new house	ينتقل إلى منزل جديد	decide to ...	يقرر أن ...
It took 3 hours to ...	استغرق ثلاث ساعات لـ ...	on the other side of the town	على الجانب الآخر من المدينة
drive from ... to ...	يقود من ... إلى ...	eat out	يتناول الطعام بالخارج (في مطعم)
the best solution for	أفضل حل لـ	like being outside	يحب أن يكون بالخارج
take the bus to the city	يستقل الأتوبيس إلى المدينة	come home	يعود إلى المنزل
aged five	بالغ من العمر خمس سنوات		

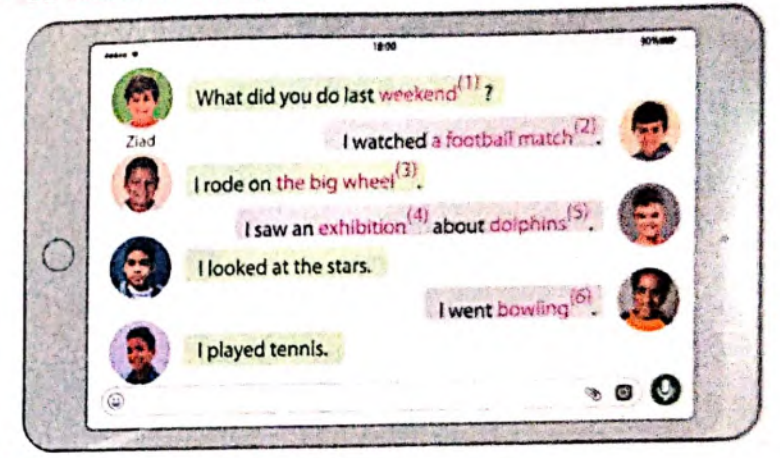


1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع — Pop Quiz

Reading

- **on Lesson 1 SB page 2**



Check Vocabulary

(1) عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | (2) مباراة كرة قدم | (3) العجلة الدوارة (في مدينة الملاهي) | (4) عرض | (5) الدلافين | (6) لعبة البولينج

- **on Lesson 2 SB page 4**

1 *Read Adam's diary(1). What do you think the word nervous(2) means and why does Adam feel this ?*



Sunday 8th May

Yesterday our family moved to(3) our new house in Alexandria. It took(4) three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مفكرة / يوميات | (2) متوتر / عصبي | (3) انتقل إلى | (4) استغرق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



Monday 9th May

This morning, Mum and I went shopping[1] to buy a new school uniform[2] for me. I hope students are friendly[3] in my new school!

Tuesday 10th May

Today I went to my new school. I was quite nervous, but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen[4].

Check Vocabulary

(1) ذهب للتسوق | (2) زي مدرسي | (3) ودود | (4) المقصف المدرسي (الكانتين)

• on Lesson 2 SB page 4

2 *Read another page from Adam's diary. What is great?*



Monday 16th May

What a fantastic[1] weekend! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! On Sunday, Mum helped me with my homework. Then Dad and I went to the sports centre[2]. It is great, there is a really big swimming pool[3].

Check Vocabulary

(1) رائع | (2) مركز رياضي | (3) حمام سباحة

• on Lesson 2 WB page 71





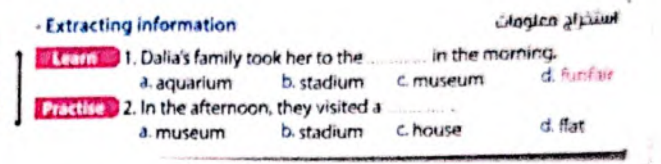
I had a fantastic weekend!
It was my friend Dalia's birthday[1] and her family took us to some exciting[2] places. In the morning, we went to the funfair[3]. I didn't go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عيد ميلاد | (2) ممتعة - شيقة | (3) مدينة ملاهي

In the afternoon, we visited a museum[4]. We saw some very old statues[5]. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history[6]! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late[7]!

(4) متحف
(5) تماثيل قديمة جدا
(6) تاريخ
(7) متأخر جدا



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Extracting information — استخراج معلومات

Learn 1. Dalia's family took her to the .... in the morning.
a. aquarium b. stadium c. museum d. funfair

Practise 2. In the afternoon, they visited a ....
a. museum b. stadium c. house d. flat

• on Lesson 2 WB page 71

Dad likes sports. He is very good at swimming. Mum loves cooking[1]. Her salads are delicious[2]! Ismail likes being outside[3] and he doesn't like the city. Ismail's sister is five. She likes making things[4].

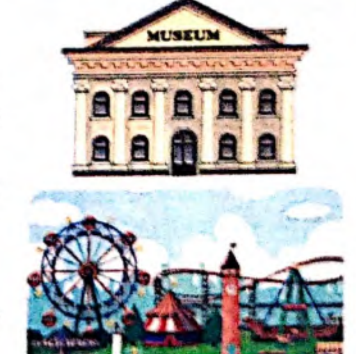
Check Vocabulary

(1) الطبخ | (2) لذيذ | (3) بالخارج | (4) صناعة الأشياء



Listening

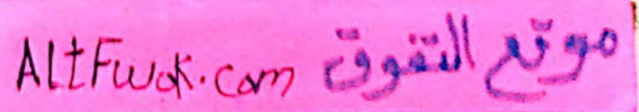
• on Lesson 1 SB page 3



Dina: It was my birthday last Saturday so I went to the museum with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues. We learned a lot. In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant[1]. I love my brother so we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday too!

Check Vocabulary

(1) مطعم



CamScanner ـب ضوئيا حة

UNIT 7

And two days ago, on Sunday we went to the planetarium [2] but it was closed [3]. So we took a bus to the aquarium [4] on the other side of [5] town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark [6]!



Check Vocabulary

(2) مبنى القبة السماوية | (3) مغلق | (4) متحف الأحياء المائية | (5) الجانب الآخر من | (6) سمكة قرش

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. I saw a / an .... of Islamic monuments in the Islamic Museum in Cairo.
   a. exhibition b. decision c. suggestion d. bowling
2. Salma is going to the .... She loves riding on the big wheel.
   a. funfair b. planetarium c. sports centre d. aquarium
3. You can see many ancient statues from the past in the Egyptian ....
   a. Hospital b. Centre c. Museum d. School
4. When you are worried or frightened of something, you are ....
   a. happy b. nervous c. pleased d. content

SB, WB & Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. SB I had a / an .... two weeks ago. My hair was so long.
   a. statue b. suggestion c. haircut d. activity
6. SB On Sunday, we went to the planetarium, but it was .... *(Sheikh Zayed - Giza 2022)*
   a. closed b. opened c. moved d. arrived
7. We learnt a lot about the Earth and the moon at the ....
   a. stadium b. aquarium c. planetarium d. funfair *(El Balyana - Sohag 2022)*
8. I write what happens to me every day in a .... *(Dokki - Giza 2022)*
   a. photo b. diary c. dairy d. search
9. I'm trying to find a / an .... to this problem. *(Abdeen - Cairo 2022)*
   a. alley b. exhibit c. solution d. fair



El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. At break, we have lunch together in the school ....
    a. laboratory b. music room c. library d. canteen
11. All pupils wear a blue .... with black shoes.
    a. form b. farm c. frame d. uniform

Definitions تعريفات

12. A/An .... is an indoor centre where you look at fish living in water.
    a. planetarium b. aquarium c. stadium d. funfair
13. A/An .... is a place where you can play or watch sports matches.
    a. aquarium b. museum c. planetarium d. stadium

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Samar, ... thirteen, is in prep one this year.
    a. age b. aging c. aged d. ages
15. I .... shopping yesterday morning. I bought a lot of groceries بقالة.
    a. had b. took c. went d. gave

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Talking about your weekend الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك

Stimulus 	Response 
• When did you go to the funfair ? - متى ذهبت إلى مدينة الملاهى ؟	- I went to the funfair last Saturday at 8 o'clock. ذهبت إلى مدينة الملاهى السبت الماضى فى تمام الساعة الثامنة.
• Where did you go last Sunday morning ? - أين ذهبت صباح يوم الأحد الماضى ؟	- I went to the planetarium. ذهبت إلى مبنى القبة السماوية.
• Where did you have your dinner last Monday ? - أين تناولت العشاء يوم الاثنين الماضى ؟	- I had my dinner at a restaurant last Monday. تناولت العشاء يوم الاثنين الماضى فى مطعم.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

A visit you never forget

فى هذا الجزء، تتمكن من الكتابة عن زيارة لا تنسى حوالى ٥ جمل

1. Last weekend, I went bowling.
   ١. لعبت لعبة البولينج فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضى.
2. I rode on the big wheel. ٢. ركبت لعبة عجلة الملاهى الدوارة.

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

3. I saw an exhibition about dolphins. ٣. رأيت عرض عن الدرافيل
4. I had dinner in a restaurant. ٤. تناولت العشاء في مطعم
5. I went shopping to buy a new school uniform. ٥. ذهبت للتسوق لشراء زي مدرسي جديد.





Review on the Past Simple Tense مراجعة على زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

(a) Regular verbs : **(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :**

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

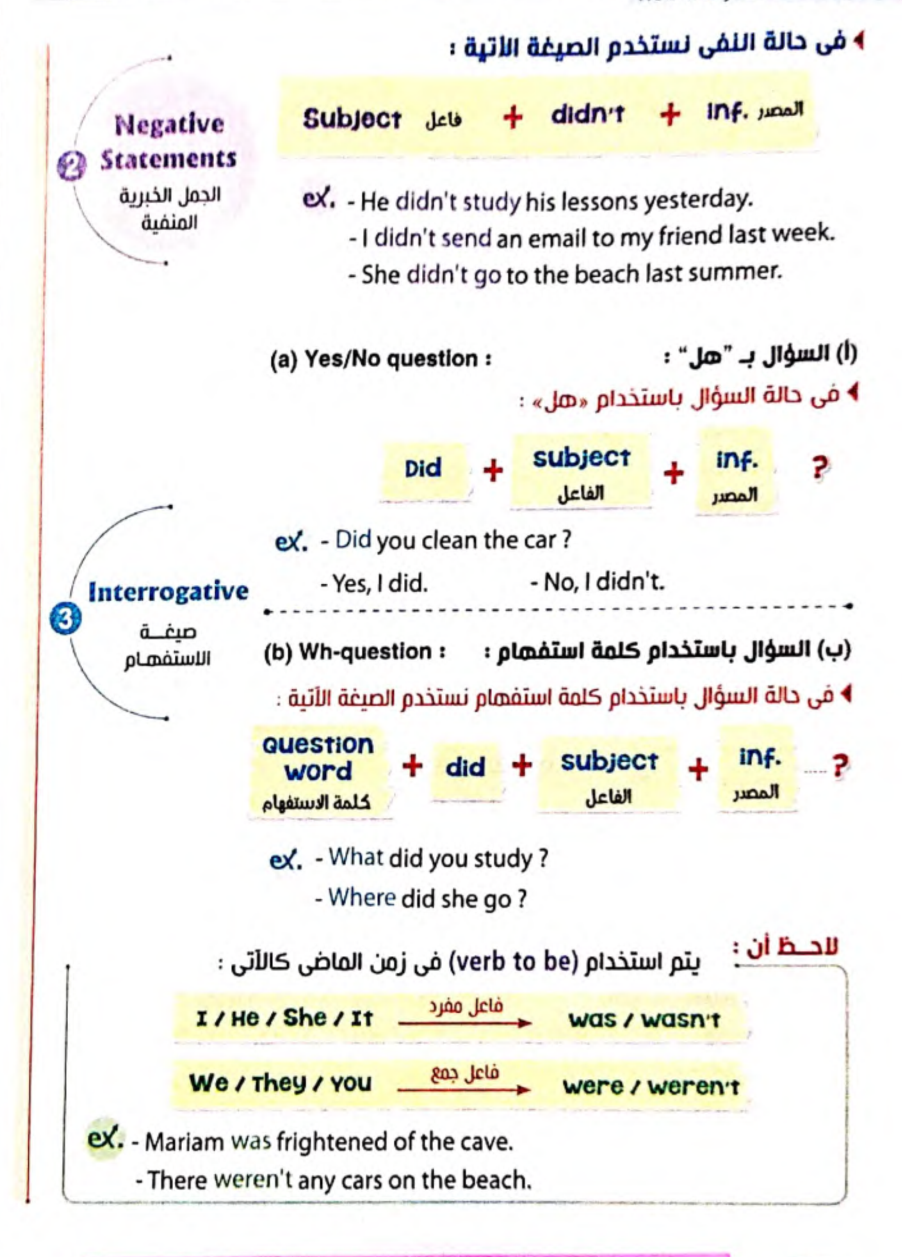
◄ الفعل المنتهي بـ :

invite → invited	+ d	e (بعض الأفعال)
carry → carried	+ ied	(حرف ساكن) + y
stay → stayed	+ ed	(حرف متحرك) + y
stop → stopped	يضاعف الحرف الأخير + ed	(حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)
visit → visited	+ ed	بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها

(b) Irregular verbs : **(ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :**

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة (تحفظ) كما هي مثل :

الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode



2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

◄ في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex. - He didn't study his lessons yesterday.
- I didn't send an email to my friend last week.
- She didn't go to the beach last summer.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(a) Yes/No question : **(أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :**

◄ في حالة السؤال باستخدام «هل» :

Did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - Did you clean the car ?
- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

(b) Wh-question : **(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :**

◄ في حالة السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ..... ?

ex. - What did you study ?
- Where did she go ?

لاحظ أن : يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالآتي :

I / He / She / It — فاعل مفرد → was / wasn't

We / They / You — فاعل جمع → were / weren't

ex. - Mariam was frightened of the cave.
- There weren't any cars on the beach.

موقع التفوق AltFwk.com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى زمن الماضى

ex.: - Maha helped her mother with her work last night.

- She went to school two hours ago.

Past time expressions التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى

We use past time expressions to say when something happened

نستخدم التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى لنقول متى حدث شئ ما

in the past	فى الماضى
yesterday	أمس
this morning	هذا الصباح
in + سنة ماضية	فى + سنة ماضية
in October	فى شهر أكتوبر الماضى

last	year	السنة الماضية
	month	الشهر الماضى
	week	الأسبوع الماضى
	Tuesday	الثلاثاء الماضى
	night	الليلة

an hour	ago	منذ ساعة
three days		منذ ثلاثة أيام
six months		منذ ستة شهور
four years		منذ أربع سنوات

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB Yesterday, our family .... to our new house in Alexandria.
   a. moved b. moving c. are moved d. moves
2. SB How did you .... when you started a new school ?
   a. feels b. felt c. feel d. feeling
3. Khalid went to the park ten minutes .... *(ElRahmaniya - Beheira 2022/ Al Basateen - Cairo 2022)*
   a. since b. yet c. ago d. next
4. SB .... you go to the park ? - Yes, I did.
   a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Were

5. SB We .... lunch together in the school canteen this morning.
   a. is having b. having c. had d. has
6. How .... your weekend ? *(Al Salam - Cairo 2022)*
   a. did b. does c. was d. do
7. Samir .... a football match two days ago. *(El-Zaytoun - Cairo 2022)*
   a. watches b. watched c. watch d. is watching

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. I last .... my uncle and cousins in Cairo three weeks ago.
   a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting
9. Today is Sunday, so it .... Saturday yesterday.
   a. is b. was c. has d. were
10. Who did you .... last night ?
    a. sees b. seen c. saw d. see
11. My uncle .... his car in 2002.
    a. is buying b. buy c. buys d. bought

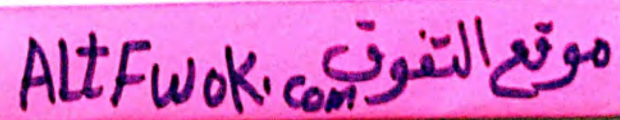
2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB I **sit** next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. (........)
2. SB This morning, mum and I **go** shopping. (........)
3. WB When **did** your last English lesson ? (........)
4. WB I didn't **went** on the big wheel last weekend. (........)
5. WB It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday **today**. (........)
6. SB What did you **did** last weekend ? (........)
7. Tamer **don't** happy yesterday. *(Kafr El Dawwar - Beheira 2022)* (........)
8. There **didn't** any cars in ancient Egypt. *(Tema - Sohag 2022)* (........)
9. How long did it **took** to complete the palace ? *(Edku - Beheira 2022)* (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. I had a maths lesson two days **last**. (........)
11. What places **do** you visit last weekend ? (........)
12. Last week, I **see** an exhibition about elephants. (........)



CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Dad likes ....
   a. sports b. salad c. cooking d. fishing
2. Mum's .... are delicious.
   a. foods b. cookies c. salads d. cakes
3. My .... likes making things.
   a. dad b. mum c. sister d. brother
4. Dad is good at ....
   a. swimming b. football c. riding d. basketball

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Asem is asking Omar about his visit to a sports centre last weekend.

Asem : Did you enjoy your last weekend ?
Omar : (1) ....
Asem : Where did you spend it ?
Omar : (2) ....
Asem : (3) .... ?
Omar : I went with my friends.
Asem : What did you enjoy doing there ?
Omar : (4) ....
Asem : (5) .... ?
Omar : Yes, there is a swimming pool.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB I hope students are .... in my new school !
   a. nervous b. friendly c. frightened d. ugly
2. There are very old .... at the Egyptian Museum.
   a. pyramids b. temples c. statues d. centres
3. Let's go to the .... I want to go on the big wheel. (Samalut - Minia 2022)
   a. aquarium b. stadium c. planetarium d. funfair

4. I will go to the .... to watch the football match.
   a. park b. stadium c. museum d. funfair
5. Adults usually .... good decisions.
   a. deliver b. spend c. make d. do
6. We buy candies and chips from the school ....
   a. box b. canteen c. factory d. library
7. A .... is a place where you can learn about stars and planets.
   a. funfair b. stadium c. sports centre d. planetarium
8. A year ago, my father .... me with him to visit our farm.
   a. takes b. took c. take d. will take
9. We .... in the swimming pool last month.
   a. swim b. swam
   c. was swimming d. are swimming
10. What did you .... for lunch yesterday ? (West Mansoura - Dakahlia 2022)
    a. ate b. eating c. eats d. eat

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Did he **hurts** himself ? (Abu Hummus - Beheira 2022) (........)
2. WB What year **is** it four years ago ? (........)
3. We climbed the mountain **next** month. (........)
4. I **have** a wonderful time at the zoo this morning. (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"How was your weekend ?"

....
....
....
....

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ـب ضوئيا ةحوسمم



LESSONS 3 & 4

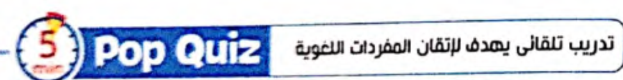
SB pages 6 : 8 WB pages 72 & 73

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

musician (n)	موسيقار	rocks (n)	صخور
island (n)	جزيرة	trumpet (n)	آلة البوق
sailor (n)	بحار	interview (ed) (v), (n)	يجرى حوار / مقابلة رسمية (شخصية)
storm (n)	عاصفة		
coconut (n)	جوز الهند	opinion (n)	رأى
cave (n)	كهف	interviewer (n)	محاور (من يقوم بتوجيه الأسئلة في المقابلة الشخصية)
jungle (n)	أدغال - غابة		

تنويه ▪ Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

rocks - coconut - sailor - storm - musician

1. The ship sank because of a big ....
2. I want to be a .... in a famous orchestra.
3. He climbed the .... to reach the top of the mountain.
4. She couldn't open the .... as it has hard shell.

Types of music

أنواع الموسيقى

jazz	موسيقى الجاز	opera	الأوبرا (ألحان ودوار)
classical	الموسيقى الكلاسيكية	pop	موسيقى البوب
rock	موسيقى الروك (الصاخبة)	traditional music	الموسيقى التقليدية

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 72

type (n)	نوع	share (d) (v)	يشارك
sound (ed) (v), (n)	يبدو - صوت (شئ)	stress (ed) (v)	يشدد الحرف (على كلمة أو مقطع)
voice (n)	صوت (بشرى)	band (n)	فرقة موسيقية

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 73

adventure (n)	مغامرة	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر / مطر
terrible (adj)	رهيب / فظيع	through (prep)	خلال
alone (adj), (adv)	وحيد / بمفرده	nut (n)	حبة مكسرات - بندق
entry (n)	دخول - مقدمة	glass (n)	زجاج

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
rise	يرتفع / يعلو	rose	risen
fall	يسقط / ينخفض	fell	fallen
sink	يغرق	sank	sunk
find	يجد	found	found
swim	يسبح	swam	swum

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
rise	يعلو	fall	ينخفض
end	نهاية	beginning / start	بداية
sink	يغرق	float	يطفو
nearby	قريب	far away	بعيد
dead	ميت	alive	على قيد الحياة / حى

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

alone	without any other people	بمفرده
classical music	a type of serious music played by people like Mozart and Bach	موسيقى كلاسيكية
coconut	a large hard nut that grows on a palm tree	جوز الهند

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

jazz	a type of music first played by black Americans	موسيقى الجاز
opera	a type of music where actors sing the words of a story	أوبرا
pop music	a type of popular music	موسيقى البوب
rock music	a type of popular music usually played with electric guitars	موسيقى الروك
sailor	a person who sails or works on a boat or a ship	بحار
sink	go down into water	يغوص (الأشياء)
terrible	very bad	رهيب / فظيع
traditional	using ideas or ways that people first used a long time ago	تقليدى

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 learn - teach يتعلم

- learn (v) to + inf. / noun.
  - ex.: - He learned to play the piano.
  - - He learns English at school.
- teach (v) يُعلم - يُدرس
  1. teach + (noun) اسم
  - ex.: - He teaches maths at Cairo Prep School.
  2. teach + (obj) مفعول to + inf. / how to + inf.
  - ex.: - He teaches me to play the piano.
  - - He teaches me how to play the piano. *SB page 6*

2 جميع الآلات الموسيقية تُسبق بـ the بعد الفعل play بمعنى يعزف.

- ex.: - SB He learned to play the piano when he was 8. *SB page 6*

3 What kind ... ? = What type ... ? ما نوع ... ؟

- ex.: - SB What type of music do you like ? *SB page 6*

4 alone – lonely

- alone (adv) بمفرده
  - ex.: - His wife died and he lived alone.
- lonely (adj) وحيد
  - ex.: - I feel lonely. *SB page 8*

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

an interview with ...	مقابلة شخصية مع ...	on the beach	على الشاطئ
write down	يدون (ملاحظات)	walk along	يمشي باستقامة / بطول ...
in each question	في كل سؤال	walk through	يمشي خلال
on the island	على الجزيرة	start with	يبدأ بـ
share ... with	يتشارك .. مع	write a diary	يكتب يوميات
have different opinions about	لديه آراء مختلفة عن	write songs	يؤلف أغاني
go down into	ينخفض / يهبط إلى	sleep on a bed	ينام في الفراش
it is good for you	إنه جيد بالنسبة لك	without any people	بدون أي أشخاص
it is difficult to + inf.	إنه من الصعب أن ...	want to + inf.	يريد أن ...
What happened .... ?	ماذا حدث	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
remember to + inf.	يتذكر أن ...	look for	يبحث عن
make sure	يتأكد	work on a boat	يعمل على متن قارب

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz



- on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Listen to an interview with the musician Marvin Allstar.

Interviewer : Marvin Allstar is a famous(1) musician(2). He writes songs and plays in a band(3). Hello, Marvin, what type of music do you like ?

Marvin : Hello. Well, I like jazz music(4) best. I play the trumpet(5) in a jazz band.

Interviewer : The trumpet ? When did you learn to play the trumpet ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور | (2) موسيقار | (3) فرقة موسيقية | (4) موسيقى الجاز | (5) آلة البوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Marvin : Oh, when I was about 12. I learned the piano first when I was four, and I moved onto[6] the trumpet at 12. I like the sound[7] of the trumpet.

Interviewer : Amazing! Do you like pop music[8] ?

Marvin : No, I don't, and I don't like rock music[9]. But I quite like traditional[10] music.

Check Vocabulary

انتقل إلى (6) | صوت (7) | موسيقى البوب (8) | موسيقى الروك (9) | تقليدى (10)

Videoscript on Lesson 3 SB page 6

There are lots of different styles[1] of music such as classical, jazz and opera. Did you know that people first watched the famous opera Aida, by Giuseppe Verdi, in Cairo in 1871 ?
You can often hear music at weddings[2] and other celebrations[3]. Egypt also has a lot of traditional music. You can hear it from Alexandria to Aswan.
In traditional music you can hear instruments[4] like drums and the ney[5].
The ney is a type of flute. Another traditional instrument is the qanun[6].
This is a string instrument[7] that you play with your fingers. You can also hear the violin ...
... and the oud[8]. The oud is similar to the guitar, but it usually has more strings.
You can also hear these instruments in many other countries.
Do you like music ? What styles of music do you like ?

Check Vocabulary

أنواع/أنماط (1) | حفلات الزفاف (2) | احتفالات (3) | آلات موسيقية (4) | آلة الناى (5) | آلة القانون (6) | آلة وترية (7) | آلة العود (8)



Reading

• on Lesson 4 SB page 8

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure[1] story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor[2]. One day his ship sank[3] because there was a really terrible storm[4]. Crusoe swam to a **nearby**[5] island, but there were no other people there.





Check Vocabulary

مغامرة (1) | بحار (2) | غرق / غاص (3) | عاصفة شديدة (4) | قريب (5)

Crusoe wrote a diary[6] of what happened to him on the island.



18th December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone[7]. This afternoon I found a **dead**[8] fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!

19th December

I found a coconut[9] on the beach today. It was delicious[10]. It rained last night and I was cold and wet[11], so today I went to look for a cave[12]. I want a warm[13] place to sleep. I walked through a jungle[14] and there were some rocks[15], but no caves.

20th December

I found a cave !!

مفكرة (يوميات) (6) | بمفرده (7) | ميت (8) | جوز الهند (9) | لذيذ (10) | مبتل (11) | كهف (12) | دافئ (13) | أدغال (غابة كثيفة) (14) | صخور (15)

- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context
تخمين معنى مفردة فى النص

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Learn 1. The underlined word "**nearby**" in text means not ....
a. alive b. terrible
c. far away d. nervous

Practise 2. The opposite of the underlined word "**dead**" is "............".
a. deadly b. alive
c. quiet d. nervous

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

➲ **Key vocabulary**

1. My uncle works as a / an .... on a big ship.
 a. sailor b. farmer c. architect d. carpenter
2. There was a really terrible .... and Crusoe's ship sank.
 a. farm b. jungle c. storm d. work

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

3. The lion is the king of the ....
a. island b. jungle c. cave d. storm

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. What's your .... of your new science teacher ? (... - South Sinai 2022)
a. text b. map c. discuss d. opinion

5. I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a good ....
a. term b. novel c. adventure d. party
(Hurghada - Red Sea 2022)

6. WB When something .... , it goes down into water.
a. sinks b. floats c. swims d. flies

7. WB I don't like this story. I thought the writing was ....
a. exciting b. terrible c. amazing d. funny
(East Tanta - Gharbia 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. Hadeer has a beautiful .... , she'll be a singer one day.
a. sight b. site c. voice d. sound

9. A: What .... of music do you like ? B: Jazz.
a. game b. sport c. type d. hobby

10. In our new house, I .... a room with my brother.
a. divide b. spend c. share d. walk

Definitions تعريفات

11. "Terrible" means very "........".
a. good b. relaxed c. bad d. relaxing

12. A/An .... is a piece of land in a sea, a river or an ocean.
a. valley b. island c. oasis d. mountain

13. A/An .... is the person who asks questions during an interview.
a. customer b. interviewee c. interviewer d. waiter

Language Notes, Expressions and Prepositions

14. When the car stopped, I walked .... the jungle for 3 hours.
a. through b. over c. during d. forward

15. Crusoe wrote a .... of what happened to him on the island.
a. dairy b. diary c. jungle d. type

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Asking about the type of music someone likes :
١. السؤال عن نوع الموسيقى التى يحبها شخص ما :

Questions	Answers
• What type of music do you like ? ما نوع الموسيقى التى تحبها ؟	- I like jazz, but I don't like opera. أحب موسيقى الجاز ولكن لا أحب موسيقى الأوبرا.
• When did you learn to play the piano? متى تعلمت العزف على البيانو ؟	- When I was ten. عندما كنت فى سن العاشرة.

2. Asking and answering questions about your activities and abilities :
٢. السؤال عن الأنشطة والقدرات الخاصة بك :



Questions	Answers
• When did you go to the sports centre ? متى ذهبت إلى المركز الرياضى ؟	- I went there four days ago. ذهبت إلى هناك منذ أربعة أيام.
• Did you go shopping at the weekend ? هل ذهبت للتسوق فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- Yes, I went with my mum. نعم، ذهبت مع والدتى.
• Can you play chess ? هل تستطيع لعب الشطرنج ؟	- No, I can't. لا، لا أستطيع.

3. Talking about what Robinson Crusoe can and can't do :
٣. التحدث عن ما يستطيع روبنسون كروزو فعله وما لا يستطيع فعله :

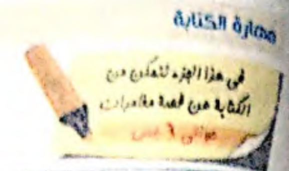
Questions	Answers
• What can Crusoe do ? ماذا يستطيع كروزو أن يفعل ؟	- He can walk on the beach. يستطيع التمشية على الشاطئ.
• What can't Crusoe do ? ما الذى لا يستطيع كروزو فعله ؟	- He can't sleep on a bed. لا يستطيع النوم على الفراش.

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق
CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة



An adventure story
قصة مغامرات

1. Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story. ١. روبنسون كروزو هى قصة مغامرات
2. Crusoe was a sailor. ٢. كان كروزو بحارا
3. One day there was a really terrible storm and his ship sank. ٣. فى أحد الأيام كانت هناك عاصفة شديدة جدا وأغرقت سفينته
4. He was alone on the island. ٤. كان وحيدًا على الجزيرة
5. Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to him on the island. ٥. كتب كروزو ما حدث له على الجزيرة فى يومياته
6. He found a cave on the island. ٦. وجد كهف على الجزيرة

III Language

Interrogative sentences

There are two types of questions : هناك نوعان من الأسئلة :

1 Yes / No questions → ❶ الأسئلة التى يجاب عليها بـ Yes أو No

- Yes / No questions start with an auxiliary verb (Do , Can , Have) or verb to be.
- تبدأ الأسئلة التى يجاب عنها بـ (Yes / No) بالفعل المساعد (Have , Do, Can) أو فعل ايكون
- The voice usually rises at the end of the question.
- يرتفع صوت موجه السؤال عادة فى نهاية السؤال.

"V. to Be" (Am - Is - Are - Was - Were) "V. to Have" (Have - Has - Had) "V. to Do" (Do - Does - Did) Will Can .... etc. الخ	+	subject الفاعل	+	verb الفعل	+	.... ?

ويمكن أن يجاب عن هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام الصيغة المختصرة وهى الضمير والفعل المساعد فقط.

- Remember : to answer with the same verb and the same tense.
- تذكر أن تجيب بنفس الفعل المساعد وبنفس الزمن.

ex. Did you go to the park ?
Yes, I did. — No, I didn't.
Have you got a phone ?
Yes, I have. — No, I haven't.
Can you speak English ?
Yes, I can. — No, I can't.
Are you happy ?
Yes, I am. — No, I am not.

ملحوظة : يمكن إستخدام "V. to Be" كفعل رئيسى فى السؤال دون أن يتبعه فعل آخر.

ex. : - Are you happy about the result نتيجة of the match ?
Yes, I am. — No, I'm not.

2 Wh- questions → ❷ الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام :

- Wh-questions start with a question word.
The voice usually falls at the end of the question.
- السؤال بكلمات استفهام يبدأ بكلمة استفهام و ينخفض عادة صوت موجه السؤال فى نهاية السؤال.

question word كلمة الاستفهام	+	"V. to Be" "V. to Have" "V. to Do" Will can .... etc. الخ	+	subject الفاعل	+	verb الفعل	+	.... ?

ex. - What type of music does he like ?
He likes pop music.
- When did you go to the museum ?
I went to the museum four days ago.

- عند تكوين صيغة الاستفهام فى جملة ليس بها فعل مساعد/ناقص نتبع الآتى :

إذا كان الفعل فى المضارع البسيط بدون (s) نستخدم ← do
إذا كان الفعل فى المضارع البسيط وينتهى بـ (s) أو (es) أو (ies) نستخدم ← does
إذا كان الفعل فى الماضى البسيط مع كل الضمائر نستخدم ← did



لاحظ تغيير الضمائر والأفعال عند التحويل من السؤال للجملة والعكس.

I, We ⇄ (تحول) you
my, our ⇄ (تحول) your
We are / I am ⇄ (تحول) are you
We were / I was ⇄ (تحول) were you

Question words كلمات الاستفهام

Whose ...?	ملك من...؟	How many ...?	كم للعدد...؟
When ...?	متى...؟	How high ...?	كم للارتفاع ...؟
What ...?	ما - ماذا ...؟	How deep ...?	كم للعمق ...؟
Who ...?	من (للفاعل العاقل) ...؟	How wide ...?	كم للعرض...؟
Whom ...?	من (للمفعول العاقل) ...؟	How far ...?	كم للبعد...؟
Why ...?	لماذا ...؟	How tall ...?	كم للطول...؟
Where ...?	أين ...؟	How heavy ...?	كم للوزن...؟
Which ...?	أيهما / أيهم ...؟	How long ...?	كم للمدة/للطول...؟
How ...?	كيف ...؟	How old ...?	كم للعمر...؟
How much ...?	كم للثمن / للكمية ...؟	How fast ...?	كم للسرعة...؟
How often ...?	كم مرة ...؟	Who ... with ?	مع من ...؟

Examples:

- What is he doing now? * He is reading a story.
- Who will you go to the club with? * I will go to the club with Ali.
- When did you see Nadia? * I saw Nadia last week.
- How does she go to school? * She goes to school by bus.
- Why do you go to the cinema? * I go to the cinema to see a film.
- How much did you pay for the watch? * I paid 200 pounds for it.
- How often do they go to the circus? * They go to the circus twice a month.
- Whose book is it? * It is mine.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والإمتحانات السابقة

1. SB What music .... he like? - He likes pop music. *(El Bagour - Menofia 2022)*
   a. did b. is c. do d. does

2. SB Did you .... to the park? *(Sedfa - Assiut 2022)*
   a. went b. go c. gone d. going
3. WB .... go shopping last weekend? *(Khanka - Qalyubia 2022)*
   a. Are you b. Do you c. Have you d. Did you
4. SB Have you got a new jacket? - No, I ....
   a. don't b. do c. haven't d. did
5. WB .... do you like fruit?
   a. Which b. Who c. What d. Why

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. How .... do you go swimming? - Twice a week.
   a. often b. much c. many d. old
7. .... there a cinema in your town?
   a. Is b. Are c. Were d. Did
8. .... watch do you like, the red or the blue?
   a. Why b. Where c. When d. Which
9. .... your friend got a computer?
   a. Has b. Have c. Is d. Does
10. .... shirt is that? - It's mine.
    a. When b. Where c. Whose d. Which

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والإمتحانات السابقة

1. SB A: Can she swim?
   B: Yes, <u>we</u> can. (..........)
2. WB A: <u>Where</u> do you come to school?
   B: By bus. (..........)
3. SB Do you <u>likes</u> jazz? *(Qena 2022)* (..........)
4. SB Are you happy? - No, I <u>am</u>. (..........)
5. WB Yes, I <u>haven't</u> got two sisters. (..........)
6. WB <u>Does</u> you play chess? (..........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

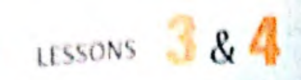
7. <u>Why</u> old are you? - 12 years old. (..........)
8. <u>Who's</u> car is yours? - The black one. (..........)
9. How <u>many</u> is the blue jacket? - 150 L.E. (..........)
10. <u>How</u> colour do you like? - Blue. (..........)

موقع التفوق AltFwak.com

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

General Exercises





LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Hani and Sara are talking about music.

Hani : Hi ! Sara. What type of music do you like ?

Sara : Hi ! Hani. (1) ……………………… .

Hani : Do you like another type of music ?

Sara : (2) ……………………… .

Hani : (3) ……………………… ?

Sara : Yes, I like listening to songs. And you ?

Hani : (4) ……………………… .

Sara : The piano ! (5) ……………………… ?

Hani : My dad taught me to play the piano.

Sara : That's fantastic !

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Robinson Crusoe" is a/an ……… story by Daniel Defoe. It's exciting.
   a. adventure b. comic c. historical d. horror *(Qena 2022)*
2. SB Jazz is a type of ……… .
   a. music b. subject c. material d. metal
3. There are a lot of ……… on this beach. It is dangerous to swim here.
   a. jungles b. trees c. rocks d. forests
4. WB Coconuts are large brown ……… .
   a. glasses b. pots c. nuts d. cells
5. Good students always ……… down the most important points in the lesson. *(El Qantara - Ismailia 2022)*
   a. give b. write c. eat d. cut
6. In my ………, Ali is a clever boy.
   a. think b. opinion c. address d. weekend
7. A/An ……… is someone who plays a musical instrument or write music.
   a. engineer b. farmer c. sailor d. musician

8. ……… are their future jobs ? - They will be doctors.
   a. Why b. Who c. What d. When
9. ……… spoke to the doctor yesterday ? - Sameh.
   a. What b. Who c. When d. Why
10. ……… there any banks in this street ? *(Misr El Qadima - Cairo 2022)*
   a. Was b. Is c. Are d. Does

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB He learned <u>play</u> the piano when he was four. (………)
2. WB <u>Do</u> you play chess ? - No, I can't. (………)
3. Did you <u>studied</u> hard yesterday ? (………)
4. Has your brother got a pencil case ? - Yes, he <u>does</u>. (………)

(Esna - Luxor 2022)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A story you read"

موقع التفوق AltFwok

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 9 & 10 WB pages 74 & 75



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	barbecue (n)	حفل شواء
olives (n)	زيتون	include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن
theatre (n)	مسرح	emotion (n)	عاطفة / انفعال
peppers (n)	فلفل	hotel (n)	فندق
hope (d) (v), (n)	يأمل - أمل	kind (n), (adj)	نوع- عطوف
thoughts (n)	أفكار		

تنويه ▪ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

concert - olives - kind - theatre - include

1. What .... of person is Heba ? – She's friendly.
2. I played the trumpet in the school ....
3. Mona went to the .... to watch a play.
4. We use .... to make a healthy oil.

Lesson 5 SB page 9 WB page 74

person (n)	شخص	writer (n)	كاتب
contrast (n)	تناقض	really (adv)	حقًا
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	team (n)	فريق

Lesson 6 SB page 10 WB page 75

writing tips (n)	نصائح / إرشادات للكتابة	journey (n)	رحلة طويلة
full stop (.)	نقطة	windy (adj)	عاصف
exclamation mark (!)	علامة التعجب	try (ied) (v)	يحاول / يجرب

interesting (adj)	رائع / شيق	tired (adj)	متعب
surprising (adj)	مدهش	doodles (n)	شخبطة (رسومات بسيطة)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
break	يكسر	broke	broken
show	يبين / يوضح	showed	shown
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
great / fantastic	رائع / عظيم	terrible	سيئ / فظيع
loud	عال الصوت	quiet	هادئ
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح



تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study this definition ادرس هذا التعريف

windy	when the wind blows, the weather is windy	عاصف

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 remember - remind

* **remember** يتذكر (من تلقاء نفسه)

ex.:- What do you remember about your weekend ?

* **remind (v)** يُذكر (شخص آخر بشئ ما)

ex.:- My mom reminded me of my homework. SB page 9

2 because لأن (تستخدم لإعطاء سبب أو مبرر لشئ ما)

ex.:- It was great because I went to the bowling alley.

3 Although بالرغم من / ومع ذلك (تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض)

ex.:- Although I was very hungry, I didn't want to eat another dead fish!

- The pizza was really good although it was cheap.

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

4 Ordinary & strong adjectives الصفات العادية والصفات القوية

Ordinary adjectives صفات ذات معنى عادى		Strong adjectives صفات ذات معنى قوى	
good	جيد	fantastic / wonderful	رائع
old	قديم	ancient	عتيق / قديم جدًا
small	صغير الحجم	tiny	ضئيل الحجم
tired	متعب	exhausted	منهك
bad	سيئ	terrible	فظيع / سيئ جدًا

لاحظ أن : الصفات القوية لا يمكن أن تسبق بـ (very) فى حين أنها يمكن أن تسبق بـ (really).

- It was very terrible. (X) - It was really terrible. (√) *SB page 9*

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do maths homework	يؤدى واجب مادة الرياضيات	have a barbecue	يقيم حفل شواء فى الهواء الطلق
stay on the beach	يبقى / يمكث على الشاطئ		
take a selfie	يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية للهاتف المحمول	plan to	يخطط لـ
		happy about	سعيد بشأن
give a reason for	يعطى سببًا لـ / يبرر	get in	يدخل
look around	يتجول / يلقى نظرة	get a ticket for	يحصل على تذكرة لـ
go on holiday	يذهب فى أجازة	stop working	يتوقف عن العمل

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع **Pop Quiz**



- on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Listen to three people talking about their weekend. Match the person to the photos.



c

Narrator : One
Woman : Hi, Lina. How was your weekend ?
Lina : Oh, it was terrible.
Woman : Oh dear, what happened ?
Lina : I watched a football match at the stadium(1). It was terrible because my team(2) lost(3) 5 - 2. Then I took a selfie(4) but I dropped my mobile phone and it broke.
Woman : Oh dear !
Narrator : Two

b

Man : Hi Hisham. How was your weekend ?
Hisham : It was great because I went to the bowling alley with my cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with olives(5) and pepper(6). The pizza was really good, although it was expensive.

a

Narrator : Three
Woman 2 : Hi Judy. How was your weekend ?
Judy : It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots of homework. But I went to the theatre(7) in the evening.

Check Vocabulary

(1) ستاد رياضى	(2) فريق	(3) خسر	(4) التقط صورة باستخدام الكاميرا الأمامية للهاتف
(5) زيتون	(6) فلفل	(7) مسرح	

- **Lesson 5 WB page 74**

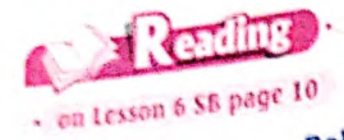
Narrator 1
Judy : I went to my cousin's house last weekend. It was fantastic because we played all my favourite games!

Narrator 2
Khaled : I read a book by my favourite writer last week. It was OK, although it was not her best book.

Narrator 3
Marwa : My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres ! It was terrible because there were so many cars.

Narrator 4
Hany : We read an English book at school today. It was very good, although I didn't understand every word!

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق
CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Dalia's diary

Sunday 13th August



Today was a terrible day[1] ! My baby brother woke me up[2] at 5 am ! I am so tired[3] now. I went to the kitchen[4] for breakfast but we had no milk or bread. So Mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed[5] because it was only 6:30 am !



Then I tried[6] to do my maths homework[7] but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working[8]. Although we planned to have a barbecue[9] in the afternoon, it was very windy[10]. We could not have it !

I hope[11] tomorrow is a better day !

Check Vocabulary

(1) يوم سيئ
(2) أيقظ
(3) مُتعب
(4) ذهب إلى المطبخ
(5) مغلق
(6) حاولت
(7) عمل واجب الرياضيات
(8) توقف عن العمل
(9) حفل شواء
(10) عاصف
(11) يتمنى

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking questions. مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. Do you think that Dalia finished her maths homework ? Why ?

- I don't think so, because her laptop stopped working.

Practise 2. Why do you think Dalia's day was terrible ?

....

AlTFwok.com موقع التفوق

on Lesson 6 WB page 75

Saturday 30th July



Today was a fantastic day. First, I got up at 5 am and had breakfast. Then I got in[1] the car with my family and we drove to Siwa. Although it was a very long journey.

I enjoyed reading my favourite book in the car. We arrived very late but it is a beautiful place. We planned to look around[2], but we stayed in[3] the hotel because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting.

Important Expressions or prepositions

(1) يدخل (2) يتجول (3) مكث في

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. My mother puts .... on food to make it tasty.
   a. peppers b. papers c. ice d. oil
2. Last summer, we stayed in a nice .... in Hurghada.
   a. funfair b. hotel c. theatre d. concert
3. His head is full of good .... about life.
   a. thoughts b. stones c. eyes d. books
4. .... is useful. We use it for its oil.
   a. Pepper b. Journey c. Olive d. Jam
5. We went to the .... where we enjoyed the new play.
   a. hotel b. funfair c. park d. theatre

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. SB My little brother .... me up at 5 a.m. (El Sharabia - Cairo 2022)
   a. drove b. gave c. played d. woke
7. WB I read a book by my favourite .... last week.
   a. reader b. leader c. writer d. lighter
   (Mailakdon gardens - El Fashn Beni Suef 2021)
8. SB What .... of person was Robinson Crusoe ? - Clever.
   a. kind b. time c. age d. size

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Our weekend was .... We didn't enjoy it.
   a. interesting b. great c. fantastic d. terrible
10. My bedroom .... a bed and a cupboard.
    a. includes b. does c. makes d. takes
11. After a hard day's work, he was ....
    a. relaxed b. tired c. excited d. interested

Definitions تعريفات

12. When the wind blows, the weather is ....
    a. funny b. nice c. windy d. good

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. I went .... a holiday with my family last week.
    a. out b. in c. on d. at
14. My laptop stopped .... , so I lost all my work.
    a. living b. working c. dying d. trying
15. We planned to .... a barbecue in the afternoon.
    a. do b. have c. work d. open
16. Dad got a ticket .... the final match yesterday.
    a. with b. about c. on d. for

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Asking and responding to past events السؤال والرد على أحداث ماضية

Questions	Response		الرد
How was your weekend? كيف كانت عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك؟	It was great/fantastic! كانت رائعة!	It was	(really / very) interesting. كانت (حقًا / جدًا) ممتعة.
	It was OK. كانت على ما يرام.	It was	(really / very) good. كانت (حقًا / جدًا) جيدة.
What was the (food) like? كيف كان الطعام؟	It was terrible! كان سيئًا جدًا!	It was	(really) bad. كان (حقًا) سيئًا.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم

1. You can end a sentence with an exclamation mark (!) to show strong emotion. ١. يمكنك أن تنهي الجملة بعلامة تعجب (!) لتبين أو توضح المشاعر القوية.
2. Use an exclamation mark (!) after interesting or surprising information. ٢. استخدم علامة التعجب (!) بعد معلومات تدعو للدهشة أو الإثارة.
3. A capital letter follows both a full stop (.) and an exclamation mark (!) ٣. بعد النقطة أو علامة التعجب. تبدأ الجملة بحرف كبير.

Writing a diary كتابة مدونة يومية

1. Use the past tense (most of the time). ١. استخدم زمن الماضي (معظم الوقت).
2. Use the 1st person (I or We). ٢. استخدم ضمائر المتكلم (أنا أو نحن).
3. Write things in the order that they happened. ٣. اكتب الأشياء بترتيب حدوثها.
4. Talk about your feelings, hopes, thoughts and opinions. ٤. تحدث عن مشاعرك. آمالك. أفكارك وآرائك.
5. Include pictures and doodles. ٥. ارفق صور و شخبطة (رسومات بسيطة)



Dalia's diary يوميات داليا

Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible day(1) ! My baby brother woke me up at 5 a.m(2) ! I am so tired now(3). I went to the kitchen for breakfast, but we had no milk or bread(4). So mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed because it was only 6:30 am(5) ! Then I tried to do my maths homework but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working(6). Although we planned to have a barbecue in the afternoon, it was very windy(7). We could not have it(8) !
I hope tomorrow is a better day(9) !

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق
ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

General Exercises



LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة لنصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Who drove you to the park ? - ....
   a. My father b. My brother c. My uncle d. My mother
2. When did you go to the park ? - On ....
   a. Monday b. Sunday c. Saturday d. Friday
3. My father took .... to go two kilometres !
   a. three hours b. two hours c. five hours d. an hour
4. It was .... because there were so many cars.
   a. great b. fantastic c. terrible d. quiet

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Ali are talking about music.

Ahmed : Do you like music, Ali ?

Ali : (1) ....

Ahmed : (2) .... ?

Ali : I like pop music.

Ahmed : (3) .... ?

Ali : Yes, I can play musical instruments.

Ahmed : What musical instrument do you play ?

Ali : (4) ....

Ahmed : Who taught you how to play it ?

Ali : (5) ....

(Tukh - Qalyubia 2022)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... oil is used in some meals.
   a. Olive b. Lemon c. Orange d. Apple
2. SB I .... tomorrow will be a better day.
   a. hate b. hope c. enjoy d. give

3. As it was ...., we couldn't stay on the beach.
   a. funny b. windy c. holiday d. nice
4. He is a .... man, so all people like him.
   a. difficult b. lazy c. scary d. kind
5. Yesterday, we had a / an .... at school.
   a. theatre b. stadium c. concert d. aquarium
6. WB We .... in the hotel because we were all very tired .
   a. took b. stayed c. thought d. wrote
7. Please, ... me of the next meeting.
   a. remember b. remind c. mind d. mend
8. It was OK on Sunday .... I had lots of homework.
   a. although b. then c. or d. for
9. The last weekend .... really fantastic.
   a. is b. was c. will be d. can be
10. It .... an hour to go to school yesterday. *(Qaha - Qalyubia 2022)*
    a. takes b. took c. taking d. take

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB How <u>is</u> your last weekend ? (........)
2. WB Have you <u>get</u> a new school bag ? (........)
3. <u>Tomorrow</u> was very hot. (........)
4. I last <u>go</u> to the concert in 2010. (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A fantastic day"

....

....

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Review on unit 7

SB page 11 WB page 76

Vocabulary		Language	Speaking
aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية	**1- Keywords** الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضي	1. Talking about your weekend الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك
sports centre	مركز رياضي	last → year / month / week / Tuesday	- When did you go to the funfair ?
funfair	مدينة الملاهي	an hour / three days / six months / four years → ago	- I went to the funfair last Sunday.
planetarium	القبة السماوية	in the past – في الماضي	2. Discussing types of music الحديث عن أنواع الموسيقى
football stadium	ستاد كرة قدم	yesterday – أمس	- What type of music do you like ?
bowling alley	صالة لعبة البولينج	this morning – هذا الصباح	- I like jazz but I don't like opera.
nervous	عصبي / متوتر	in (1999) – في عام (١٩٩٩)	
canteen	مقصف (كانتين)	in (October) – في شهر (أكتوبر)	
exhibition	معرض / عرض	• تستخدم هذه التعبيرات للدلالة على حدث وقع في الماضي وانتهى.	
jungle	أدغال (غابة كثيفة)	- Salma bought a new bag last year.	
musician	موسيقار	**2- Yes/No questions** الأسئلة التي يجاب عنها بـ No / Yes	
trumpet	آلة البوق	Did you go to the zoo ?	
cave	كهف	– Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.	
interview	مقابلة رسمية	Were you happy ?	
interviewer	محاور	– Yes, I was. - No, I wasn't.	
traditional	تقليدي	**3- Wh-questions** الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام	
adventure	مغامرة	What did you do yesterday ?	
sailor	بحّار	When did you go to the cinema ?	
concert	حفل موسيقي		
olives	زيتون		
peppers	فلفل		
barbecue	حفل شواء		

Keywords (Arabic glosses):

last	
year	السنة الماضية
month	الشهر الماضي
week	الأسبوع الماضي
Tuesday	الثلاثاء الماضي

ago	
an hour	منذ ساعة
three days	منذ ثلاثة أيام
six months	منذ ستة شهور
four years	منذ أربع سنوات

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

- تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Stimulus السؤال	Response الإجابة	Usage الاستخدام
1. What did you do last weekend ?	- I watched a football match.	الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك
2. How was your weekend ?	- It was a fantastic weekend.	
3. Where did you have your dinner last Monday ?	- I had my dinner at a restaurant last Monday.	
4. What type of music do you like ?	- I like pop music. It's fantastic.	السؤال عن نوع الموسيقى التي يحبها شخص ما
5. When did you learn to play the piano ?	- When I was nine.	

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية في الورقة الامتحانية (٢٨ جملة)

1 *"My last holiday"*

Last Sunday, I went to the museum[1]. I went with my mum and sister[2]. We saw some old statues[3]. We learned a lot there[4]. In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant[5]. Because I love my brother, we went to the restaurant[6]. We went there four months ago for his birthday too[7]! And two days ago, on Sunday we went to the planetarium but it was closed[8]. So we took a bus to the aquarium on the other side of the town[9]. I saw a shark[10]. It was fantastic[11].

موقع التفوق AltFwk.com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

8 "A terrible weekend I had"

Last weekend was terrible[12]. I woke up too late so I missed my favourite cartoon[13]. In the evening, I went to the stadium[14]. I watched a football match at the stadium[15]. It was terrible because my team lost 5 - 2[16]. Then I took a selfie, but I dropped my mobile phone and it broke down[17]. I was so sad[18]. I had to say sorry for my dad[19]. I started to save money to buy a new one[20].

9 "My last weekend"

Last week, I spent a really nice weekend[21]. I went to my friend's house and we played in the garden[22]. It was a lot of fun[23]. I went to the stadium with my father[24]. I watched a football match and my team won[25]. I took lots of selfies[26]. After the match, I went to a restaurant to have pizza with olives and peppers[27]. Next weekend, I will go to the museum or the funfair[28].



AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

Test on unit 7

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه: يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Mum doesn't like ....
   a. watching sports b. playing chess c. eating pizza d. driving cars
2. Dad likes ....
   a. English b. science c. history d. French
3. Nadia is .... years old.
   a. 15 b. 50 c. 5 d. 51
4. Dad is always ....
   a. sad b. happy c. angry d. busy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Heba and Hala are talking about music.

Heba : I like music very much, and you ?
Hala : (1) ....
Heba : (2) .... ?
Hala : I prefer jazz.
Heba : (3) .... ?
Hala : Hakim is my favourite singer.
Heba : Do you want to play music in a band ?
Hala : (4) ....
Heba : I will help you.
Hala : Really ! (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Cinderella is a fantastic imaginary خيالية children's story. After her mother's death, her father soon married another woman with three daughters. When she married Cinderella's father, Cinderella had to live

with them. The woman was so wicked شريرة and cruel. She made Cinderella work hard day and night and left her own daughters play. Her father was so weak and he couldn't **prevent** his new wife from being cruel to his sad daughter. Luckily the prince invited all girls to his palace to choose his future wife. All girls went in best clothes. Cinderella had nothing to fit يناسب the party. But with the help of a magician woman, she got the best dress, later on she married the prince.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. All girls went to the prince's palace so he can choose his future ....
   a. girl b. friend c. wife d. enemy
2. What do you think the word "**prevent**" means ?
   a. Stop b. Increase c. Open d. Choose
3. The underlined word "**She**" refers to ....
   a. Cinderella b. Cinderella's mother
   c. the new wife d. one of the girls

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
....
5. Do you think Cinderella lived happily after her father's marriages زواج ? Why ? Why not ?
....
6. How did Cinderella marry the prince ?
....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB When you put a stone in water, it .... (Nozha - Cairo 2022)
   a. floats b. thinks c. sinks d. thanks
2. I always .... selfies with my mobile.
   a. take b. buy c. sell d. read

3. We had a / an .... weekend. I broke my left arm.
   a. terrible b. fantastic c. interesting d. wonderful
4. " .... " means using ideas or ways that people first used a long time ago.
   a. Terrible b. Traditional c. Amazing d. Popular
5. Wise people الحكماء make good ....
   a. shopping b. decisions c. fun d. equipment
6. In the Science ...., I saw an exhibition about reptiles الزواحف.
   a. Factory b. Museum c. Company d. Library
7. SB I .... on the big wheel at the funfair yesterday.
   a. drove b. read c. climbed d. rode
8. I .... a football match two days ago.
   a. watching b. watched c. watch d. am watching
9. What .... you do last Sunday ? - I studied geography.
   a. did b. do c. are d. were
10. SB It was a terrible day .... my team lost 5 – 2.
   a. although b. because c. so d. however

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

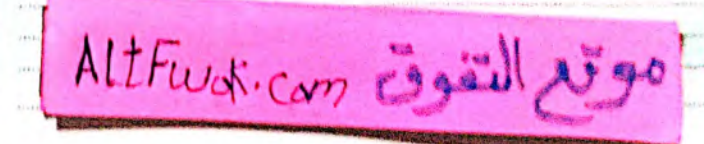
1. What day **is** yesterday ? (..........)
2. Last weekend, we **go** to the club. (Damietta 2022) (..........)
3. SB I like jazz **and** I don't like opera. (..........)
4. SB Have you got a new jacket ? - No, I **don't**. (..........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A terrible weekend you had"

....



Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 7 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Omar : How was your weekend ?
Ali : ....
B. Salma : .... ?
Sama : No, I don't like pop music.

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Your last weekend"

....
....
....
....
....
....

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She is frightened .... home in the dark alone.
   a. walks   b. of walking   c. walk   d. walking
2. A: What .... of sport do you like ? B: Football.
   a. stress   b. tip   c. type   d. entry
3. Mr Mohamed .... me to read English well.
   a. learned   b. taught   c. found   d. rose
4. This diary .... me of my journey to the island.
   a. remembered   b. reminded   c. tried   d. forgot
5. I don't like going out .... at night.
   a. lonely   b. alone   c. loner   d. owner

February assessment

اختبار شهر فبراير

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى محادثة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. They went to the museum by ....
   a. car   b. train   c. plane   d. bus
2. Basant is .... years old.
   a. ten   b. twenty   c. twelve   d. twenty-two
3. They saw .... in the museum.
   a. stairs   b. statues   c. tips   d. studies
4. They went to the .... in the evening.
   a. museum   b. home   c. funfair   d. aquarium

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hamdy is telling Atef about his visit to Al Azhar Park.

Atef : Where did you go yesterday ?
Hamdy : (1) ....
Atef : (2) .... ?
Hamdy : I went with my family.
Atef : (3) .... ?
Hamdy : We saw trees and flowers.
Atef : Did you see any fountains ?
Hamdy : (4) ....
Atef : Did you enjoy your time there ?
Hamdy : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Doctors are important because they care about people. Doctors are the people who help others get **better** when they get sick. They find out what is wrong with people when they are sick. Doctors help sick people

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

by giving them the right medicine. **They** work in hospitals and clinics. Doctors are very helpful. To be a doctor, you have to go to university. You should be good at science. You also should like helping others. You should be kind and helpful. If you are not kind and patient, people will not love you.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word **"They"** refers to ....
   a. doctors b. patients c. nurses d. universities
2. If you aren't a kind doctor, people will .... you.
   a. love b. hate c. admire d. respect
3. The opposite of the underlined word **"better"** is ....
   a. normal b. serious c. worse d. well

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.

....

5. What should you do to be a doctor ?

....

6. Why do you think doctors are very important ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can see the stars when we go to the ....
   a. museum b. laboratory c. aquarium d. planetarium
2. There are many people in this city, it is ....
   a. empty b. free c. hard d. crowded
3. Gold is .... expensive than silver.
   a. most b. more c. as d. least
4. Which .... is more difficult, English or maths ?
   a. hobby b. subject c. language d. interest

5. The .... is a dangerous sea animal.
   a. shark b. dolphin c. seal d. elephant
6. The ship sank and all the .... died.
   a. pilots b. fires c. sailors d. statues
7. A: .... you worried about the exams ? B: Yes, I was.
   a. Did b. Were c. Can d. Do
8. Who is the .... person in the world ?
   a. rich b. richer c. richest d. as rich
9. He won the prize when he took part in the art ....
   a. match b. goal c. fight d. competition
10. I asked my mother to remind me .... my homework .
   a. with b. by c. for d. of

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She didn't **arrived** early last meeting. (............)
2. He is **best** than his friend. (............)
3. This film is the **less** interesting. (............)
4. There **didn't** any cars in ancient Egypt. (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"How was your weekend ?"

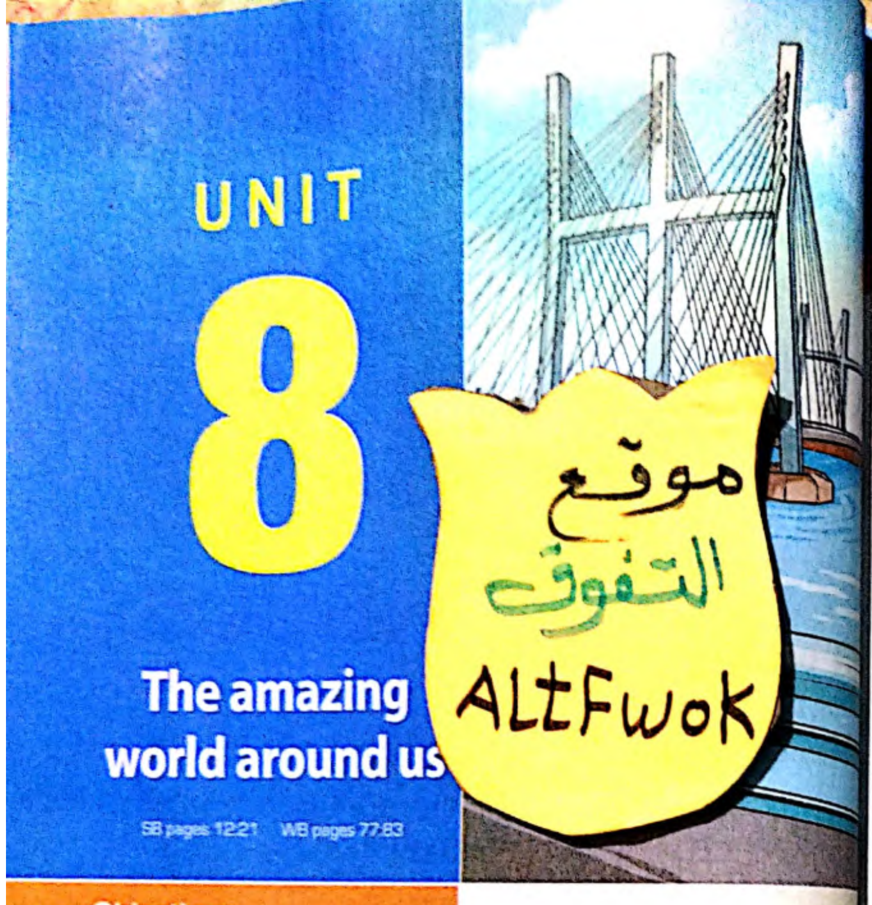
....

....

....



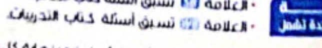
CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge; the Grand Egyptian Museum
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph on a museum about the twenty-first century; a fact file; a review of places giving your opinion
- **Listening :**
  Facts and figures; a quiz
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about measurements; making comparisons
- **Language :**
  Comparative and superlative adjectives
- **Issues :**
  Loyalty and belonging
- **Life Skills :**
  Respecting different opinions


أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل



- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.


لإتقان الوحدة

- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة والملحق.
- اختبارات شهرية داخل كتاب الشرح.
- جزء للمتابعة اليومية وإتقان المفردات اللغوية (التسوبق) فى نهاية الكتاب.

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 12:15 WB pages 77 & 78

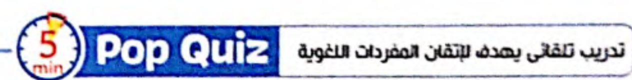


I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

crowded (adj)	مزدحم	country (n)	دولة
population (n)	تعداد السكان	bridge (n)	كوبرى
measurement (n)	وحدة قياس / قياس	desert road (n)	طريق صحراوى
building (n)	مبنى	tower (n)	برج
tunnel (n)	نفق	forest (n)	غابة


تنويه ▪ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

population - country - measurements - tunnel - Bridge

1. They built a big .... under the sea.
2. The underground goes through a long ....
3. The .... of Cairo is about 20 million people.
4. China is a big .... in Asia.

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

Luxor Temple	معبد الأقصر	Al Hamra Tower	برج الحمراء (الكويت)
Tahya Masr Bridge	كوبرى تحيا مصر	Bangkok	مدينة بانكوك (تايلاند)
Cairo - Alexandria desert road	طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى	The Library of Alexandria	مكتبة الأسكندرية
		The Shanghai Tower	برج شنغهاى
Abraj Al-Bait (Clock Tower)	أبراج البيت (برج الساعة) (فى المملكة العربية السعودية)	The Gotthard Tunnel	نفق جوتهارد (فى سويسرا)
The Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة	Lake Baikal	بحيرة بيكل (فى روسيا)
the Pyramid of El Castillo	هرم كاستيلو	Switzerland	دولة سويسرا

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Brasillia	مدينة برازيليا (فى البرازيل)	Mount Everest	جبل إفرست
The Red Pyramid	الهرم الأحمر (فى دهشور)	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو
The 6th October Bridge	كوبرى ٦ اكتوبر	Qasr El-Nil Bridge	كوبرى قصر النيل
Thailand	دولة تايلاند	The Leaning Tower of Pisa	برج بيزا المائل
The Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة		

Lesson 1

SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 77

ground (n)	أرض	research (ed) (v), (n)	يجرى بحثًا / بحث
Nile banks (n)	ضفاف النيل	fact file (n)	ملف حقائق
link (ed) (v)	يربط	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
exact (adj)	دقيق - محدد	daily (adj), (adv)	يومى / يوميًا

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 78

centre (n)	وسط	compare (d) (v)	يقارن
describe (d) (v)	يصف	across (adv)	عبر / خلال
quiz (n)	اختبار قصير / مسابقة	rules (n)	قوانين / قواعد
capital (n)	عاصمة	tourists (n)	سياح
correctly (adv)	بطريقة صحيحة	traffic (n)	المرور
market (n)	سوق تجارى	visitors (n)	زوار

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
build	يبنى	built	built
hit	يضرب	hit	hit

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
wide	واسع	narrow	ضيق
crowded	مزدحم	empty	فارغ
modern	حديث	old / ancient	قديم
noisy	مزعج	quiet	هادئ
better	أفضل	worse	أسوأ
high	مرتفع	low	منخفض

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

bridge	something used for people and cars to cross a road or river	كوبرى
city	a large town	مدينة كبيرة
crowded	where there are many people	مزدحم
depth	measuring water from the top to the bottom	عمق
empty	without any people or things in it	فارغ
low	not far from the top to the bottom of something	منخفض
modern	relating to the present; not old	حديث
narrow	not far from one side of something to the other; not wide	ضيق
noisy	making a lot of noise, not quiet	صاخب
pyramid	a large building that is square at the bottom with four triangular sides forming a point at the top	هرم
quiet	without making much noise; not noisy	هادئ
tower	a tall, narrow building	برج
wide	far from one side of something to the other; not narrow	واسع
farther	at a bigger distance, the comparative of far	أبعد
tall	more than usual height; not short	طويل
tunnel	something you can go through to travel under the sea or through a mountain	نفق

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 How + صفة .... ? = What + اسم .... ?

ex.:- SB How wide is Tahya Masr Bridge ?

= What width is Tahya Masr Bridge ?

ex.:- SB How old are the Pyramids ?

= What age are the Pyramids ?

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

	الصفة			الاسم	
How	deep	كم عمق	What	depth	ما عمق
	long	كم طول		length	ما طول
	old	كم عمر		age	ما عمر
	high / tall ... ?	كم ارتفاع / طول		height ?	ما ارتفاع
	much	كم ثمن / كمية		price / quantity	ما سعر/كمية
	many	كم عدد		number	ما العدد
	wide	كم عرض		width	ما العرض

لاحظ : استخدام صفة غير مضاف إليها أي إضافات بعد التعبيرات التي تدل على المقاييس.

ex.: - SB It's 146 metres high.

- SB It's about 25,000 metres long. *SB page 30*

2 which + اسم + is صفة مقارنة (1) طرف المقارنة الأول or (2) طرف المقارنة الثاني ?

للسؤال عن المقارنة بين شيئين تستخدم التركيب السابق.

ex.: - Which animal is faster, a horse or a donkey ?

- Which thing is heavier, a book or a pencil ?

ملحوظة : عند عدم التأكد من العدد أو الكمية بالضبط تستخدم بعض التعبيرات التالية مثل :

more than أكثر من / just under أقل من / about ... حوالي

ex.: - Mr Ayman may be more than 40 years old.

- Mr Ashraf has got about 50 students in his class. *SB page 13*

ملحوظة : بعض الاختصارات لوحدات القياس :

- centimetre = cm
- metre = m
- kilometre = km
- kilogram = kg

SB page 13

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

under the ground	تحت الأرض	crowded with	مزدحم بـ
the centre of Cairo	وسط القاهرة	make it noisier or quieter	يجعلها أكثر إزعاجًا أو أكثر هدوءًا
(be) better	يكون أفضل حالًا (يتحسن)		
(be) worse	يكون أسوء حالًا (يسوء)	easy for	سهل لـ
better for	أفضل لـ	go → over the Nile	يمر من فوق النيل
give an exact number	يعطي رقم دقيق	go → under the sea	يمر من تحت البحر
has worse traffic	لها ازدحام مروري أسوأ	go → down that road	يسير في ذلك الطريق
Which one is more modern ?	أيهما أكثر عصرية (حداثة) ؟		

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



- on Lesson 1 SB page 13



a : The Pyramid of El Castillo in Chichen Itza is 30 metres high.

b : The Tahya Masr Bridge is about 540 metres long.

c : More than 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.

d : The Leaning Tower of Pisa is just under 850 years old.

e : The Gotthard Tunnel in Switzerland is 2,3 kilometres under the ground.



Narrator : 1

A : How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road ?

B : It's 220 kilometres long.

Narrator : 2

A : How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia ?

B : It's 1,642 metres deep.

Narrator : 3

A : How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia ?

B : It's 601 metres high.

Narrator : 4

A : How old is the Luxor Temple ?

B : It's just under 3,500 years old.

Narrator : 5

A : How many people live in Cairo ?

B : More than 20 million people.

موقع الفيوف AlFluck.com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

- **Lesson 1 WB page 77**

3

1 : forty -eight million.
2 : two hundred and eighty-seven thousand.
3 : two hundred and fifty two.
4 : six million, four hundred and twelve thousand.



- **Lesson 2 SB page 15**

How much do you know about pyramids ? Let's compare two pyramids in Egypt. The Great Pyramid[1] of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid[2], which is 105 metres tall.



But the Red Pyramid is further[3] away from the centre[4] of Cairo, so it's less crowded[5] with visitors. Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter.



Now let's compare[6] two very tall buildings. The Shanghai Tower[7] in China is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait is 412.6 metres tall. The building first opened in 2011. So the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.



Finally, we're going to compare two capital[8] cities. Bangkok became the capital of Thailand about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia. Brasilia is a modern city.



Check Vocabulary

(1) الهرم الأكبر | (2) الهرم الأحمر | (3) أبعد | (4) وسط | (5) أقل ازدحامًا | (6) يقارن | (7) برج شنغهاي | (8) عاصمة

The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The population[9] of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.

So, how did you do ? Did you get the answers correct ?



(9) تعداد السكان

Answer the following questions :

- Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات

Learn 1. Why is the Great Pyramid more crowded than the Red Pyramid ?
- *Because it's nearer to the centre of Cairo.*

Practise 2. What is the capital of Thailand ?
- ....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Cairo-Alexandria Desert .... is 220 km long.
   a. River b. Pavement c. Road d. Street
2. Bangkok is a very .... city. There are too many people there.
   a. empty b. crowded c. quiet d. calm
3. Egypt is a great .... in the Middle East.
   a. town b. country c. city d. capital
4. Egypt has a .... of about 102 million people.
   a. population b. pollution c. weather d. transport

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo. (Menouf - Menofia 2022 / El Amereya - Alexandria 2022)
   a. Pyramid b. Tunnel c. Tower d. Bridge
6. WB We need to buy some more water. This bottle is ....
   a. empty b. crowded c. noisy d. small
7. SB Bangkok is the .... of Thailand.
   a. island b. river c. country d. capital
8. SB The Great Pyramid was built thousands of years ago, so it's a/an .... building. (South Port Said - Port Said 2022)
   a. ancient b. modern c. new d. crowded

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. About 500.000 .... visited Egypt last April.
   a. tourists b. towers c. tools d. tours
10. Many .... came to visit the museum today.
   a. visitors b. centres c. statues d. objects
11. The Suez Canal .... the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea.
   a. describes b. lifts c. links d. builds

Definitions تعريفات

12. .... is measuring water from the top to the bottom.
   a. Size b. Depth c. Width d. Weight
13. Something you can go through to travel under the sea or through a mountain is called a ....
   a. bridge b. pyramid c. tower d. tunnel

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Can you .... me a/an exact number of daily visitors ?
   a. have b. leave c. give d. make
15. English is easier .... me to study than maths.
   a. from b. for c. of d. to

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

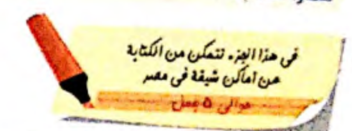
Talking about measurements الحديث عن القياسات

Questions	Answers
• How long is the Cairo - Alexandria Desert Road ? كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى ؟	- It's about 220 kilometres long. يبلغ طوله حوالى ٢٢٠ كيلومتر.
• How old is Luxor Temple ? كم عمر معبد الأقصر ؟	- It's just under 3500 years old. أقل من ٣٥٠٠ عامًا.
• How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia ? كم يبلغ عمق بحيرة بيكال فى روسيا ؟	- It's 1,642 m deep under the water. يبلغ عمقها ١,٦٤٢ متر تحت الماء.
• How high is Abraj Al-Bait (Clock Tower) in Saudi Arabia ? كم يبلغ ارتفاع أبراج البيت (برج ساعة) فى المملكة العربية السعودية ؟	- It's about 601 metres long. يبلغ ارتفاعها ما يقرب من ٦٠١ متر.

• How many people live in Cairo ? كم عدد الناس الذين يعيشون بالقاهرة ؟	- More than 20 million people live in Cairo. أكثر من ٢٠ مليون إنسان يعيش بالقاهرة.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Exciting places in Egypt
أماكن شيقة فى مصر



1. We live in an amazing world. ١. نحن نعيش فى عالم مدهش.
2. There are many exciting places to visit in Egypt. ٢. هناك الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة لتزورها فى مصر
3. In Egypt, there are many pyramids. ٣. هناك العديد من الأهرامات فى مصر
4. The Great Pyramid is more crowded than the Red Pyramid. ٤. الهرم الأكبر أكثر ازدحامًا من الهرم الأحمر.
5. The Great Pyramid is taller than the Red Pyramid. ٥. الهرم الأكبر أطول من الهرم الأحمر.



III Language



Comparative adjectives المقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة

1 What's an adjective ? ما هى الصفة ؟

An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

الصفة هى كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتى بعد (verb to be)

ex. - He is a tall man. - This mobile is expensive.

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

2 Comparative of adjectives صفات المقارنة

We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.
نستخدم صفات المقارنة عند المقارنة بين شيئين، شخصين أو اثنين من الأماكن.



1 Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

هى الصفات التى تتكون من مقطع واحد مثل :

fast / big / sad / happy ... etc.

1 تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة :

adj صفة + er + than

fast → faster / old → older

ونضيف (than) بعد الصفة القصيرة.

2 يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) :

large → larger / close → closer

3 يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- big → bigger - thin → thinner

4 الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) تتحول (y) إلى (i) ثم تضاف (er):

- easy → easier
- lazy → lazier

ex. - An elephant is bigger than a camel.

2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

هى الصفات التى تتكون من أكثر من مقطع مثل :

interesting / fantastic / beautiful / dangerous ... etc.

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالى :

more أكثر / less أقل + adj. صفة + than

- beautiful

- more/less beautiful than

أكثر / أقل جمالًا من

ex. - The dolphin is more enormous than the turtle.

◂ هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى) عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

Adjective	الصفة	Comparative	الصفة عند المقارنة بين اثنين
bad	سيئ	worse	أسوأ
far	بعيد	further / farther	أبعد
good	جيد	better	أفضل
late	متأخر	later	فى وقت لاحق
little	قليل الكمية	less	أقل من
many	كثير العدد	more	أكثر
much	كثير الكمية	more	أكثر

◂ ليس بالضرورة استخدام (than) بعد صفة المقارنة عندما يكون الطرف الثانى للمقارنة مفهوم من سياق الكلام :

- Malak is tall, but Mariam is taller. (Not: taller than)
- This car is expensive. I want a less expensive one. (Not: less expensive than)

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Zip lining is .... dangerous than swimming.
   a. the most b. the more c. most d. more
2. Playing sports is .... than playing video games.
   a. best b. good c. better d. more
3. My father is .... than my uncle.
   a. old b. older c. oldest d. as old

No.	Answer + Explanation
1	d [illegible]
2	c [illegible]
3	b [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➲ SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB The museum is usually .... on Saturday than on Sunday.
   a. crowded b. most crowded
   c. more crowded d. the most crowded

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2. SB Which bridge is ...., the 6th October Bridge or the Qasr El Nil Bridge ?
a. long b. longest c. longer d. the longest

3. SB Mount Everest is .... than Mount Kilimanjaro.
(Port Said 2022)
a. high b. highest c. the highest d. higher

4. Ammar is a .... player than Adel.
(Qalyubia 2022)
a. good b. best c. better d. bad

5. The old car is .... than the new car.
(Monufia 2022)
a. noisy b. more noisy c. noisier d. noisiest

6. Cairo is bigger .... Tanta.
(West Tanta - 2022)
a. than b. then c. as d. more
(Gharbia - Gharbia 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Books are .... than computer games.
a. useful b. more useful c. useful as d. the useful

8. Today the weather is .... yesterday.
a. as colder as b. as cold than c. coldest d. colder than

9. Yesterday was warm, but today is ....
a. warmer than b. warmer c. warmest d. the warm

10. Gold is more expensive .... silver.
a. thin b. then c. than d. this

11. The post office is .... to my house than the park.
a. near b. nearest c. as near d. nearer

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB The Pyramids of Giza are <u>easy</u> for tourists to visit than the Red Pyramid. (........)
2. SB The Nile River is <u>longest</u> than the Amazon. (........)
3. WB Adel is tall, but Rami is <u>tallest</u>. (........)
4. He was <u>good</u> than his brother at playing football. (........)
(Fayoum - East Fayoum 2022)
5. Osman is <u>strong</u> than Hassan. (El Balyana - Sohag 2022) (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. This car is very nice but that one is <u>nicest</u>. (........)
7. Sara is <u>most</u> careful than Mona. (........)
8. The new museum is <u>far</u> than the old museum. (........)
9. Which place is <u>most</u> modern A or B ? (........)
10. The library is quieter <u>then</u> the funfair. (........)

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar and Ali are talking about famous places around the world.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions ?
Ali : (1) ....
Omar : (2) .... ?
Ali : The Great Pyramid is 146 metres high.
Omar : (3) .... ?
Ali : About 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo.
Omar : What is the longest river in the world ?
Ali : (4) ....
Omar : Good ! I think you are very clever.
Ali : (5) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mount Everest is .... mountain in the world.
(Khalifa & El Mokattam - Cairo 2022)
a. high b. higher c. the highest d. highest

2. "........" is a tall, narrow building.
a. Pyramid b. Tower c. Tunnel d. City

3. The traffic is .... in a city than in the countryside.
a. worse b. bad c. worst d. the worst

4. SB The Great Pyramid of Giza is .... than the Red Pyramid.
a. tall b. taller c. tallest d. the tallest

5. The .... in Cairo is very busy.
a. traffic b. food c. drink d. pollution

6. The policeman asked the woman to .... the thief.
a. give b. deliver c. prove d. describe

7. How .... people live in Cairo ? - More than 20 million people.
a. long b. many c. much d. deep

AlTFwk.Com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

8. There are many .... visiting the museum today.
a. builders b. engineers c. tourists d. animals

9. There were a lot of people in the market. It was very ....
(Monsoor - Beheira 2022)
a. quiet b. crowded c. clean d. bigger

10. Which is .... the Nile or the Amazon ? - The Nile.
a. taller b. older c. longer d. higher

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The cinema is **empty** than the metro. (........)
2. Aswan is **hot** than Alexandria. (Al Waadi - Qena 2022) (........)
3. Which building is **tall**, the Cairo Tower or the Great Pyramid ? (........)
4. She is **beautiful** than her cousin. (........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Famous places in Egypt"

....

موقع
التفوق
AltFwok



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

suspension bridge (n)	كوبري معلق	view (n)	منظر طبيعي / رؤية
sunset (n)	غروب الشمس	mountain climbing (n)	رياضة تسلق الجبال
ice skating (n)	تزحلق على الجليد (باستخدام حذاء التزحلق)	insect (n)	حشرة
		achievements (n)	إنجازات
skiing (n)	تزحلق على الجليد (باستخدام لوح التزحلق)	proud (adj)	فخور


تنويه • Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.


5 min Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

skiing - insect - proud - sunset - view

1. I am .... of my parents.
2. People can practise .... in very cold areas.
3. The "bee" is a very useful ....
4. The view of the Nile during .... is fantastic.

Lesson 3 SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 79

finally (adv)	أخيرًا	Nile's Warraq Island	جزيرة الوراق في النيل
probably (adv)	من المحتمل	social studies (n)	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية
protect (ed) (v)	يحمي	popular (adj)	مشهور
glass floor (n)	أرضية زجاجية	the express train (n)	القطار السريع

Lesson 4 SB page 18 WB page 80

school subject (n)	مادة دراسية	price (n)	سعر / ثمن
holiday places (n)	أماكن لقضاء الأجازة	Dahab (n)	مدينة دهب السياحية (في جنوب سيناء)

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

TV show (n)	عرض تليفزيوني	sports club (n)	نادي رياضي
travels (n)	سفريات - رحلات	Etruscan shrew (n)	زبابة الإتروسكان (حيوان يشبه الفأر)
right now (adv)	الآن		
politely (adv)	بطريقة مهذبة		

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق / يرفض

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

achievement	a result to be proud of	إنجاز
dangerous	able to cause harm; not safe	خطير
safe	not in a dangerous situation or position	آمن
sunset	the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day	غروب الشمس
suspension bridge	a long bridge that has thick metal wires to hold it up	كوبري معلق
ugly	not nice to look at; not beautiful	قبيح

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 It takes / took + (وقت) + to + inf. يستغرق (وقت)

ex.: - It took five years to build the bridge.
- It takes me half an hour to go home from school.

(SB page 16)

2 cross - across

- cross (v) يعبر / يمر عبر

ex.: - The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island.

- across (adv) عبر

ex.: - It's the best time to walk across the bridge.

(SB page 16)

3 proud of - proud to فخور بـ

- proud of + (inf. + ing) / (noun)

ex.: - He is proud of his uncle.
- They are proud of being Egyptian teachers.

- proud to + inf.

ex.: - He is proud to be Egyptian.

(SB page 18)

4 afraid

- I'm afraid .. = I'm sorry .... أنا آسف / أخشى أن

ex.: - A : Can you lend me your bike, please ?
B : I'm afraid, I can't. I need it.

- afraid of = frightened of خائف من

ex.: - Rahma is afraid of dogs.

(SB page 18)

5 way

- way طريق

ex.: - On my way to school, I met Mr Ali .

- way طريقة - أسلوب

ex.: - I don't like his way of thinking.

- No way مستحيل (تعبير بالرفض)

ex.: - A : Can you ride a bike ?
B : What ? No way !

(SB page 18)

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the best time to	أفضل وقت لـ	I feel the same as you about that.	أشعر مثلك تماما تجاه ذلك
in my opinion	فى رأيى	You are wrong !	أنت مخطئ !
It's important to be polite.	من المهم أن تكون مهذب.	the same size as	نفس الحجم مثل
show on TV	عرض فى التليفزيون	I don't have the same opinion.	ليس لدى نفس الرأى
What's your opinion of .. ?	ما رأيك فى .. ؟	means of transport	وسيلة مواصلات
live on the island	يعيش على الجزيرة		
disagree with someone	لا يتفق مع شخص	I'm not sure about that.	أنا غير متأكد من ذلك

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



II Skills



1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

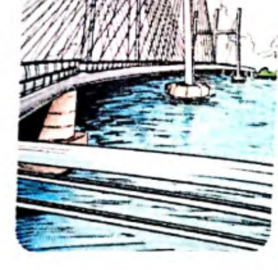


Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 16

The Tahya Masr Bridge

The world's widest[1] suspension bridge[2] opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.



More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months. The bridge crosses[3] the Nile's Warraq Island[4]. More than 100,000 people live on the island.

Many people enjoy walking across[5] the bridge. It has a glass floor[6], so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset[7], for a beautiful view[8] of the city.

Importa… Expressio… & Prepositio…

(1) كثر اتساعًا
(2) كوبرى معلق
(3) يعبر
(4) جزيرة
(5) تمشية عبر
(6) أرضية زجاجية
(7) غروب الشمس
(8) منظر طبيعى

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Extracting information. استخراج معلومات

© Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Learn 1. The Tahya Masr Bridge was finished in about ....

a. one year b. four years
c. two years d. three years

Practise 2. The best time to cross the bridge is at .... for a beautiful view of the city.

a. sunrise b. morning
c. evening d. sunset

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 16

1

Voice : In front of us, you can see the world's widest suspension bridge! It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 metres long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finally finished it 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.

2

1. The express train[1] to Aswan is the fastest one.
2. Cairo streets are the busiest in Egypt.
3. Do you think that Tahya Masr Bridge will be the most popular place in Cairo in the future?
4. Some people believe[2] that buses inside Cairo are the least expensive means of transport[3].
5. This red smartphone[4] is the most expensive one.
6. I think Mohamed Salah is the best player in Egypt.

Check Vocabulary

(1) القطار السريع	(2) يعتقد / يؤمن	(3) وسائل المواصلات	(4) الهاتف الذكى

• Lesson 4 SB page 18

3



Girl 1 : Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or science?

Girl 2 : In my opinion[1], science is the most difficult of all.

Boy 1 : I think Dahab has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you?

Boy 2 : I agree[2]. It's also the least crowded.

Important Expressions and prepositions

(1) فى رأيى	(2) أوافقك الرأى

Girl 3 : What's your opinion of ice skating ? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing ?

Girl 4 : I'm afraid [3] I don't agree.

Boy 3 : What do you think about the new TV show [4] ?

Boy 4 : I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.

Important Expressions and prepositions

(3) أخشى أن   (4) عرض تليفزيوني

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Egypt has made great .... in education. We are proud of that.
   a. achievements   b. islands   c. pairs   d. mistakes
2. Mountain .... is the most dangerous sport at all.
   a. watching   b. climbing   c. weighing   d. skating
3. There is a beautiful .... of the city from Cairo Tower.
   a. review   b. revision   c. view   d. preview

SB , WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest .... bridge.
   a. information   b. suspension   c. evaporation   d. condensation
   (El Marg / New Cairo - Cairo 2022)
5. SB Remember that it is important to be .... when you give your opinion.
   a. cross   b. impolite   c. safe   d. polite
6. SB The bridge has a glass .... , so you can see the river under your feet.
   (Multidisciplinary - Fayed - Ismailia 2022)
   a. float   b. floor   c. door   d. window

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. A honey bee is a/an .... that produces honey.
   a. system   b. animal   c. insect   d. achievement
8. Most modern cars are .... They are not cheap.
   a. narrow   b. expensive   c. empty   d. ugly

9. The bridge is 67.36 metres ....
   a. wide   b. width   c. heavy   d. old

Definitions تعريفات

10. The .... is the time when the sun disappears at the end of the day.
    a. sunrise   b. sunset   c. sun cream   d. sunshine
11. WB .... means able to cause harm.
    a. Dangerous   b. Cheap   c. Polite   d. Safe
12. .... means not nice to look at; not beautiful.
    a. Beautiful   b. Ugly   c. Wide   d. Long

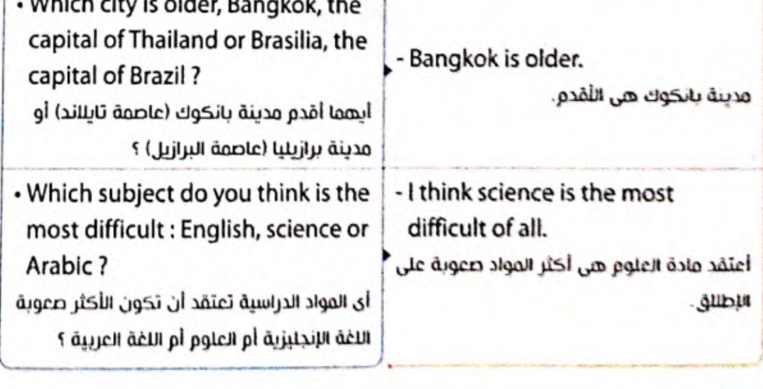
Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Many people enjoy walking .... the bridge in the evening.
    a. cross   b. across   c. between   d. next
14. I disagree .... you. English is the most important subject.
    a. of   b. at   c. to   d. with
15. I'm proud .... my father. He does his best to make us happy.
    a. off   b. from   c. to   d. of

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Talking about comparatives & superlatives :

١. الحديث عن المقارنة (بين اثنين فى صفة) والتفضيل (المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين) :



Stimulus	Response
• Which city is older, Bangkok, the capital of Thailand or Brasilia, the capital of Brazil ? أيهما أقدم مدينة بانكوك (عاصمة تايلاند) أو مدينة برازيليا (عاصمة البرازيل) ؟	- Bangkok is older. مدينة بانكوك هى الأقدم.
• Which subject do you think is the most difficult : English, science or Arabic ? أى المواد الدراسية تعتقد أن تكون الأكثر صعوبة اللغة الإنجليزية أم العلوم أم اللغة العربية ؟	- I think science is the most difficult of all. أعتقد مادة العلوم هى أكثر المواد صعوبة على الإطلاق.

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2. Giving opinions; agreeing and disagreeing : ٢. إعطاء الآراء بالموافقة وعدم الموافقة :

Asking for opinions السؤال عن الرأى	Giving opinions إعطاء الآراء
What is your opinion of / about .... ? ما رأيك فى ..... ؟	In my opinion, ... فى رأيى ......
What do you think of / about .... ? ماذا تعتقد فى / ما رأيك فى ..... ؟	I think / believe .... انا أعتقد .....
Do you agree that .... ? هل توافق أن ..... ؟	- Yes, I agree. نعم ، أوافق. - No, I don't agree. لا، أوافق.

Agreeing with someone الموافقة على الرأى مع شخص ما	Disagreeing with someone عدم الموافقة على الرأى مع شخص ما
I agree. أوافق.	- I disagree. لا أوافق. - I don't agree. لا أوافق. - I'm afraid / I'm sorry, but .... أخشى/يؤسفنى ولكن ...
I think so. أعتقد ذلك.	- I don't have the same opinion. ليس لدى نفس الرأى. - I don't feel the same as you about that. لا أشعر مثلك تمامًا بشأن ذلك.
That's what I think. هذا ما أعتقد.	- I'm not sure about that. لست متأكدًا بشأن ذلك. - You are wrong! أنت مخطئ! - What? No way! ماذا ؟ هذا مستحيل!

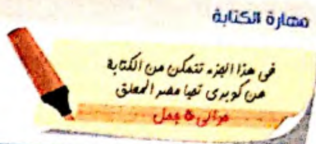
3. Discussing your country's achievements : ٣. مناقشة إنجازات بلدك:

• How do you feel about your country's achievements? كيف تشعر تجاه إنجازات بلدك ؟	- I feel very proud. أشعر بالفخر الشديد. - It makes me happy. تجعلنى أشعر بالسعادة.
• Do you want people from other countries to like and respect your country? هل تريد أن الأشخاص من الدول الأخرى تحب وتحترم بلدك ؟	- Of course / Yes, I do. نعم، بالطبع/ نعم، أريد ذلك.
• What other Egyptian achievements are you proud of? ما هى الإنجازات المصرية الأخرى التى تكون فخورًا بها ؟	- I think the new Administrative Capital and Galala City projects. أعتقد مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة ومشروعات مدينة الجلالة.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

The Tahya Masr suspension Bridge
كوبرى تحيا مصر المعلق



1. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. ١. هو أكبر كوبرى معلق فى العالم.
2. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. ٢. تم افتتاحه فى القاهرة فى مايو ٢٠١٩.
3. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. ٣. يمر الكوبرى فوق جزيرة الوراق النيلية.
4. You can see a beautiful view of the city over the bridge. ٤. يمكنك أن ترى منظر جذاب للمدينة من أعلى الكوبرى.
5. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset. ٥. أفضل وقت لعبور الكوبرى عند غروب الشمس.

III Language



The Superlative of adjectives صفات التفضيل

We use superlative adjectives to compare more than two things.
تستخدم صفات التفضيل عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين.



1 Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

• تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :

1. يُضاف (**the... + est**) إلى الصفة القصيرة :
- fast → the fastest
- old → the oldest

2. يُضاف (**the ... + st**) إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (**e**) :
- large → the largest
- close → the closest

2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :

- the most الأكثر / the least الأقل + adj. صفة
- the most/the least beautiful الأكثر / الأقل جمالًا
- the most/the least dangerous الأكثر / الأقل خطورة

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق
CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

❷ يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يضاف (the... + est) إلى الصفة القصيرة :

- big → the biggest
- thin → the thinnest
- hot → the hottest
- fit → the fittest

❸ الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) تتحول (y) إلى (the... + iest) :

- easy → the easiest
- happy → the happiest
- lazy → the laziest
- healthy → the healthiest

ex. - This bridge is the longest one.
- Heba is the oldest student in her class.

ex. - The whale is the most enormous animal.
- I think maths is the most difficult subject.
- This T-shirt is the least expensive one in the shop.

Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

صيغ المقارنة و التفضيل غير المنتظمة

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هي) عند المقارنة بين اثنين أو المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين :

❶ Adj.		❷ Comparative		❸ Superlative	
bad	سيئ	worse than	أسوأ من	the worst	الأسوأ
far	بعيد	farther than	أبعد من	the farthest	الأبعد
		further than	أبعد من	the furthest	الأبعد
good	جيد	better than	أفضل من	the best	الأفضل
late	متأخر	later than	أكثر تأخراً من	the latest	الأحدث
				the last	الأخير
little	قليل (الكمية)	less than	أقل من	the least	الأقل
many	كثير (العدد)	more than	أكثر من	the most	الأكثر
much	كثير (الكمية)				

A text with the superlative form (WB page 79)

You probably know that whales are the biggest animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the noisiest ? A whale[1] can hear another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the fastest animal in the world is a bird ? It can fly at more than 300 km/h. Insects[2] are the most dangerous animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal. Finally, the smallest land animal is the Etruscan shrew[3]. It looks like[4] a mouse and is the same size[5] as a bee[6] !

Check Vocabulary

(1) حوت	(2) حشرات	(3) ذبابة الاتروسكان (حيوان يشبه الفأر)	(4) يشبه	(5) نفس الحجم	(6) نحلة

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

❶ لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية (first/second/third/fourth ... etc.)

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

❷ لا تستخدم (the) قبل التفضيل علما يسبقها ('s) الملكية أو صفة ملكية :

- my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ..... 's

ex. - Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt's best novelist روائي.
- Is Ahmed your youngest brother ?

❸ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :

ex. (أ) تستخدم (in) غالبًا قبل (المكان) :

- He is the best player in the team.
- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) غالبًا قبل (الأشخاص) :

- Sama is the cleverest of her sisters.

(جـ) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السنوات :

- The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016.

موقع التفوق AltFwq.com

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Who got the .... grades in your class ?
   a. better b. best c. worse d. more
2. Which is .... , Egypt or England ?
   a. hot b. hottest c. hotter d. hotter than

No.	Answer + Explanation إجابة وتوضيح
1	b [illegible]
2	d [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB The world's .... suspension bridge opened in Cairo.
   a. widest b. wide c. wider d. the widest
2. WB Whales are .... animals in the world.
   a. big b. bigger c. the biggest d. biggest
3. SB Some people think that maths is .... subject of all.
   a. difficult b. more difficult c. most difficult d. the most difficult
4. We bought .... house in the city. *(El Khalifa & Cairo - El Mokattam 2022)*
   a. expensive b. more expensive than c. as expensive d. the most expensive
5. What is the .... town in your country ? *(El Zaytoun - Cairo 2022)*
   a. larger b. large c. largest d. more large

6. Tennis is less popular .... football. *(Al Sayeda Zainab - Cairo 2022)*
   a. this b. than c. then d. that

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. No one is taller than Ali. Ali is the .... boy in the class.
   a. taller b. tallest c. tall d. tall as
8. This is .... film I've ever seen.
   a. boring b. as boring c. more boring d. the most boring
9. Which city do you think is .... city in the world ?
   a. exciting b. more exciting c. most exciting d. the most exciting
10. I have the .... family in the world.
    a. better b. best c. good d. well

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB Cairo streets are <u>busiest</u> in Egypt. (........)
2. SB Tennis is <u>least</u> dangerous than football. (........)
3. WB What is the <u>better</u> place to play tennis near here ? (........)
4. WB Insects are the <u>more</u> dangerous animals in the world. (........)
5. SB She is <u>tall</u> girl in our country. (........)
6. A plane is <u>fast</u> than a train. *(Samalut - Minia 2022)* (........)
7. Sally is the <u>shorter</u> girl in the class. *(West - Cairo 2022)* (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. The blue car is <u>most</u> expensive car here. (........)
9. The Red Pyramid is the <u>further</u> monument in my city. (........)
10. She is the <u>young</u> daughter. (........)

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

General Exercises  LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's .... suspension bridge.
   a. highest b. longest c. widest d. biggest
2. It opened in .... 2019.
   a. May b. January c. March d. April
3. It's 67.36 metres ....
   a. high b. tall c. wide d. long
4. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq ....
   a. City b. Oasis c. Island d. Lake

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB Mountain climbing is the most .... sport. Many people may fall and die.
   a. beautiful b. safe c. cheap d. dangerous
2. SB It's important to be polite when you .... your opinion.
   a. make b. take c. give d. ask
3. I .... with you, you're completely right.
   a. describe b. agree c. cross d. disagree
4. This is the .... company in the world. *(Zefta - Al Gharbia 2022)*
   a. more big b. biggest c. bigger d. big
5. Ahmed is .... intelligent than Samy. *(El Rahmaniya - Beheira 2022)*
   a. as b. most c. more d. least
6. Many people enjoy walking on the glass .... of Tahya Masr Bridge. *(Farshout - Qena 2022)*
   a. flower b. flour c. floor d. fire
7. Are you proud .... be Egyptian ?
   a. of b. at c. to d. with
8. My youngest brother looks .... my dad.
   a. like b. angry c. some d. alike

9. WB What's your .... of doing a sport every week ?
   a. dream b. thought c. opinion d. think
10. We must .... our environment.
    a. fail b. lose c. protect d. damage

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB What's the more difficult subject at school ? (........)
2. SB How much people helped to build the bridge ? (........)
3. Salma is the more active girl. (........)
4. He is good at English than me. (........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"The Tahya Masr Bridge"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

موقع التفوق
AltFwok

A week is enough
مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن
منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط
المعاصر فى
اللغة الأنجليزية
أمنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 19 & 20 WB pages 81 & 82



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

valuable (adj)	غالى / ذو قيمة	fountain (n)	نافورة
competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة	hieroglyphics (n)	اللغة الهيروغليفية
public (adj)	عام	treasure (n)	كنز
guidebook (n)	كتاب إرشادى	display (ed) (v), (n)	يعرض - معرض
collection (n)	مجموعة	entrance (n)	مدخل
column (n)	عمود	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
design (ed) (v) , (n)	يصمم / تصميم	century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)

تنويه ■ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



5 Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

competition - entrance - valuable - fountain - columns

1. I searched for the .... to get in the museum.
2. I want to take part in the school .... for poetry.
3. Gold is an expensive material because it's ....
4. The .... of my house are strong. They carry the roof.

Lesson 5 SB page 19 WB page 81

statue (n)	تمثال	city centre (n)	وسط المدينة
square (n)	مربع (الشكل)	objects (n)	أشياء
article (n)	مقال	move (d) (v)	ينقل / ينتقل
space (n)	مساحة / فراغ	plan (ned) (v) , (n)	يخطط / خطة
welcome (d) (v)	يرحب	glass room (n)	غرفة زجاجية

Famous places and monuments أماكن وآثار مشهورة

the Grand Egyptian Museum (n)	المتحف المصرى الكبير	The Valley of the Kings (n)	وادى الملوك
Karnak Temple (n)	معبد الكرنك	Rosetta Stone (n)	حجر رشيد
Habu Temple (n)	معبد حابو	Ramses II Statue	تمثال رمسيس الثانى
The Great Court (n)	الساحة الكبرى	the British Museum	المتحف البريطانى
Hypostyle Hall (n)	قاعة هيبوستيل	Al Azhar Park (n)	حديقة الأزهر

Lesson 6 SB page 20 WB page 82

website review (n)	مقال نقدى على موقع ألكترونى	writer (n)	كاتب
		prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
stone (adj), (n)	حجرى - حجر	café (n)	مقهى
parks (n)	حدائق (عامة)	lake (n)	بحيرة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
write	يكتب	wrote	written
put	يضع	put	put
spend	يقضى	spent	spent
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
different	مختلف	similar	متشابه
famous	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
top	قمة	bottom	قاع
stronger	أقوى	weaker	أضعف
near	قريب	far	بعيد

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

column	a tall structure that holds up part of a building	عمود
competition	an event, often followed by a prize, in which people try to be the best at something	مسابقة / منافسة

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

entrance	the way into a building, such as a door or gate	مدخل
museum	a building to keep and display important objects from the past	متحف
treasure	a quantity of valuable metals, jewels, ... etc.	كنز

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 space

• space — فراغ / مساحة (اسم لا يُعد)

- There is no space for me here. The room is crowded مزدحمة.

• space — الفضاء

- My little brother dreams of travelling into space. (SB page 19)

2 design — يصمم - يخطط

• design (v)

- My elder brother designed a machine for making coffee.

• design (n) — تصميم

- There are about 1,557 designs from different countries.

3 on display = on show — معروض

ex.: - Many statues are on display in the museum.

4 similar to / the same as

• similar to — مشابه لـ (لكن يوجد بعض الاختلاف البسيط)

- Salma is similar to her mother.

• the same (as) — نفسه / متشابه (لدرجة التطابق)

- They are twins. They are the same.
- Hoda is the same as Nouran.

5 reason

• reason (for) + [inf. + ing] / noun — سبب لـ

- What's the reason for coming late?

• reason why + فاعل + فعل ... — سبب لـ

- Tell me the reason why you have come late.

Important expressions & prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

one of the ..	واحد من ..	in the twenty-first century	فى القرن الواحد وعشرين
refer to	يشير إلى		
get busier	يزداد ازدحامًا / ينشغل أكثر	have a wonderful holiday	يقضى أجازة رائعة
space for	مساحة لـ	for longer	لفترة أطول
(be) able to + (inf.)	قادر على	my favourite part	جزئى المفضل
a collection of	مجموعة من	the main idea of	الفكرة الرئيسية لـ
allow to + inf.	يسمح بـ	show opinion	يعرض رأى
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	for the first time	لأول مرة
during the day	أثناء اليوم	part of	جزء من
5,000 - square - metre room	حجرة مساحتها ٥٠٠٠ متر مربع	spend a lot of time	يقضى وقتًا طويلًا
special about	مميز فى	It is expected to ...	من المتوقع أن ...

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Reading

• on Lesson 5 SB page 19

The Grand Egyptian Museum



1. The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable(1) treasures(2) on display(3). However, the museum did not have space(4) for 100,000 other objects(5). In 2002, there was a competition(6) to design(7) a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.

Check Vocabulary

(1) ذو قيمة | (2) كنوز | (3) عرض | (4) فراغ / مساحة | (5) القطع الأثرية | (6) مسابقة | (7) يصمم

AlFuuk.Com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ـممسوحة ضوئيا ب

2. The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed[8] its first visitors[9] in 2019. It is farther from the city centre[10] than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to look after[11] the objects really well.
3. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance[12], with its big plants[13] and statues[14]. The biggest statue is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.
4. Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy. It is expected to take many years of hard work.

Check Vocabulary

(8) رحب	(9) زائرين	(10) وسط المدينة	(11) يعتني بـ	(12) مدخل	(13) نباتات	(14) تماثيل

on Lesson 6 SB page 20

- We had a wonderful holiday[1] in Egypt. These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places. The Valley of the Kings[2] in Luxor is one of the most popular places[3] for tourists[4] to visit. We went early because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic[5]!" I am sure it gets busier[6] later on during[7] the day.
- The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple[8]. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall[9], a 5,000-square- metre "room" with 134 stone columns[10]. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.
- In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple[11]. It has columns similar to[12] those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.

Check Vocabulary

(1) قضينا إجازة رائعة	(2) وادي الملوك	(3) أماكن مشهورة	(4) سياح	(5) رائع	(6) يزداد ازدحامًا
(7) أثناء / خلال	(8) معبد الكرنك	(9) قاعة / بهو	(10) أعمدة حجرية	(11) معبد هابو	(12) مشابه لـ

on Lesson 5 WB page 81

The British Museum

- The British Museum[1] in London is the oldest public[2] museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.
- The museum has the biggest collection[3] of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone[4]. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed[5] people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics[6] for the first time.
- In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court[7]. Its big glass room makes it the largest covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000 so it is also the most modern part of the museum.



Check Vocabulary

(1) المتحف البريطاني
(2) عام
(3) مجموعة
(4) حجر رشيد
(5) سمح
(6) اللغة الهيروغليفية
(7) الساحة الكبيرة

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill. مهارة التفكير النقدي.

Learn 1. Why do you think the Rosetta stone was very important?
- *Because it allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics for the first time.*

Practise 2. Why do you think the British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world?
- ....

on Lesson 6 WB page 82

Al Azhar Park[1] is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. It is much larger than the small park near my house. That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend an hour or two in that park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park.




Check Vocabulary

(1) حديقة الأزهر

AltFwak.Com موقع التفوق

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

The trees there are taller and it has more plants. It also has fountains[2], a lake and cafes[3], too. I like going there because there is space[4] for all our family to have a big picnic[5] at the weekends! My sister always says, "I love it here".

Check Vocabulary

نافورات [2] | مقاهي [3] | مساحة [4] | نزهة في الهواء الطلق [5]

Videoscript on Lesson 6 SB page 20

Do you know about the seven wonders of the ancient world ?
People thought that they were the most fantastic buildings in the world.
Many of them were in or near Egypt.
For many centuries, this Lighthouse of Alexandria was the tallest building ever made.
The sea was dangerous for boats because there were a lot of rocks near Alexandria. The lighthouse warned[1] boats about the rocks. This was a very important invention.
We use similar technology today. We still use lighthouses to warn boats about rocks. Boats are safer now, thanks to the work of the ancient Egyptians.
The Hanging Gardens of Babylon[2] were probably in modern day Iraq.
These were beautiful gardens around a huge palace[3].
The Statue of Zeus was in ancient Greece. This was believed to be the biggest statue in the world. Another wonder of the world was the Colossus of Rhodes. This was another big statue in ancient Greece.
The Ancient Greeks also built the Temple of Artemis... and the Tomb of Mausolus.
Time and earthquakes[4] destroyed most of these wonders of the world.
After an earthquake in Alexandria, they built Fort Qaitbay at the same place as the Lighthouse of Alexandria and used many stones from the same building.
Today, only the Great Pyramid of Giza remains[5]. Experts believe that this was the first ancient wonder because it is older than the others.
Every year, millions of people come to see the Pyramids of Egypt. They are some of the most visited tourist attractions[6] anywhere.
For many people, the Great Pyramid of Giza is also a wonder of the modern world.
Which building do you like the best ? Why ?

Check Vocabulary

حذر [1] | حدائق بابل المعلقة [2] | قصر [3] | زلازل [4] | يظل / يمكث [5] | مناطق جذب [6]



Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. There are valuable .... in the Egyptian Museum.
   a. centuries b. plans c. treasures d. picnics
2. Al Azhar Park is a/an .... place.
   a. unknown b. private c. stone d. public
3. We give tourists a .... to help them know the famous places to visit.
   a. plane b. guidebook c. flag d. review
4. Museums help us to .... our historical objects for other people.
   a. play b. apply c. display d. pay

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. SB The Grand Egyptian Museum .... its first visitors in 2019. *(Haram - Giza 2022)*
   a. came b. left c. hit d. welcomed
6. SB Ramses II is the biggest stone .... in the museum. *(Multidisciplinary - Samanoud - Gharbia 2021)*
   a. entrance b. space c. article d. statue
7. SB The old museum didn't have .... for 100,000 ancient objects. *(El Tor - South Sinai 2022)*
   a. spice b. space c. time d. treasure

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. The kind woman made a .... in her garden to let the birds drink clean water.
   a. gate b. fence c. fountain d. entrance
9. I read good .... about the new film on the internet.
   a. viewers b. interviews c. reviews d. reasons
10. "Famous" is the opposite of " .... ".
   a. dangerous b. crowded c. unknown d. modern

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Definitions تعريفات

11. A/An .... is the way into a building, such as a door or gate.
 a. display b. column c. entrance d. century
12. The .... is a building to keep and display important objects from the past.
 a. park b. museum c. hospital d. garden

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. What is the .... for your coming late ?
 a. season b. reason c. cause d. expression
14. The teacher allowed us .... have our breakfast.
 a. to b. from c. in d. at
15. Tell me the reason .... you were absent yesterday.
 a. why b. where c. when d. how

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

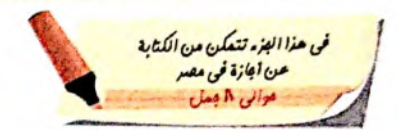
Asking and answering questions about museums :

السؤال عن المتاحف والإجابة عليها :

Questions 	Answers 
• Why do we have museums ? لماذا لدينا متاحف ؟	- We have museums to protect historical objects. لدينا متاحف لكى نحمى القطع الأثرية التاريخية.
• Who is your favourite historical character ? من هى شخصيتك التاريخية المفضلة ؟	- My favourite historical character is Ramses II. شخصيتى التاريخية المفضلة هو رمسيس الثانى.
• What objects are in the museum ? ما هى الآثار الموجودة فى المتحف ؟	- Statues and valuable treasures. التماثيل والكنوز القيمة.
• What do you think about the Karnak Temple ? ما رأيك فى معبد الكرنك ؟	- I think it is fantastic but more crowded than the Valley of the Kings. أعتقد أنه رائع ولكنه أكثر ازدحامًا من وادى الملوك.
• When should we go to the museum ? متى يجب علينا أن نذهب إلى المتحف ؟	- We should go there early because that is the quietest time. علينا أن نذهب إلى هناك مبكرًا لأنه أكثر الأوقات هدوءًا.

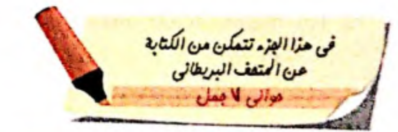
3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

A holiday in Egypt
أجازة فى مصر



1. I went to Egypt to spend my holiday. ١. ذهبت إلى مصر لقضاء عطلتى.
2. My family and I went to the Egyptian Museum. ٢. أنا وعائلتى ذهبنا إلى المتحف المصرى.
3. We saw statues and treasures. ٣. لقد رأينا تماثيل وكنوز.
4. We went to Luxor and visited the Valley of the kings. ٤. ذهبنا إلى الأقصر وقمنا بزيارة وادى الملوك.
5. The Karnak Temple was really crowded. ٥. معبد الكرنك كان مزدحمًا حقًا.
6. Habu Temple has many columns. ٦. معبد حابو لديه الكثير من الأعمدة.
7. Egypt has a long and ancient history. ٧. مصر لديها تاريخ طويل وقديم.
8. It was a great holiday. ٨. لقد كانت أجازة رائعة.

The British Museum
المتحف البريطانى



1. The British Museum is in London. ١. يوجد المتحف البريطانى فى مدينة لندن.
2. It is the oldest public museum in the world. ٢. هو أقدم متحف علم فى العالم.
3. It opened in 1759. ٣. فتح المتحف أبوابه سنة ١٧٥٩.
4. It has more than 13 million objects. ٤. يوجد به أكثر من ١٣ مليون قطعة فنية.
5. About six million visitors go there every year. ٥. حوالى ١٣ مليون زائر يذهب إليه سنويًا.
6. One of the most important objects is the Rosetta Stone. ٦. حجر رشيد هو أحد أهم القطعة الفنية فى المتحف.
7. In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court. ٧. أحد أجمل الأجزاء فى المتحف من رأى هو الساحة الكبيرة.

AltFwoK.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner





General Exercises on LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. The Valley of the .... is in Luxor.
   a. Queens b. Kings c. Pupils d. People
2. It is one of the most popular places for .... to visit.
   a. tourists b. farmers c. engineers d. architects
3. We went early because that is the .... time.
   a. busiest b. quietest c. cleanest d. noisiest
4. It gets busier ....
   a. soon b. earlier c. later d. late

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... was the language of the ancient Egyptians.
   a. Spanish b. English c. Arabic d. Hieroglyphics
2. The museum has more than 13 million ....
   a. people b. objects c. mountains d. fountains
3. SB In 2002, there was a .... to design a bigger and more modern museum.
   a. competition b. race c. composition d. park
4. A .... is a book that gives tourists information about a place.
   a. guidebook b. notebook c. magazine d. newspaper
5. You should wear a helmet when you ride a ....
   a. bus b. ferry c. motorbike d. car
6. SB My uncle is the .... person in my family. No one is older than him.
   a. youngest b. tallest c. oldest d. deepest
7. There are many .... objects in the museum.
   a. dirty b. valuable c. cheap d. ugly
8. This lesson is the .... one.
   a. difficult b. most difficult c. more difficult d. as difficult

9. This problem is easy. It's the .... one I've ever solved.
   a. easiest b. easier c. more easy d. easy
10. Everest is .... mountain in the world.
   a. high b. the highest c. higher d. as higher

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB The Karnak Temple is **most** crowded than the Valley of the Kings. (........)
2. WB Trains are **fast** than cars. *(Samanoud - Gharbia 2022)* (........)
3. Luxor is the **better** place to visit in winter. (........)
4. We went early because that is the **quieter** time. (........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

نموذج إجابة فى نهاية الكتاب

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

موقع التفوق AltFwok

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



Review on unit 8

SB page 21 WB page 83

Vocabulary		Language	Speaking
suspension bridge	كوبرى معلق	**1- Comparative adjectives :** المقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة معينة	1. Talking about measurements الحديث عن القياسات
tower	برج	صفة قصيرة + er + than	- How long is the Cairo - Alexandria Desert Road ? كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى ؟
tunnel	نفق	- A dog is bigger than a cat.	- It's 220 km long.
desert road	طريق صحراوى	more/less + صفة طويلة + than	2. Talking about comparatives : الحديث عن المقارنات بين اثنين
forest	غابة	- English is more interesting than history.	- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid ?
crowded	مزدحم	**2- Superlative adjectives :** المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين فى صفة	- I think the Great Pyramid is taller.
population	تعداد السكان	the + صفة قصيرة + est	3. Asking for & giving opinions. السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء.
sunset	غروب الشمس	The elephant is the biggest land animal.	- What's your opinion about the film ?
ice skating	تزحلق على الجليد	the most / least + صفة طويلة	- Do you agree that the match is boring ?
view	منظر طبيعى	This T-shirt is the most expensive one in the shop.	*- I agree. / I don't agree.*
achievements	إنجازات		
proud	فخور		
opinion	رأى		
glass floor	أرضية زجاجية		
museum	متحف		
entrance	مدخل		
treasure	كنز		
historical	تاريخى		
column	عمود		
statue	تمثال		

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

- تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الاخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Stimulus	Response	الاستخدام Usage
1. How long is the Cairo-Alexandria Desert Road ?	*- It's about 220 kilometers long.*	السؤال عن الطول الأفقى
2. How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia ?	*- It's 1,642 m deep under the water.*	السؤال عن العمق
3. Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid ?	*- I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller.*	السؤال عن الاختيار (بين شيئين)
4. Which subject do you think is the most difficult English, science or Arabic ?	*- In my opinion, science is the most difficult of all.*	السؤال عن الاختيار
5. How do you feel about your country's achievements ?	*- I feel very proud.*	السؤال عن الإنجازات
6. What is your opinion about Ancient Egypt ?	*- I think Ancient Egypt had a fantastic history.*	السؤال عن الرأى
7. What objects are there in the museum ?	*- There are many statues and valuable treasures.*	السؤال عن الأشياء الموجودة فى المتاحف
8. When should we go to the museum ?	*- We should go there early because that is the quietest time.*	السؤال عن أفضل وقت للذهاب إلى المتحف

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

UNIT 8

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية فى الورقة الإمتحانية (٢٩ جملة)

1 Tahya Masr Bridge

The world's widest suspension bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019[1]. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long[2]. More than 4000 people helped to build it[3]. They started building it in 2016[4]. They finished it in 32 months[5]. The bridge crosses the Nile Warraq Island[6]. More than 100,000 people live on the island[7]. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge[8]. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet[9]. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset to have a beautiful view of the city[10].

2 The Grand Egyptian Museum

There was a competition in 2002 to design a bigger and more modern museum[11]. The competition had 1.557 designs from more than 80 different countries[12]. The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019[13]. It is farther from the city centre than the old museum[14]. However it is two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza[15]. It has more space for valuable objects, so more people can see valuable objects there[16]. It is able to look after the objects really well[17].

3 Al Azhar Park

Al Azhar Park is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo[18]. You can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park[19]. There are tall trees and plants[20]. It also has fountains, a lake and cafés, too[21]. I like going there because there is space for all our family to have a big picnic at the weekends[22].

4 A wonderful holiday

Last month, we had a wonderful holiday[23]. We went to Luxor[24]. We visited the most interesting places in Luxor[25]. We went to the Valley of the Kings[26]. It is one of the most popular places to visit in Luxor[27]. Also we visited the Karnak Temple[28]. It was my best holiday[29].



Test on unit 8

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did the British Museum open ? - In ....
   a. 1777 b. 1999 c. 1759 d. 1888
2. How many visitors go there every year ?
   a. 600 b. 6,000 c. 60.000 d. 6,000,000
3. Where is the British Museum ? - In ....
   a. London b. Cairo c. Bristol d. Paris
4. How many objects does it have ?
   a. 13 billion b. 13 million c. 13 hundred d. 13 thousand

(Kafr Saqr - Sharkia 2022)

B. Language Function

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Fadi and Helmy are talking about Tahya Masr Bridge.

Fadi : Where did you go last week ?
Helmy : (1) ....
Fadi : Where is Tahya Masr Bridge ?
Helmy : (2) ....
Fadi : (3) .... ?
Helmy : No, it isn't old. It is new.
Fadi : (4) .... ?
Helmy : It opened in 2019.
Fadi : What is its floor made of ?
Helmy : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We have a lot of great projects and achievements in Egypt so we should be proud of our great country. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. More than 40,000 people helped to build it.

AlTFwuk.Com موقع التفوق


ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Work began in May 2016. It opened in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide. It's 540 m long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city. It's really a great project.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word " It" refers to ....
   a. The bridge b. Warraq c. Egypt d. Helwan
2. The bridge has a .... floor.
   a. plastic b. stone c. brick d. glass
3. More than 100,000 people live on the Nile's .... Island.
   a. Wardan b. Warraq c. Dahab d. Helwan

(Bilaas - Dakahlia 2022)

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

5. When is the best time to cross the bridge ?

....

6. Why do you think we should be proud of Egypt ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo. *(El Omraniya - Giza 2022)*
   a. Pyramid b. Tunnel c. Tower d. Bridge
2. Cairo streets are very .... It takes a long time to go to any place.
   a. easy b. far c. crowded d. high
3. It's a/an .... scene منظر/مشهد to have all this rubbish in the street. *(Al Shuhada - Menofia 2022)*
   a. cheerful b. exciting c. wonderful d. ugly

4. "............... " means without making much noise; not noisy.
   a. Quite b. Quiet c. Tunnel d. Crowded
5. You can put all these books on the desk. There's enough ....
   a. wood b. money c. space d. time
6. The museum has a lot of valuable ....
   a. numbers b. competitions c. pyramids d. treasures
7. The bridge was built on stone .... to stay strong.
   a. shows b. valleys c. columns d. lines
8. Toka is .... than Rokaya.
   a. quiet b. quieter c. quietest d. more quieter
9. I think Siwa is .... place in Egypt.
   a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
10. I think science is .... maths. *(Hihya - Sharkia 2022)*
    a. easy b. easier c. easiest d. easier than

5 Read and correct the underlined word :

1. Mount Everest is <u>high</u> than Mount Kilimanjaro. (...............) *(Al Ayyat - Giza 2022)*
2. SB The Nile is <u>long</u> river in the world. (...............)
3. WB Which building is the <u>older</u> ? (...............)
4. Who is <u>tallest</u>, Nabil or your brother ? (...............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A wonderful holiday"

....

AltFwoK.com موقع التفوق

....

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 8 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Ahmed : Which subject do you think is more exciting, science or maths ?
Hafez : ....
B. Soha : .... ?
Mai : Luxor Temple is just under 3500 years old.

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

....
....
....
....
....
....

2. Use your brain, think smart طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What .... is the new metro line ?
 a. wide b. higher c. length d. long
2. Doing a research is the best .... to know more information.
 a. away b. way c. road d. line
3. Dr Magdy Yacoub is one of Egypt's .... heart surgeons.
 a. the best b. better c. better than d. best
4. Tell me the reason for .... late.
 a. coming b. come c. came d. comes
5. He isn't tall enough. .... , he is good at basketball.
 a. So b. Because c. However d. When

Quiz on units 7&8

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (٧ و ٨)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (B) or (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A



Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We .... a fantastic weekend in the museum.
 a. made b. did c. had d. moved
2. Brasilia is a .... city.
 a. few modern b. modern as c. most modern d. modern
3. You can go through the .... to travel to the other side.
 a. road b. tunnel c. bridge d. tower
4. The Tahya Masr Bridge .... the Nile's Warraq Island.
 a. crosses b. believes c. opens d. cuts
5. She .... frightened of the clowns at the circus yesterday.
 a. is b. were c. did d. was

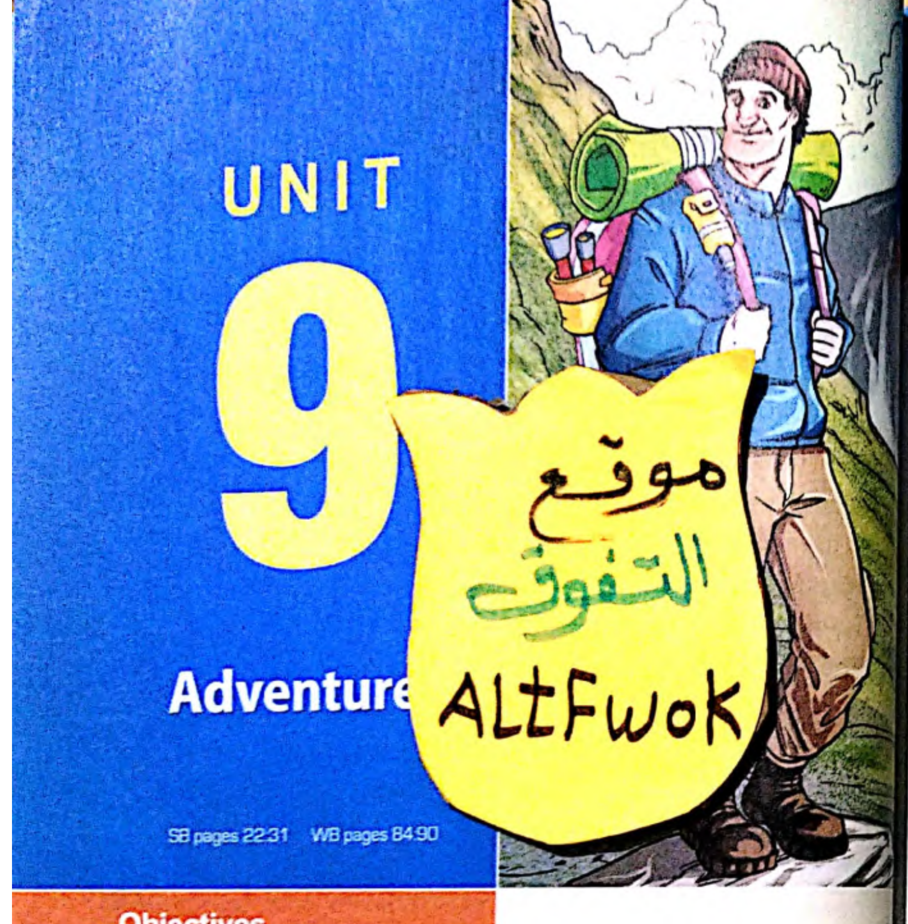
Model B

Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Al Azhar Park is .... park in Cairo.
 a. more beautiful b. the most beautiful
 c. least beautiful d. less beautiful
2. The ship .... because there was a terrible storm.
 a. arrived b. found c. sank d. dead
3. I didn't like the pizza .... it was fresh.
 a. because b. although c. so d. and
4. How .... is the Cairo Tower ?
 a. deep b. long c. age d. tall
5. You can go to the .... to learn more about sea animals.
 a. alley b. planetarium c. sports centre d. aquarium

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  Holiday plans; a postcard; Around the World in 80 Days
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph about an adventure sport; an email planning a trip
- **Listening :**
  Discussing adventure sports; a game; a presentation about a trip to the desert; a conversation about choosing activities
- **Speaking :**
  Discussing activities and travel plans; describing the weather
- **Language :**
  going to for plans; reflexive pronouns
- **Life Skills :**
  Negotiating; respect the opinions of others

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل
- العلامة  SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

لإتقان الوحدة
- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة والملحق.
- اختبارات شهرية داخل كتاب الشرح.
- جزء للمتابعة اليومية وإتقان المفردات اللغوية (التسميع) فى نهاية الكتاب.





SB pages 22 : 25 WB pages 84 & 85



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

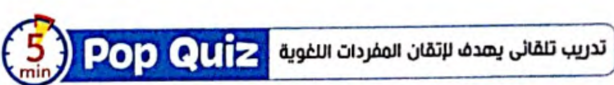
water sport (n)	رياضة مائية	sailing (n)	الإبحار
mountain sport (n)	رياضة جبلية	kayaking (n)	رياضة التجديف بالزورق
adventure (n)	مغامرة	rock climbing (n)	رياضة تسلق الصخور
guide (n)	مرشد	zip lining (n)	رياضة الانزلاق بالحبال
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية - خبرة	windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج
diving (n)	الغطس	tent (n)	خيمة
mountain biking (n)	رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال	trekking (n)	الترحال / التجوال (رياضة السير على الأقدام لمسافات طويلة)

تنويه ▪ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**



climbing - tent - water - trekking - diving

1. Going .... in the mountains is my favourite hobby.
2. I'm good at swimming under water with equipment, so I like ....
3. The Red Sea coast is full of .... sports.
4. Rock .... is the most dangerous sport.

Famous places أماكن مشهورة

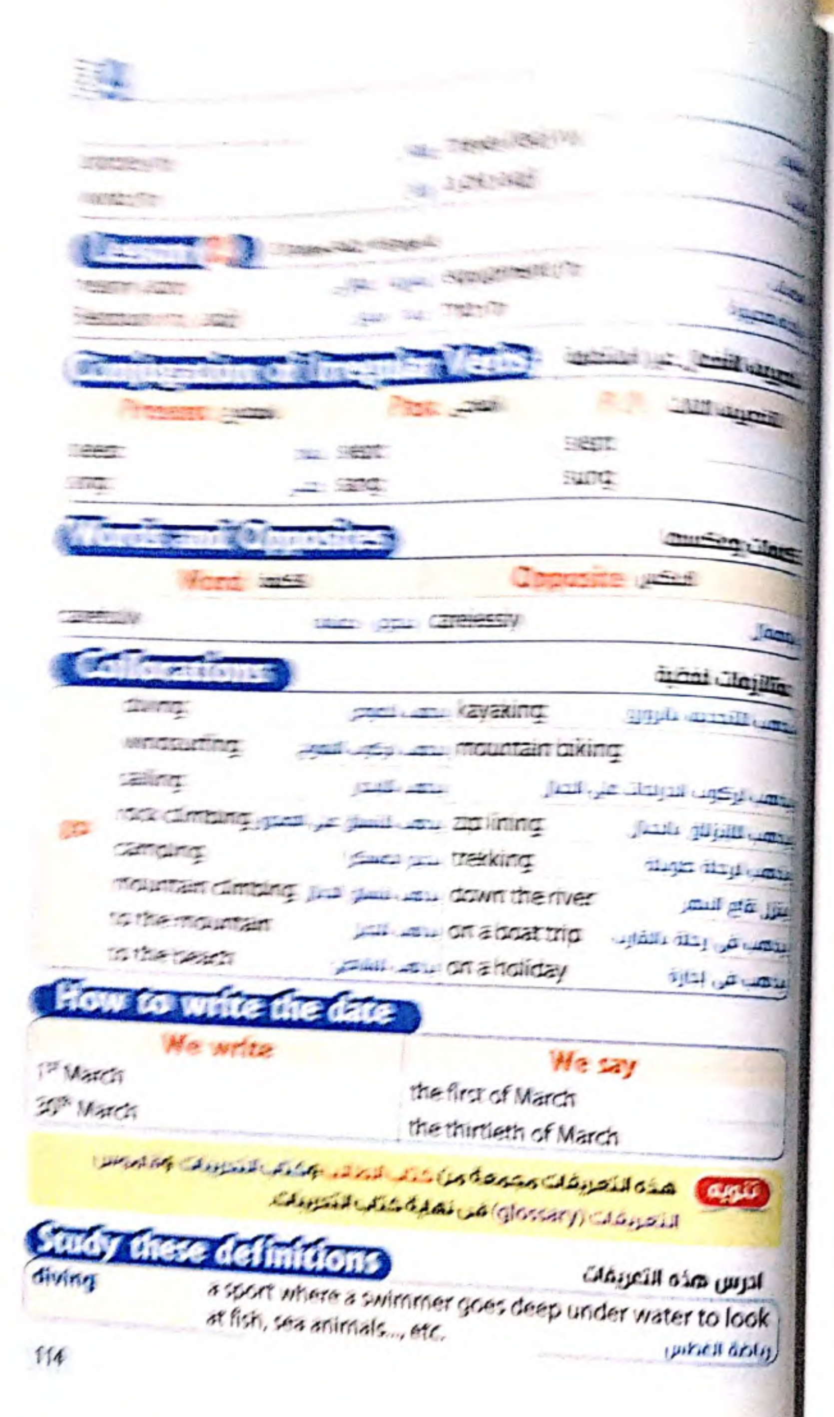
Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين	Serabit el Khadem	منطقة سرابيط الخادم
Sinai	سيناء	Ein Kidd	منطقة عين كيد
Dahab	مدينة دهب	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Ras Shetan	منطقة رأس شيطان		

Lesson 1

SB pages 22&23 WB page 84

How high ... ?	كم ارتفاع ... ؟	scary (adj)	مخيف - مرعب

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



diving	kayaking	يذهب للتجديف بالزورق
windsurfing	mountain biking	
sailing		يذهب لركوب الدراجات على الجبال
rock climbing	zip lining	يذهب للتزلج بالحبال
camping	trekking	يذهب لرحلة طويلة
mountain climbing	down the river	ينزل قاع النهر
to the mountain	on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
to the beach	on a holiday	يذهب في إجازة

How to write the date

We write	We say
1st March	the first of March
30th March	the thirtieth of March

تنويه: هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات والتعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

diving a sport where a swimmer goes deep under water to look at fish, sea animals..., etc. رياضة الغطس

kayaking a sport or hobby where one or two people travel in a narrow boat

mountain biking a sport where someone rides a bike not on roads

rock climbing a sport where someone climbs up rocks

sailing a sport where someone sails a boat or a yacht

tent something you sleep in when you go camping

guide a person who shows a place to tourists

trekking a sport where someone walks, usually for long distances in the mountains or the countryside (with difficulty) الترحال أو التجوال ، رحلة طويلة سيرا على القدم ذات ظروف صعبة

windsurfing a sport where someone travels on water while standing on a board with a sail ركوب الموج، التزحلق على الماء

journey a long trip from one place to another رحلة طويلة

adventure an exciting experience when something unusual or dangerous happens مغامرة

zip lining a sport where someone slides along a metal wire between two high points رياضة التزلج بالحبال

wind is the movement of air رياح

Ordinal Numbers

1st	first	12th	twelfth	23rd	twenty-third
2nd	second	13th	thirteenth	24th	twenty-fourth
3rd	third	14th	fourteenth	25th	twenty-fifth
4th	fourth	15th	fifteenth	26th	twenty-sixth
5th	fifth	16th	sixteenth	27th	twenty-seventh
6th	sixth	17th	seventeenth	28th	twenty-eighth
7th	seventh	18th	eighteenth	29th	twenty-ninth
8th	eighth	19th	nineteenth	30th	thirtieth
9th	ninth	20th	twentieth	31st	thirty-first
10th	tenth	21st	twenty-first		
11th	eleventh	22nd	twenty-second		

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1
- in + (month / year) — في (شهر - سنة)
  ex.: His journey is going to start in April.
- on + date — في (تاريخ)
  ex.: He is going to visit Ras Shetan on 14th March.
- on + days of the week — في (يوم من ايام الاسبوع)
  ex.: We don't go to school on Friday.

2 Compound nouns — الاسماء المركبة

هى عبارة عن اسم مكون من كلمتين او أكثر مثل:

- school library مكتبة مدرسية
- football match مباراة كرة قدم
- shoe shop محل احذية
- water sport رياضة مائية
- team sport رياضة جماعية
- mountain sport رياضة جبلية

3 scary - scared
- scary = frightening — مُخيف - مرعب
  ex.: - Mountain biking looks scary.
- scared = afraid = frightened — خائف - مرعوب
  ex.: - Basem was scared when he saw the snake.

4 • لاحظ الأفعال الآتية واستخدامها مع الرياضات والأنشطة المختلفة.

play	do	go
football	karate	swimming
basketball	boxing	windsurfing
tennis	judo	diving
volleyball		trekking
squash		

5 help + مفعول به + المصدر / to + المصدر — يساعد

ex.: I'm going to have a guide to help me find / to find the way.

6 arrive in / arrive at
- arrive in + يصل إلى مكان كبير (بشكل عام) — She arrived in Cairo at 7 p.m.
- arrive at + يصل إلى مكان صغير (مكان محدد) — He arrived at school late.

Important expressions & prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look scary	يبدو مخيفًا	try rock climbing	يجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور
look fun	يبدو ممتعًا	across Sinai	عبر سيناء
so much to do	الكثير لفعله	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
arrive on	يصل في (تاريخ)	stay with	يقيم مع
travel from	يسافر من (مكان)	help me find the way	يساعدني في ايجاد الطريق
leave on	يغادر في (تاريخ)	take me 43 days	يستغرق مني ثلاثة وأربعون يومًا
plan for the future	يخطط للمستقبل	get the best ideas	يحصل على أفضل الأفكار
do anything scary	يفعل أي شيء مخيف	See you then	أراك في ذلك الوقت
come home on	يعود إلى المنزل في (تاريخ)	there is no time	لا يوجد وقت كافٍ
travel home by	يسافر إلى وطنه بواسطة	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
I'd love to ...	أود أن ...	the best place to shop	أفضل مكان للتسوق
wake up in a tent	يستيقظ في خيمة	sleep by a pool	ينام بجانب حمام سباحة

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening — Pop Quiz: تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



• on Lesson 1 SB page 23

1 **Imad** : What are you looking at, Hassan ?
Hassan : Hi Imad. It's an article[1] about adventure sports[2] in Egypt.
Imad : Oh yes! Last year, I went diving[3] in the Red Sea. It was amazing[4]!
Hassan : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing[5], too.
Imad : What about rock climbing[6] ?
Hassan : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous[7], but I like trekking in the mountains.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مقال | (2) رياضات المغامرة | (3) الغطس | (4) مدهش | (5) رياضة ركوب الأمواج | (6) تسلق الصخور | (7) خطير قليلًا

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

Imad : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to visit Sinai with my family in the holidays.



Hassan : Are you going to try mountain biking[8], Imad ?



Imad : No, I'm not going to do anything scary[9]. It is very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.

Hassan : I think you're right. Zip lining[10] looks scary, too.

Imad : I think it looks fun! I'm going to try it one day!

Hassan : Really ? No way[11] !

Check Vocabulary

(8) رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال | (9) مخيف | (10) التزلج بالحبال | (11) مستحيل

on Lesson 1 SB page 23

2 **Mustafa** : I'm going to go to the mountains.
Hazem : OK. Are you going to go trekking ?
Mustafa : No, I'm not.
Hazem : Are you going to go rock climbing ?
Mustafa : Yes, I am!
Hazem : Your bag is ... D.
Mustafa : That's right.
Hazem : My turn. I'm going to the beach.
Mustafa : Are you going to go kayaking ?
Hazem : No, I'm not.
Mustafa : Are you going to go diving ?
Hazem : Yes, I am.
Mustafa : Your bag is ... B.





Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 23

Hi Eman!

I'm in Dahab with my family. There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to go trekking[1] in the mountains[2]. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary !

Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing[3] in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! We're not going to go kayaking[4]. There is no time!

Love, Reem

Check Vocabulary

(1) يذهب فى رحلة صعبة غالبًا سيرًا على الأقدام | (2) جبال | (3) رياضة ركوب الأمواج | (4) يمارس رياضة التجديف بالزورق

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

My Trekking Adventure

By Ahmed

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai[1]. It's going to be a big adventure[2] ! I'm going to travel nearly[3] 500 kilometres through mountains[4] from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a tent[5] and stay with Bedouin families[6]. I'm going to have a guide[7] to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey is going to take me 43 days.



Check Vocabulary

(1) عبر سيناء | (2) مغامرة | (3) تقريبًا | (4) خلال الجبال | (5) خيمة | (6) عائلات بدوية | (7) مرشد

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

Here's my plan :

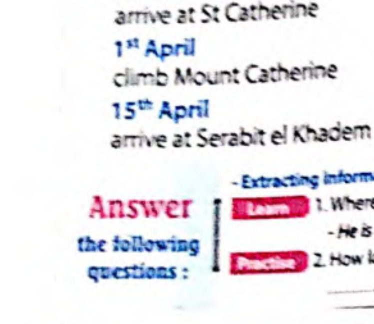
3rd March
leave Ras Shetan

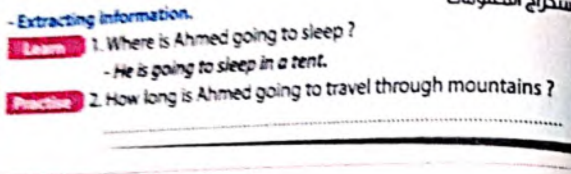
14th March
arrive at Ein Kidd

30th March
arrive at St Catherine

1st April
climb Mount Catherine

15th April
arrive at Serabit el Khadem





Answer the following questions :

- Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات

Learn 1. Where is Ahmed going to sleep ?
- *He is going to sleep in a tent.*

Practice 2. How long is Ahmed going to travel through mountains ?
....



Listening

- on Lesson 2 SB page 25

1 Voice :
The first of April.
The second of May.
The third of August.
The fourteenth of September.
The twenty first of December.
The thirtieth of January.

- on Lesson 2 SB page 25

2 Mariam :
Next year, I'm going to go sailing down the Nile with my family.
We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on 28th December. We're going to arrive in Luxor on 4th January.



- on Lesson 2 WB page 85

3 Listen and write the dates :

Girl : This summer, I'm going on holiday with my family. On 25th July, we're going to drive to the Red Sea. On 30th July, we're going to go on a boat trip. On 3rd August, my cousins are going to visit us. On 6th August, we're going to have a picnic. We're coming home on the tenth. See you then!



Tip

- on Lesson 2 SB page 25

1. It is important to negotiate when you need to decide something important with other people.
   ١. إنه من المهم أن تتفاوض عندما تحتاج إلى أن تقرر شيء ما مهمًا مع أشخاص اخرين.
2. Remember, negotiation is not about winning or losing an argument.
   ٢. تذكر أن المفاوضة لا تعني الفوز أو الخسارة في المناقشة.
3. Listen carefully to what other people say.
   ٣. استمع بعناية إلى ما يقوله الآخرون.
4. You should try to get the best ideas from and for each other.
   ٤. ينبغي عليك أن تحاول الحصول على أفضل الأفكار سواء منك أو من بعضكم البعض.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. When we go camping, we sleep in a ....
   a. castle   b. hotel   c. tent   d. hut
2. Many tourists like to go .... on a board when they go on a journey to the Red Sea.
   a. windsurfing   b. diving   c. driving   d. trekking
3. .... is one of the most dangerous mountain sports.
   a. Diving   b. Kayaking   c. Rock climbing   d. Sailing

موقع الفوق AltFuck.Com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. SB In Dahab, we're going to go .... in the mountains.
   a. diving b. trekking c. windsurfing d. kayaking
   (Multidisciplinary - Bilbeis - Sharkia 20... El Farag 2022)

5. WB All you need to go .... is a boat and some wind.
   a. sailing b. trekking c. diving d. zip lining

6. WB I love .... because I'm good at swimming under water.
   a. zip lining b. diving c. kayaking d. windsurfing
   (Abu Hammad - Sharkia 2022)

7. I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big ....
   a. party b. adventure c. novel d. term
   (Al Ayat - Giza 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. I don't like .... films because they make me feel frightened.
   a. comedy b. scary c. drama d. happy
9. What are your .... for the next weekend ?
   a. planes b. plans c. plays d. plants
10. .... are people who live in the desert.
   a. Bedouins b. Runners c. Beginners d. Villagers

Definitions تعريفات

11. A/An .... is a person who shows a place to tourists.
   a. guide b. musician c. interviewer d. pilot
12. The movement of air is called ....
   a. journey b. hill c. wind d. mountain

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Imad .... diving last year.
   a. made b. went c. gave d. took
14. Hassan would like to .... mountain biking. He has never practised it before.
   a. make b. try c. achieve d. take
15. .... sixth of August, we're going to travel to Hurghada.
   a. Of b. On c. In d. At

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Discussing activities and travel plans مناقشة الأنشطة وخطط السفر

Questions	Answers
1. What are you going to do this weekend ? ١. ماذا ستفعل فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I am going to visit Sinai. - سأزور سيناء.
2. Are you going to try rock climbing ? ٢. هل ستجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور ؟	- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.
3. Where are you going to go next year ? ٣. أين سوف تذهب العام القادم ؟	- I'm going to go sailing on the Nile. - سوف أذهب إلى الإبحار فى النيل.
4. Who are you going to go sailing on the Nile with ? ٤. مع من سوف تذهب إلى الإبحار فى النيل ؟	- With my family. - مع عائلتى.
5. When are you going to leave Aswan ? ٥. متى سوف تغادر أسوان ؟	- On 28th December. - فى الثامن والعشرين من شهر ديسمبر.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

فى هذا الجزء، تتمكن من الكتابة عن خطتك للأجازة الصيفية حوالى ٥ جمل

Your plan for a summer holiday
خطتك للأجازة الصيفية

1. I am going to go trekking across Sinai. ١. سأقوم برحلة سيرًا على الأقدام عبر سيناء.
2. It's going to be a big adventure. ٢. ستكون مغامرة كبيرة.
3. I am going to try zip lining. ٣. سوف أجرب رياضة الانزلاق بالحبال.
4. It looks fun. ٤. إنها تبدو ممتعة / شيقة.
5. I am going to have a guide to help me find the way. ٥. سيكون لدى مرشد ليساعدنى أن أجد الطريق.

AltFuuk.com موقع الفتوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner





III Language

Future with "going to" : المستقبل باستخدام going to

Form التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة →

I	→ am	+	going to	+ inf. مصدر الفعل
He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد	→ is			
You, We, They, أو اسم جمع	→ are			

ex. I'm going to visit Alexandria next week.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية → Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

ex. - They are not going to visit Alexandria.
- He is not going to eat fish.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes / No question : أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ...?

ex. • Is she going to play tennis?
- Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.

B Wh-question : ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة استفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ...?

ex. What are you going to eat for lunch?

Usage الاستخدام

♦ تستخدم هذه الصيغة فى الحالات الآتية :

1 Plans & Intentions : (١) عند التخطيط المسبق أو النية لعمل شئ ما:

ex. - He is going to spend a week in Alexandria.
- I'm going to visit Ali tomorrow.

- لاحظ أن التخطيط المسبق أو النية تأتى مع كلمات مثل:

intend ينوى / plan يخطط / make a decision يتخذ قرار

ex. - We're going to fly to London next week. We've decided that.

2 Prediction with evidence : (٢) التنبؤ بالمستقبل مع وجود دليل على ذلك :

ex. - Look at those dark clouds ! It's going to rain.

هنا دليل قوى على أن السماء ستمطر (السحب سوداء)

3 Actions which are about to happen. (٣) أحداث على وشك الوقوع.

ex. - Watch out ! Your car is going to crash.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Ahmed .... his uncle tomorrow. It's his intention.
   a. will visit b. is visiting c. is going to visit d. visits

2. Look out ! The baby is going to ....
   a. falling b. falls c. fell d. fall

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	c	(intention) [illegible]
2	d	(be going to) [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➲ SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB We .... visit Sinai. I've decided.
   a. go to b. going to c. are going to d. went to
   (Multidisciplinary - West Mahala - Gharbiya 2021 / Kafr El Dawwar - Behira 2022)

موقع التفوق AlTfwk.com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2. SB Tomorrow, we're .... to try windsurfing in the morning.
a. goes b. going c. went d. go
(Shubrad - Behira 2022)

3. WB What .... you going to wear tomorrow ?
a. do b. have c. are d. were
(Aswan 2022)

4. SB Is Reem going to .... trekking this afternoon ?
a. going b. goes c. went d. go

5. WB Who .... cook your meal this evening ?
a. going to b. is going to c. will go d. would go

6. Is Ahmed .... spend the summer holiday in Alexandria ?
a. go b. going c. going to d. goes
(Armant - Luxor 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. There are dark clouds in the sky. It ....
a. will rain b. rains c. is going to rain d. won't rain

8. We .... trekking. It's our intention.
a. are going b. are going to go c. will go d. would go

9. Sama .... take the train to Aswan next week. She made her decision قرار.
a. going to b. will c. is going to d. won't

10. I .... not going to try rock climbing. It's very dangerous !
a. is b. am c. are d. do

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB He is going to <u>sleeping</u> in a tent. (..........)
2. WB What are you <u>go</u> to do next Saturday ? (..........)
3. SB We're going to try windsurfing <u>yesterday</u>. (..........)
4. SB The journey <u>has</u> going to start in March. (..........)
5. SB Is she going <u>trying</u> rock climbing ? (..........)
6. Tamer is going to <u>bought</u> a new car. (Tanta - Gharbia 2022) (..........)
7. I'm going <u>visit</u> Sinai. (Naqada - Qena 2022) (..........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. I <u>don't</u> going to travel this week. (..........)
9. <u>Will</u> you going to visit your grandmother ? (..........)
10. I <u>going</u> to paint my room tomorrow. I have decided that. (..........)

General Exercises  LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where is Eman ?
a. In Dahab b. In Aswan c. In Ras Mohamed d. In Cairo

2. Who is Eman going to go trekking with ?
a. With her father b. With her friends
c. With her family d. With a cousin

3. What's Eman going to try ? - ....
a. Mountain climbing b. Rock climbing
c. Cycling d. Zip lining

4. When are they going to go trekking ?
a. This afternoon b. This morning
c. This evening d. This night



2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mostafa and Ayman are talking about their plans.

Mostafa : Where are you going next weekend ?
Ayman : (1) ....
Mostafa : The desert ! (2) .... ?
Ayman : To go trekking in the mountains.
Mostafa : (3) .... ?
Ayman : No, I don't think it is tiring.
Mostafa : What things will you take with you ?
Ayman : (4) .... What about you ?
Mostafa : (5) ....
Ayman : That's great ! I like diving, too.

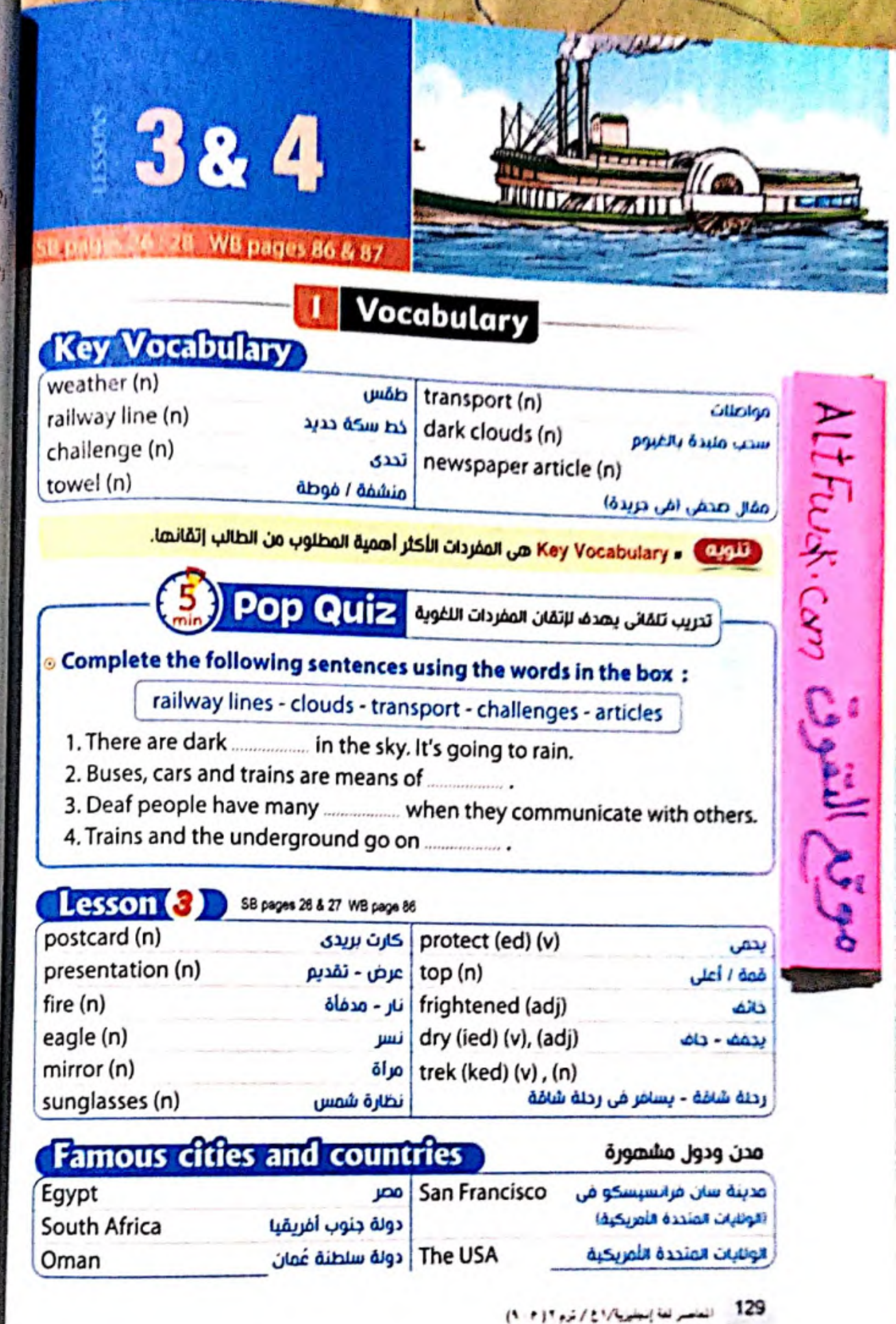
CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We are going to go .... across Sinai. *(Kom Hamada Behira 2022)*
   a. trekking b. tricking c. swimming d. fishing
2. .... is a kind of water sport. *(West ... Cairo 2022)*
   a. Mountain climbing b. Sailing
   c. Zip lining d. Trekking
3. "Adventure" means a/an .... experience when something unusual or dangerous happens.
   a. boring b. tiring c. exciting d. funny
4. In .... , you start high, but you finish it on the ground.
   a. kayaking b. zip lining c. trekking d. diving
5. .... families live in the desert.
   a. Ancient b. Bedouin c. Village d. City
6. SB We're going to go .... in the Red Sea.
   a. riding b. trekking c. windsurfing d. climbing
7. WB They took four days to cross the desert. It was a difficult ....
   a. trip b. journey c. lesson d. tent
8. I .... abroad. It's my plan.
   a. 'm going to travel b. 'll travel
   c. travelled d. would have travelled
9. This afternoon, we .... to try rock climbing. It's too scary !
   a. won't b. will c. going d. are not going
   (Biba - Beni Suef 2022)
10. .... you going to travel to Hurghada in August ?
    a. Is b. Are c. Am d. Will

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We're going to try mountain biking last month. (........)
2. He's going sleeping for 10 hours. (........)
3. His birthday is on the third from May. (........)
4. SB Is she go to go kayaking ? *(Basioun - Gharbia 2022)* (........)



Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26 - 28 WB pages 86 & 87

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

weather (n)	طقس	transport (n)	مواصلات
railway line (n)	خط سكة حديد	dark clouds (n)	سحب ملبدة بالغيوم
challenge (n)	تحدى	newspaper article (n)	مقال صحفى (فى جريدة)
towel (n)	منشفة / فوطة		

تنويه ■ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

railway lines - clouds - transport - challenges - articles

1. There are dark .... in the sky. It's going to rain.
2. Buses, cars and trains are means of ....
3. Deaf people have many .... when they communicate with others.
4. Trains and the underground go on ....

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 86

postcard (n)	كارت بريدى	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
presentation (n)	عرض - تقديم	top (n)	قمة / أعلى
fire (n)	نار - مدفأة	frightened (adj)	خائف
eagle (n)	نسر	dry (ied) (v), (adj)	يجفف - جاف
mirror (n)	مرآة	trek (ked) (v) , (n)	رحلة شاقة - يسافر فى رحلة شاقة
sunglasses (n)	نظارة شمس		

Famous cities and countries مدن ودول مشهورة

Egypt	مصر	San Francisco	مدينة سان فرانسيسكو فى الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
South Africa	دولة جنوب أفريقيا		
Oman	دولة سلطنة عُمان	The USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية

موقع الشوف AltFwsk.com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

London	مدينة لندن	Hong Kong	هونج كونج
Japan	دولة اليابان	South America	أمريكا الجنوبية
India	دولة الهند	Kolkata	كلكتا (عاصمة الهند القديمة)
Mumbai	مدينة مومباى (الهند)	New York	نيويورك
England	إنجلترا		

Weather words كلمات خاصة بالطقس

Noun	اسم	Adjective	صفة
rain	مطر	rainy	ممطر
sun	شمس	sunny	مشمس
cloud	سحابة	cloudy	ملبد بالسحاب
snow	جليد	snowy	يكسو بالجليد - مثلج
storm	عاصفة	stormy	عاصف
wind	رياح	windy	عاصف (شديد الرياح)
fog	ضباب	foggy	ضبابى

Forms of transport وسائل النقل

cars	السيارات	planes	الطائرات
ships	السفن	trains	القطارات

Lesson 4

SB page 25 WB page 67

mistake (n)	خطأ	introduction (n)	مقدمة
complete (d) (v)	يكمل / ينهى	character (n)	شخصية
British (adj)	بريطانى (الجنسية)	chart (n)	رسم بيانى
return (ed) (v)	يعود	support (ed) (v)	يدعم / يؤيد

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hurt	يجرح / يؤذى	hurt	hurt
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
tell	يخبر	told	told

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
dark	غامق / مظلم	light	فاتح
east	شرق	west	غرب
wet	مبتل	dry	جاف

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

cloud / cloudy	a cloud is a white object that floats in the sky. When there are clouds in the sky, the weather is cloudy	سحابة / ملبد بالسحب
fog / foggy	fog is a very low cloud, when it becomes difficult to see very far. When there is fog, the weather is foggy	غيوم / ملبد بالغيوم
rain / rainy	rain is water that falls from the sky. When it rains, the weather is rainy	مطر / ممطر
snow / snowy	snow is like cold, soft, white rain and falls from the sky. When it snows, the weather is snowy	جليد / جليدى
wind / windy	wind is the movement of air. When the wind blows, the weather is windy	رياح / عاصف
storm / stormy	a storm is very bad weather, with a lot of wind and rain or snow. When there is a storm, the weather is stormy	عاصفة / عاصف
sun / sunny	The sun is what gives us light. When the sun shines, the weather is sunny	الشمس / مشمس
protect	look after, keep safe.	يحمى
railway line	the metal that a train travels on	خط سكة حديد
challenge	a difficult task or problem.	تحدى

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

make	a salad	يجهز السلطة	take	a photo	يأخذ صورة - يصور
	a cup of tea	يجهز كوب من الشاى		a challenge	يخوض تحدى
	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ		the ship back to	يرجع بالسفينة إلى
	breakfast	يجهز الإفطار			

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 by لاحظ المعانى المختلفة لكلمة (by)

* by + شخص بواسطة

- This room was painted by Ali.

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

- **by +** مكان — بالقرب من / بجوار
  - He's sitting by the fire.
- **by +** وقت — بحلول ذلك الوقت
  - By 2025, we will have built a new house.
- **by +** وسيلة مواصلات — عن طريق
  - We went to Cairo by bus.

2 a bit (a little) ≠ much

توضع كلمة **(a bit / little)** أمام الصفة لتشير أن الصفة موجودة بدرجة قليلة.

- I'm a bit frightened of dogs.

بينما توضع **(much)** أمام الصفة لتشير أن الصفة موجودة بدرجة كبيرة.

- I'm much frightened of dogs.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do an activity	يقوم بنشاط	return to	يعود إلى (مكان)
at the top of the mountain	فى أعلى الجبل	tell a story	يحكى قصة
on the way down	فى طريق للنزول (الأسفل)	protect ... from	يحمى ... من
fall over	يسقط	get dressed	يرتدى ملابسه
sit by the fire	يجلس بالقرب من المدفأة	across India	عبر الهند
put on a hat	يرتدى قبعة	This sounds easy	هذا يبدو سهلاً
come out of	يخرج من	keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
at the start of the trip	فى بداية الرحلة	one day earlier	يومًا مبكرًا
put in the correct order	ضع فى الترتيب الصحيح	cook (meal) on a fire	يطهو (وجبة) على النار
ride on a camel	يركب على جمل	take the ship back to	يستقل سفينة عائدًا إلى
complete the challenge	يكمل التحدى	go around	يتجول
give a great idea for	يعطى فكرة جيدة لـ	in just 80 days	فى خلال ثمانون يومًا فقط
travel around the world	يسافر حول العالم	travel on the sea	يسافر فى البحر
return on	يعود فى ... (تاريخ)		

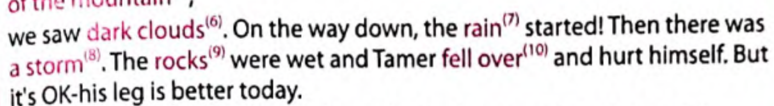
II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



on Lesson 3 SB page 26



Dear Grandma,
We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday[1] in South Africa[2]! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.
Yesterday was an adventure[3]. We went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny[4] when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain[5], we saw dark clouds[6]. On the way down, the rain[7] started! Then there was a storm[8]. The rocks[9] were wet and Tamer fell over[10] and hurt himself. But it's OK-his leg is better today.
Tomorrow the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try zip lining! I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited[11], too.
See you soon,
Dalia

Check Vocabulary

(1) فى أجازة	(2) دولة جنوب أفريقيا	(3) مغامرة	(4) مشمس	(5) قمة الجبل	(6) سحب سوداء / ملبدة بالغيوم
(7) مطر	(8) عاصفة	(9) صخور	(10) سقط	(11) متحمس / منفعل	



AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 26

A : It's very sunny and there aren't any clouds[1] in the sky. I think it's a very hot day.

B : There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that there's going to be a storm[2].

Check Vocabulary

(1) سحب	(2) عاصفة

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

C : It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain. I think it's quite hot.

D : It's very foggy[3]. I think it's raining. It looks cold and wet.

Check Vocabulary

(3) ملبد بالغيوم / مليء بالضباب

- on Lesson 3 SB page 27

(a) 2 (b) 1 (c) 3 (d) 4



Nader : My trip to the desert[1], by Nader.

Last weekend, we went on a trip[2] to the desert. I woke up early and made myself breakfast[3]. Then I got dressed[4]. I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror[5]. I put on a hat and sunglasses[6] to **protect**[7] myself from the sun. At the desert, we met our guide and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold[8], we sat by the fire to keep ourselves warm[9].

Check Vocabulary

(1) الصحراء
(2) رحلة قصيرة
(3) صنعت إفطارًا لنفسي
(4) ارتديت ملابسي
(5) نظرت إلى نفسي في المرآة
(6) نظارة شمس
(7) يحمي
(8) أصبح الجو باردًا
(9) لنحافظ بدفء أجسامنا

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea and guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context.**

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية وتخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

Learn 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
- *Nader's trip to the desert.*

Practise 2. What does the underlined word **protect** in the text mean ?

....

Reading

- on Lesson 4 SB page 28

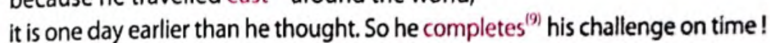
Around the world in 80 Days by Jules Verne

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a newspaper article[1] about a new railway line[2] across India. It gave him a great idea[3] for a book. He wrote a story about a British[4] man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge[5] to travel around the world in just 80 days. This sounds easy today, but at that time, there were no cars or planes.

London to Suez, Egypt	train and ship	7 days
Suez to India	ship	13 days
India to Hong Kong	train and ship	16 days
Hong Kong to Japan	ship	6 days
Japan to the USA	ship	22 days
Across the USA	train	7 days
USA to London	ship	9 days
Leave on 2nd October	Return on 21st December	



When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm[6] at sea and he arrives in London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake[7]: because he travelled east[8] around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes[9] his challenge on time !



Check Vocabulary

(1) مقال في جريدة	(2) خط سكة حديد	(3) فكرة رائعة	(4) بريطاني الجنسية	(5) تحدى
(6) عاصفة	(7) اخطأ	(8) شرقًا	(9) يكمل / ينهي	

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The Egyptians are designing a .... line that leads to يؤدي إلى the New Administrative Capital العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة.
a. car b. railway c. bike d. motor

2. Today, the .... is sunny, but it is nice.
a. weather b. leather c. whether d. feather

3. I read a lot of information about pollution in a newspaper ....
a. article b. note c. notebook d. capital

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. SB We sat by the .... to keep ourselves warm. (El Saf - Giza 202..)
a. fire b. snow c. wild d. line

5. SB Phileas Fogg takes a .... to travel around the world in just 80 days.
a. mirror b. challenge c. railway line d. presentation
(Multidisciplinary - East Cairo - Cairo 2021)

6. WB There is .... at the top of the mountain. Look! It's white.
a. air b. storm c. sun d. snow

7. SB I looked at myself in the .... (El Riad - Kafr El Sheikh 202..)
a. glasses b. mirror c. door d. picture

8. WB We can't sail because there is no ....
a. sun b. snow c. wind d. fog

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. You shouldn't drive your car in .... weather as you won't see well.
a. sunny b. funny c. foggy d. hot

10. Sara .... a mistake when she answered the questions without reading them well.
a. took b. did c. made d. gave

11. I bought a new jacket to .... me warm.
a. take b. do c. keep d. dry

Definitions تعريفات

12. When the sun shines, the weather is ....
a. foggy b. sunny c. rainy d. cold

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. After Sami .... out of the sea, he dried himself with a towel.
a. made b. gave c. came d. put

14. It is important to .... on a hat in the desert as it protects you from the sun.
a. make b. put c. give d. cut

15. Today, it .... easy to travel around the world in less than 80 days.
a. tastes b. takes c. sounds d. leaves

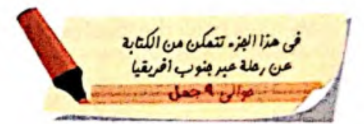
2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Describing the weather وصف حالة الطقس

Questions	Answers
• What is the weather like today ? • How is the weather today ? كيف تكون حالة الطقس اليوم ؟	- There is fog, the weather is foggy. يوجد ضباب. الطقس ضبابى.
• How was the weather yesterday ? كيف كان الطقس بالأمس ؟	- The weather was sunny. كان الطقس مشمسًا.
• How will the weather be tomorrow ? كيف سيكون الطقس غدًا ؟	- The weather will be windy tomorrow. سيكون الطقس عاصف غدًا.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

A journey across South Africa
رحلة عبر جنوب أفريقيا



1. Last month, I saw some beautiful photos about South Africa on Facebook.
١. الشهر الماضى، رأيتُ بعض الصور الجميلة عن جنوب أفريقيا على الفيسبوك.
2. I went to South Africa by plane. ٢. ذهبتُ إلى جنوب أفريقيا بالطائرة.
3. I had a nice time there. ٣. قضيت وقتًا رائعًا هناك.
4. On Saturday, I went trekking in the mountains. ٤. يوم السبت، ذهبت للتمشية فى الجبال.
5. The weather was sunny. ٥. كان الطقس مشمسًا.
6. On Sunday, I got to the top of the mountain. ٦. يوم الأحد، صعدتُ إلى قمة الجبل.
7. I saw dark clouds at the top of the mountain. ٧. رأيتُ سحب ملبدة بالغيوم على قمة الجبل.
8. There was a big storm, but it finished. ٨. كان هناك عاصفة قوية ولكنها انتهت.
9. I tried zip lining and it was exciting. ٩. ذهبت لتجربة رياضة الانزلاق بالحبال وكانت تجربة رائعة.

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

III Language

Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

A We use reflexive pronouns for emphasis :

الضمائر المنعكسة هى ضمائر تعود على فاعل الجملة وتستخدم للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قد قام بعمل الفعل بنفسه وغالبًا ما تأتى هذه الضمائر فى نهاية الجملة

ex. I polished the shoes myself.

Subject الفاعل		Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس		Subject الفاعل		Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس	
I	أنا	myself	بنفسى	You	أنتَ / أنتِ	yourself	بنفسكَ/بنفسكِ
He	هو	himself	بنفسه	You	أنتم / أنتن	yourselves	بأنفسكم / بأنفسكن
She	هى	herself	بنفسها	We	نحن	ourselves	بأنفسنا
It	هو / هى	itself	بنفسه / بنفسها	They	هم / هن	themselves	بأنفسهم / بأنفسهن
	لغير العاقل		لغير العاقل				

ex. - She taught herself to speak German.
- We must cook the food ourselves.

B When the object is the same as the subject of the verb, we use the reflexive pronouns.

• عندما يكون المفعول هو نفسه الفاعل فى الجملة نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة

ex. - He will hurt himself.
- She saw herself in the mirror.

• لاحظ أن فى الجملة الأمرية إذا كان المخاطب مفرد نستخدم (yourself) وإذا كان جمع (yourselves)

ex. Spend a few minutes preparing yourself / yourselves for exercise.

• يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بمفرده» أو «بدون مساعدة»

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

ex. - I went shopping on my own (alone).
- He lives on his own (alone / by himself).
- Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help) ?

• يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر مثل after / for / on .

ex. - The girls looked after themselves.
- Always depend on yourself.

ولكن لا نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة مع حروف جر مثل (with) ونستخدم ضمائر المفعول بدلًا منها .

ex. - Bring your jacket with you. (Not : with yourself)

• تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة :

ex. - Enjoy yourself = استمتع بوقتك
- Take care of yourself = اعتنى بنفسك
- Help yourself (to) = ساعد نفسك / تفضل بأخذ
- Make yourself at home = تصرف وكأنك فى منزلك
- Behave yourself = تصرف بأدب / تأدب

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Do Mona and Sara paint the room .... ?
a. herself b. himself c. themselves d. yourselves

2. She washed the dishes ....
a. himself b. herself c. myself d. itself

No.		Answer + Explanation
1	c	(Mona & Sara) [illegible]
2	b	(She) [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB We enjoyed .... when we went sailing.
a. himself b. themselves c. ourselves d. myself

2. WB The birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles.
a. herself b. itself c. yourselves d. themselves
(New Damietta - Damietta 2022)

موقع التفوق AlTfwk.com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3. SB I made .... some salad for lunch.
a. himself b. itself c. herself d. myself

(... - Beni Suef ...)

4. WB Sara has a jacket to keep .... warm.
a. himself b. themselves c. herself d. yourself

5. SB Would you like to make .... a cup of tea ?
a. yourself b. himself c. herself d. itself

(Esna - Luxor ...)

6. He puts on a hat to protect ....
a. himself b. ourselves c. themselves d. itself

(... - Faiyum ...)

7. She did her homework ....
a. himself b. herself c. myself d. yourself

➲ **El-Moasser Exercises** تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. You both can see .... in a mirror .
a. yourself b. ourselves c. yourselves d. themselves

9. The teacher told the students to behave ....
a. ourselves b. themselves c. yourself d. yourselves

10. She taught .... to speak English.
a. himself b. herself c. themselves d. itself

11. Did you enjoy .... at the funfair ?
a. yourself b. himself c. herself d. myself

12. I cleaned the kitchen alone. This means I cleaned it by ....
a. myself b. herself c. itself d. themselves

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

➲ **SB, WB and Previous Exams** تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB We cooked <u>yourself</u> dinner on a fire. (........)
2. WB I didn't buy this cake. I made it <u>on</u> myself. (........)
3. SB She took a photo of <u>themselves</u>. (........)
4. The cat is cleaning <u>myself</u>. (Ain Shams - Cairo 2022) (........)
5. Ali, do homework by <u>herself</u>. (Elidwa - Minya 2022) (........)
6. The children made these toys <u>itself</u>. (South Giza - Giza 2022) (........)

➲ **El-Moasser Exercises** تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Mona drew <u>himself</u> a picture. (........)
8. Heba and Mona cleaned up <u>with</u> themselves. (........)
9. Did you take the photo by <u>himself</u> ? (........)
10. I bought <u>themselves</u> a cold drink. (........)

General Exercises  LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did you go trekking in the mountains ?
a. Yesterday b. Today c. Last week d. Last month

2. What was the weather like when you started ?
a. Cloudy b. Rainy c. Sunny d. Snowy

3. Did you get to the top ?
a. Yes, we did. b. No, we didn't.
c. Not in the text. d. I don't know.

4. What did you see at the top ?
a. Rain b. The sun c. Dark clouds d. A plane

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I didn't buy this cake. I made it .... (Nag Hammadi - Qena 2022)
a. myself b. himself c. herself d. yourself

2. Did you hurt .... ? (Esna - Luxor 2022)
a. ourselves b. yourself c. himself d. myself

3. I'm sure, Samira made this cup of tea by ....
a. itself b. herself c. myself d. himself

4. SB I woke up early and .... myself breakfast.
a. dried b. made c. hurt d. started

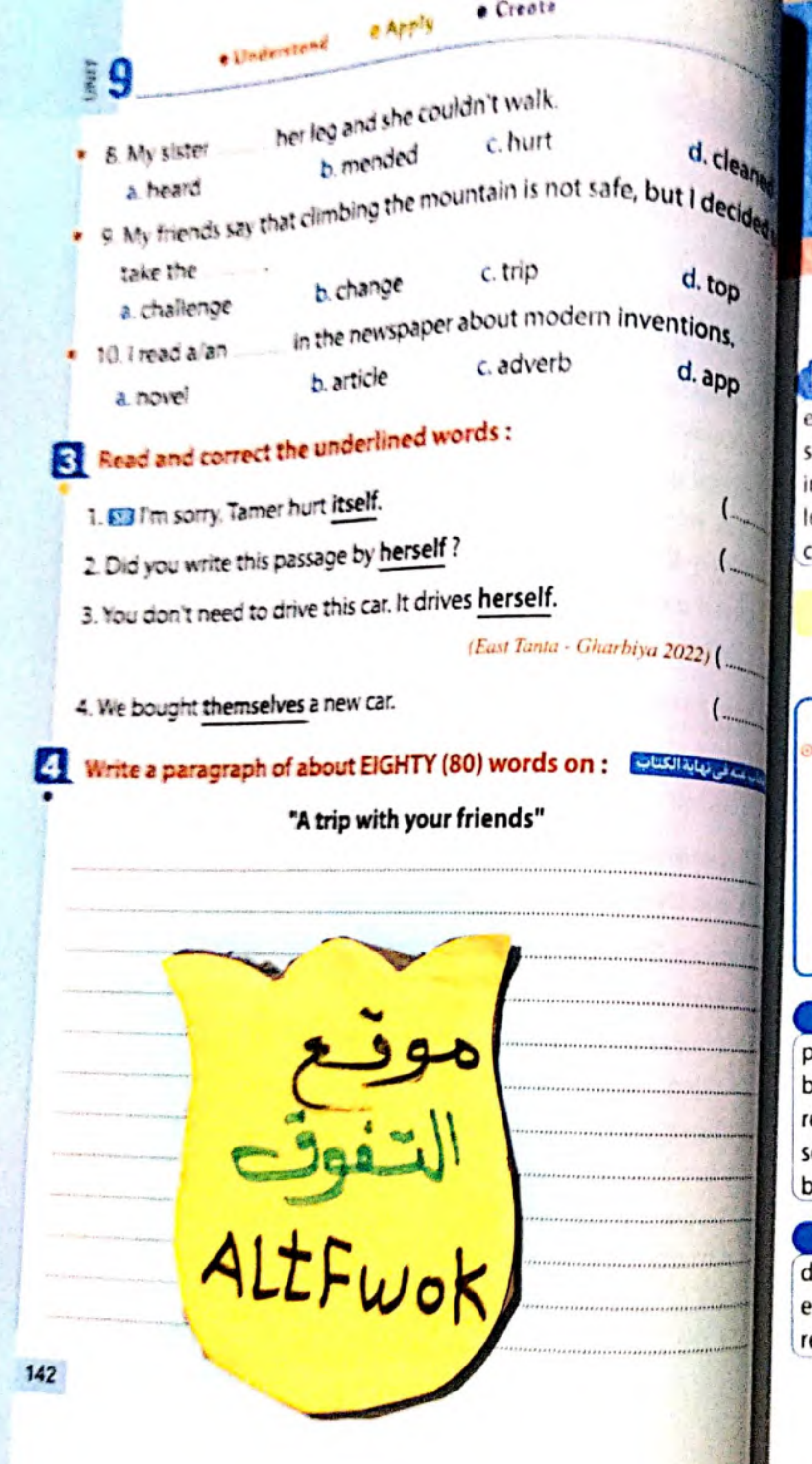
5. When there's .... , we can see ice on the ground.
a. sun b. storm c. snow d. rain

6. The ground was very .... after the rain yesterday.
a. windy b. wet c. dry d. high

7. She .... a mistake and apologised.
a. did b. made c. took d. sold

AlFwaq.com موقع الفواق

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



8. My sister .... her leg and she couldn't walk.
   a. heard b. mended c. hurt d. cleaned
9. My friends say that climbing the mountain is not safe, but I decided to take the ....
   a. challenge b. change c. trip d. top
10. I read a/an .... in the newspaper about modern inventions.
   a. novel b. article c. adverb d. app

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I'm sorry. Tamer hurt <u>itself</u>. (........)
2. Did you write this passage by <u>herself</u> ? (........)
3. You don't need to drive this car. It drives <u>herself</u>. *(East Tanta - Gharbiya 2022)* (........)
4. We bought <u>themselves</u> a new car. (........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A trip with your friends"

موقع التفوق AltFwok

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 29&30 WB pages 88&89



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

email	بريد الكترونى	grandad (n)	الجد
suggestion (n)	اقتراح	album (n)	ألبوم (صور)
introduction (n)	مقدمة	chess (n)	شطرنج
letter	خطاب	magazine (n)	مجلة
circle (d) (v), (n)	يضع دائرة / دائرة	station (n)	محطة

تنويه • Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



5 min Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى بهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

magazine - album - suggestions - station - circle

1. My father put his photos in an ....
2. Making .... is a good habit among friends.
3. I wrote about smoking in the school ....
4. The train to Alexandria left the .... on time.

Lesson 5 SB page 29 WB page 88

prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	park (n)	حديقة عامة
both	كلًا من	stick (n)	عصا
respond (ed) (v) (n)	يرد - رد	respect (ed) (v) , (n)	يحترم - احترام
sound (ed) (v)	يبدو	hobby (n)	هواية
basketball (n)	كرة السلة	underline (d) (v)	يضع خطًا تحت

Lesson 6 SB page 30 WB page 89

dear (adj)	عزيز / غال	advantages (n)	مزايا / مميزات
ending (n)	نهاية	online (adv), (adj)	متصل بالإنترنت
reply (ied) (v) , (n)	يرد - رد	station (n)	محطة

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 look forward to + noun اسم / (inf. + ing) يتطلع إلى

ex.: - I'm looking forward to visiting Aswan.

- We're looking forward to the summer vacation.

2 would ('d) rather + inf. ... يفضل أن

ex.: - I'd rather do sport.

- I'd rather play chess.

3 would ('d) prefer + to + inf. ... يفضل أن

ex.: - I'd prefer to play chess.

• لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية مع الفعل "make".

make	- notes	يدون ملاحظات
	- suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
	- a sentence	يكون جملة
	- a special present for	يصنع هدية خاصة لـ
	- a photo album	يصنع ألبوم صور
	- a presentation	يجهز عرض

• لاحظ التراكيب اللغوية الآتية للتعبير عن الاقتراح.

Making Suggestions

1. Let's + inf. — هيا بنا
   - Let's play tennis.
2. How / What about + (inf. + ing) ..... ? — ما رأيك / (وماذا عن) ..... ؟
   - How / What about playing basketball ?
3. Why don't we + inf. المصدر ..... ? — لما لا ..... ؟
   - Why don't we go windsurfing ?
4. Shall we + inf. المصدر ..... ? — هيا بنا .. ؟ / هلا فعلنا .... ؟
   - Shall we go diving ?

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	I'm really excited.	أنا متحمس حقًا.
the most dangerous	الأكثر خطورة	by the beach	بجوار الشاطئ
good at	جيد فى	have tennis lessons	يأخذ دروس فى التنس
give a presentation	يقدم عرض	would like	يفضل / يود.....

respect other people's opinions	يحترم آراء الآخرين	write to me soon	راسلنى قريبًا
put in order	يرتب	end an email	ينهى رسالة بريد إلكترونى
respond to suggestions	يرد على الاقتراحات	See you soon !	أراك لاحقًا ! / قريبًا
reply to	يرد لـ	plan for ...	يخطط لـ

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 29

Ola : I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. I love being by the sea[1]. What shall we do this afternoon ?

Lamia : Why don't we go swimming ?

Ola : I'm not sure. Swimming is fun[2], but we can do that at home. I'd rather[3] do something more exciting.

Lamia : OK. How about going windsurfing ?

Ola : I don't know. I'm not very good at windsurfing and it isn't very windy today.

Lamia : OK, not swimming and not windsurfing. I know! Let's go kayaking.

Ola : Good idea! I love kayaking.

Check Vocabulary

(1) بجوار البحر	(2) متعة	(3) أن أفضل

Videoscript on Lesson 5 SB page 29

There are many sports that people enjoy today, such as hockey[1], athletics[2], and archery[3]. But did you know these sports, and many others, were first played in Ancient Egypt ?[4] Very old drawings and paintings[5] show people playing a lot of different sports.

Check Vocabulary

(1) لعبة الهوكى	(2) ألعاب القوى	(3) لعبة الرماية	(4) مصر القديمة	(5) لوحات / رسومات

AlFuuk.com موقع الفلوك

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

This picture in the Temple of Ramses III shows people fencing with sticks[6]. In fencing today, two people fight each other with swords[7].

The Ancient Egyptians also liked running. During the time of King Taharka, there was a race[8] of 100 kilometres.

People believe that this was a test[9] so that the king could find his best soldiers[10]. Today, there is a race called the Pharaonic[11] Race. This, too, is 100 kilometres. It starts at the Hawara Pyramid and finishes in Saqqara.

Running is very popular[12] today. Millions of people around the world go running every week. It is a good way to stay healthy[13].

Some people think the ancient Egyptians played tennis, because there is a town near the Nile called Tinnis... and because the Arabic word for part of the hand is rahat al-yad. This sounds like the racket[14] you hit the ball with.

Sport was very important in Ancient Egypt. Is sport important for you ?

Check Vocabulary

(6) المبارزة بالعصي	(7) سيوف	(8) سباق	(9) اختبار	(10) جنود
(11) فرعوني	(12) مشهور / شائع	(13) يحافظ على صحته	(14) مضرب التنس	



Reading

- on Lesson 6 SB page 30

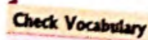
New message
From : Maher
To : Karim
Subject : Your visit

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited[1] that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to[2] seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive ? We can meet you at the station[3].



Our new home is by the beach[4]. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving ?



Check Vocabulary

(1) متحمس	(2) يتطلع إلى	(3) محطة	(4) بجوار الشاطئ



On Thursday, Grandad[5] is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present[6]. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins ? We can make him a photo album[7]. See you on Saturday !

From
Maher

Check Vocabulary

(5) جد	(6) هدية مميزة	(7) ألبوم صور فوتوغرافية

- on Lesson 6 WB page 89

Dear Manal,

I'm writing to tell you my plans for the summer. It's going to be fun but busy. Then you can write to me about your plans!

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria. They're going to take me to the famous library. I'm very excited about that. It's a beautiful building.

I'm going to go home on 22nd August. I'm going to have tennis lessons! I can't play tennis now, but I'm going to be very good after the lessons!
Let's do some things together before we go back to school.
What about going to the beach? You always like swimming.
Write to me soon so I know your plans!
From,
Judy

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Extracting information — استخراج معلومات

Learn 1. Judy is writing this email to tell Manal about her ....
a. plains b. plans c. planes d. plays

Practise 2. Judy is going to go home on 22nd ....
a. September b. October c. November d. August

Exercise on Vocabulary

◎ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

➲ **Key vocabulary**

1. Mum loves cooking food very much, so I always read .... about food.
   a. offices b. kitchens c. magazines d. screens

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2. Please, can I get off the next .... ?
a. suggestion b. station c. magazine d. email
3. I collected all my family photos and put them in a/an ....
a. quiz b. album c. book d. basket

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. SB Maher wants to make a .... present for his grandad.
a. special b. private c. general d. public
(Hehia - Sharkia 2022)

5. WB Always check your final email for any .... in spelling or grammar.
a. plans b. mistakes c. words d. lessons
(Multidisciplinary - West Mahala - Gharbiya 2021)

6. SB Grandad is going to .... us on Thursday.
a. find b. visit c. draw d. buy

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. We learned to .... older people. It's polite to do that.
a. destroy b. delete c. respect d. carry
8. That .... easy to practise your sport in your free time.
a. comes b. goes c. sounds d. sails
9. We usually start the email with the word "........".
a. Dare b. Dear c. Deer d. Dart
10. There are many .... of transport nowadays.
a. forms b. frames c. farms d. farmers
11. One of the .... of the underground is that it is cheap, clean and fast.
a. advantages b. presentations c. introductions d. stations

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. He thinks that rock climbing is a bit scary. He'd rather .... another sport.
a. make b. do c. give d. go
13. Our science teacher .... us some suggestions about our trip to the Science Museum.
a. took b. gave c. made d. did
14. I'd prefer .... tennis on Mondays.
a. plays b. playing c. to play d. to playing
15. I'm .... forward to seeing my uncle before travelling.
a. making b. taking c. looking d. doing

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Making and responding to suggestions : تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها

❶ Suggestion الاقتراح	❷ Positive response الرد بالموافقة	❸ Negative response الرد بالرفض
- Why don't we go swimming ? لما لا نذهب للسباحة ؟	- That's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة.	- No, thanks. لا، شكراً.
- How about meeting next weekend ? ما رأيك أن نتقابل العطلة القادمة ؟	- Great idea. فكرة عظيمة.	- I don't really feel like it. أنا حقاً لا أحب هذا.
- What about watching TV ? ما رأيك في مشاهدة التلفزيون ؟	- OK, why not ? حسناً ولم لا ؟	- I'm not very keen on that. لست متحمسًا لذلك.
- Shall we have a picnic ? - Shall we go rock climbing ? - ما رأيك أن نذهب في نزهة ؟ - ما رأيك بأن نذهب لتسلق الصخور ؟	- Yes, let's do so. نعم، هيا نفعل هذا.	- Maybe some other time. - I'm not sure. That sounds a bit scary. ربما في وقت آخر. أنا غير متأكد هذا يبدو مخيفا قليلا
- We could have a game of football. من الممكن أن نلعب مباراة كرة قدم.	- OK. موافق.	- That's not possible. - I'd rather (go to the beach) هذا ليس ممكنًا. أنا أفضل (الذهاب للشاطئ).
- Let's go to the Public Library to read some books. هيا بنا نذهب للمكتبة العامة لقراءة بعض الكتب.	- That's a good idea. - إنها فكرة جيدة.	- I'd prefer to (go to the beach). أنا أفضل (الذهاب للشاطئ).
- Let's go shopping. هيا بنا نذهب للتسوق.	- Great idea. - فكرة عظيمة.	- Sorry, I'm busy. آسف. أنا مشغول.
- I suggest going to the museum. أنا اقترح أن نذهب للمتحف.	- I agree. أنا موافق.	- I disagree. أنا غير موافق.

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2 Writing



Forms of transport

وسائل المواصلات

1. We have different forms of transport today.
   لدينا وسائل مختلفة من المواصلات اليوم
2. There are some forms of transport that are also hobbies.
   هناك بعض وسائل المواصلات التي تعتبر هوايات أيضًا
3. The fastest form of transport is the plane.
   تعتبر الطائرة أكثر وسائل المواصلات سرعة
4. Some people prefer certain forms of transport.
   بعض الأشخاص يفضلون وسائل مواصلات معينة

Writing tips

Remember to use joining words to connect ideas.

تذكر أن تستخدم الروابط لربط الأفكار

- I can't play tennis now, but I'm going to be very good after the lessons!
- Write to me soon so I know your plans!

Remember

تذكر

- Emails usually start with "Dear (name)".

تبدأ عادة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني بكلمة "عزيزي / عزيزتي + الاسم"

- Emails to a friend usually end with an expression like "See you soon"

تنتهي عادة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني المرسلة إلى صديق بتعبير مثل "أراك قريبًا"

General Exercises

LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى المحادثة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (محتوى الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Who is looking forward to seeing Karim? - ....
   a. Samy b. Maher c. Karim's sister d. Sawsan
2. Karim is coming from ....
   a. Cairo b. Alexandria c. Aswan d. Luxor
3. When is Karim coming? - ....
   a. Next Saturday b. Today c. Tomorrow d. Next year
4. How is Karim coming? - By ....
   a. train b. bus c. plane d. boat

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salem and Ameer are talking about playing sports.

Salem : What shall we do tomorrow?
Ameer : (1) ....
Salem : Are you good at playing basketball?
Ameer : (2) .... Do you like playing it?
Salem : (3) .... , but I'm not tall enough.
Ameer : Don't worry. I'm not tall, either. But I practise it a lot.
Salem : (4) .... ?
Ameer : I practise it at school or in the club.
Salem : (5) .... ?
Ameer : I practise it every day.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1. SB .... to a friend usually end with an expression like "See you soon". (Youssef Al Seddik - Fayoum 2022)
   a. Adventures b. Paragraphs c. Passages d. Emails
- 2. The train to Aswan leaves the .... at 7 pm. (West Cairo - Cairo 2022)
   a. station b. street c. road d. circle

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3. Write a/an .... at the beginning of your email. (Tema - Sohag 2022)
a. passage b. text c. conclusion d. introduction

4. After reading the story, I .... some notes.
a. made b. did c. bought d. sold

5. I felt .... when I saw my team winning the match.
a. excited b. afraid c. warm d. frightened

6. Egypt has many .... of transport.
a. farms b. forms c. objects d. subjects

7. I'd rather .... sports on holidays.
a. make b. take c. do d. send

8. SB Shall we .... rock climbing ?
a. going b. go c. went d. to go

9. .... going to the park ?
a. Shall we b. Let's c. How about d. Can we

10. WB The children put on hats to protect .... from the sun.
a. itself b. himself c. herself d. themselves

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I'm looking forward to <u>see</u> you. (............)
2. WB I'd prefer <u>playing</u> tennis. (............)
3. She is tall and very good <u>in</u> basketball. (............)
4. Let's <u>spending</u> good time together. *(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2022)* (............)

A week is enough
مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط
المعاصر فى
اللغة الأنجليزية
امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

Review on unit 9

SB page 31 WB page 90

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
diving رياضة الغطس kayaking التجديف بالزورق mountain biking رياضة ركوب دراجات على الجبال sailing رياضة الإبحار rock climbing تسلق الصخور zip lining الانزلاق بالحبال trekking رحلة طويلة شاقة (غالبًا سيرًا على الأقدام) windsurfing التزلج على الماء tent خيمة water sport رياضة مائية mountain sport رياضة جبلية rainy ممطر sunny مشمس cloudy ملبد بالغيوم windy عاصف foggy ضبابى railway line خط سكة حديد challenge تحدى journey رحلة طويلة	**1- Reflexive pronouns** الضمائر المنعكسة تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون الفاعل والمفعول هما نفس الشخص. - They're enjoying themselves. - Toka hurt herself. - Sami came out of the sea and dried himself with a towel. **2- "(Be) going to" for future plans.** استخدام (be) going to للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية. - I am going to visit Sinai. - I am not going to play football. - Are you going to travel to Tanta ? - Yes, I am. - No, I am not. - What are you going to do on Sunday ?	1. Describing the weather : وصف الطقس - What's the weather like today ? - It's sunny / rainy / windy / hot ... etc. 2. Making and responding to suggestions تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها - What shall we do this weekend ? - Let's play tennis. - What about going windsurfing ? - Good idea ! - عند الرد نستخدم. - OK, why not ? وهو كذلك / ولمَ لا ؟

AltFuok.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Stimulus	Response	Usage الاستخدام
1. What are you going to do this weekend ?	- *I am going to visit Sinai.*	السؤال عن ما ستفعله فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
2. Are you going to try rock climbing ?	- *Yes, I am.*	السؤال عن تجربة رياضة معينة
3. What is the weather like today ?	- *It's sunny.*	السؤال عن حالة الطقس اليوم
4. Why don't we go to the zoo ?	- *That's a good idea !*	تقديم إقتراح والرد عليه للذهاب إلى حديقة الحيوان
5. Let's go to the zoo.	- *Maybe another time.*	

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية فى الورقة الإمتحانية (٢٣ جملة)

1 An adventure

I'm in Dahab with my family[1]. There's so much to do here[2]. This afternoon, we're going to go trekking in the mountains[3]. I'm not going to try rock climbing[4]. It's too scary[5]. Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning[6]. In the afternoon, we're going to go diving[7]. We're not going to go kayaking[8]. There is no time[9].

2 My plans for the summer holiday

This summer, I'm going to visit my cousins in Luxor[10]. They're going to take me to the Temple of Karnak[11]. I'm very excited about that[12]. It's a beautiful place[13]. I am going to go home on 1st September[14].

I'm going to have swimming lessons[15]! I can't go swimming now, but I'm going to be very good at swimming after the lessons[16]. I want to do many things before we go back to school[17].

3 My trekking adventure

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai[18]. It's going to be a big adventure[19]! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem[20]. I'm going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families[21]. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water[22]. The journey is going to take me 43 days[23].



CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

Test on unit 9

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. We're on holiday in ....
   a. Africa b. South Africa c. North Africa d. India
2. The weather is going to be better ....
   a. tomorrow b. today
   c. next week d. before morning
3. Is there a lot to do ?
   a. Yes, there's. b. No, there isn't.
   c. Not in the text. d. I don't know.
4. Yesterday was ....
   a. foggy b. an adventure c. terrible d. sunny

(West Mahala - Gharbiya 2022)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kareem and Hanan are talking about a holiday.

Kareem : The holiday will be in two weeks. Are you happy ?
Hanan : Of course. (1) ....
Kareem : Where are you going to travel ?
Hanan : (2) ....
Kareem : Paris ! (3) .... ?
Hanan : No. I'm going to travel with my uncle Sayed.
Kareem : (4) .... ?
Hanan : I will stay for two weeks.
Kareem : I hope you will enjoy your time there.
Hanan : (5) ....

(Belqas - Dakahlia 2022)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm **looking forward to** seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive ? We can meet you at the station.



Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving ?

On Thursday, grandad is going to visit us. Let's make **him** a special present. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins ? We can make him a photo album.

See you on Saturday !
Yours
Maher

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined expression "**looking forward to**" means ....
   a. watch b. hope c. like d. worry
2. The underlined pronoun "**him**" refers to ....
   a. Maher b. Karim c. grandad d. cousin
3. Karim and Maher can go ....
   a. swimming b. windsurfing c. diving d. a,b & c

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for this email.
   ....
5. Where's Maher's new home ?
   ....
6. Do you think Maher's grandad will be happy with the photo album ? Why / Why not ?
   ....

AltFwk.com موقع الفلوق

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. During a trekking adventure, you need a .... to help you find the way.
   a. tourist b. rider c. guide d. driver
   (El Delengat - Beheira 2022)
2. Travelling through the desert is a great .... I like it a lot.
   (Wasat Alexandria - Alexandria 2022)
   a. fear b. adventure c. surfing d. kayaking
3. A: What about .... lining ? B: It's dangerous.
   a. rock b. wind c. zip d. rope

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

4. To walk a long distance, usually in the mountains is called ....
   a. surfing b. kayaking c. trekking d. zip lining
5. When you have a .... , this means that you know how to do something.
   a. subject b. skill c. match d. sport
6. When you go diving, you should have some .... to keep you safe.
   a. equipment b. subject c. argument d. kind
7. After coming out of the sea, I dried myself with a ....
   a. tape b. pool c. tool d. towel
8. I didn't buy this cake. I made it ....
   a. himself b. herself c. yourself d. myself
   (East Matrouh - Gharbiya 2022)
9. I .... try rock climbing tomorrow.
   a. 'll go b. 'm go to c. 'm going d. 'm going to
10. What .... learn ?
   a. is going b. she is going to
   c. is going to d. is she going to

5 Read and correct the underlined words :
1. What shall we doing tomorrow ? (........)
2. How about go kayaking next weekend ? (........)
3. I made this cake me. (........)
4. Maged's father is going to flying abroad. (........)
(Hurghada - Red Sea 2022)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"An adventure"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 9 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Tarek : Where are you going to go next year ?
   Ali : ....
B. Ola : .... ?
   Rana : The weather will be sunny tomorrow.

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences a bout :

"A trip to the desert"

....
....
....
....
....
....

AltFuwk.com موقع الفوك

2. Use your brain, think smart طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... 15th August, I'm going to visit Sinai.
   a. At b. In c. On d. Of
2. Zip lining looks ....
   a. scared b. scary c. frightened d. tired
3. In winter, we sit .... the fire to keep ourselves warm.
   a. on b. in c. off d. by
4. My sister is a .... frightened of spiders.
   a. bet b. bit c. bite d. biting
5. We're looking forward .... Hurghada in the summer vacation.
   a. visit b. visiting c. to visiting d. visits

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Quiz on units 7, 8 & 9

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (٧ ، ٨ و ٩)

يقوم المعلم باختيار لاختبار نموذج واحد فقط (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A

Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ______ shows places to tourists.
   a. trainer b. driver c. guide d. farmer
2. How ______ your day ? - It was nice.
   a. were b. be c. was d. being
3. Aswan is ______ than Cairo.
   a. hot b. hotter c. hottest d. the hottest
4. ______ are dangerous birds.
   a. Eagles b. Flies c. Snakes d. Lions
5. They stood under the umbrella to ______ themselves from the rain.
   a. help b. walk c. hop d. protect





Model B

Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is ______ about your school ?
   a. cheap b. special c. slow d. fast
2. It is cloudy, it ______ rain.
   a. is going to b. will c. won't d. didn't
3. A ______ is a difficult task or problem.
   a. station b. mistake c. suggestion d. challenge
4. Mountain climbing is ______ sport of all.
   a. dangerous b. more dangerous
   c. most dangerous d. the most dangerous
5. People can practise a sport in a sports ______ .
   a. aquarium b. funfair c. centre d. alley

Review C



SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 91 & 92

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Hi Dareen

• How are you ? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday I climbed Sydney Harbour[1] Bridge[2]. It was very high and scary[3]. But the views[4] from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie[5] of ourselves !

Tonight I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House, but it is not opera, it is classical music[6]! Tomorrow I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake[7] and go rock climbing[8].

Here are some photos !

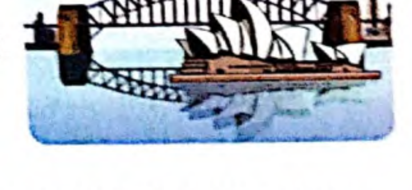
Love, Amy

Hi Amy

Your holiday sounds fantastic[9].

My family and I went to Sydney last year but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing[10] and kayaking[11].

I love water sports[12] !



I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.

Love, Dareen

Check Vocabulary

(1) ميناء	(2) كوبري	(3) مخيف	(4) مناظر طبيعية	(5) صورة شخصية بالكاميرا الأمامية
(6) موسيقى كلاسيكية	(7) بحيرة	(8) تسلق الصخور	(9) تبدو رائعة	
(10) رياضة ركوب الأمواج	(11) رياضة التجديف بالزورق		(12) رياضات مائية	

AltFawk.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

REVIEW **C**

• on Lesson 1 WB page 91



• Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island[1]. The author[2] of *Robinson Crusoe*, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real[3] sailor[4] called Alexander Selkirk spent[5] four years alone here. Defoe wrote *Robinson Crusoe* after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures[6] were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after[7] themselves. The nearest[8] land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

Check Vocabulary

(1) جزيرة	(2) مؤلف	(3) حقيقى	(4) بحار
(5) قضى	(6) مغامرات	(7) يعتنى بـ	(8) الأقرب



• Lesson 1 WB page 91

1

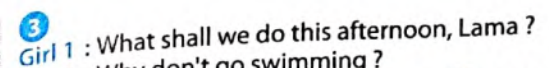
Girl : Hi Lara. How was your weekend ?
Lara : Oh, it was terrible[1].
Girl : Oh dear, what happened ?
Lara : I went to the museum, but it was closed[2]. Then I missed the bus[3] so I had to walk home.
Girl : Oh dear ![4]

2

Boy 1 : I love tennis. Do you agree[5] that it's more exciting than any other sport ?
Boy 2 : I'm afraid[6] I don't agree.

Check Vocabulary

(1) فظيع / رهيب	(2) مغلق	(3) يفوته الأتوبيس	(4) يا للأسف	(5) يوافق	(6) أخشى أن



3

Girl 1 : What shall we do this afternoon, Lama ?
Girl 2 : Why don't go swimming ?
Girl 1 : I'm not sure. The swimming pool[7] is not very near.
Girl 2 : OK. How about going to the park ?
Girl 1 : Good idea ![8] I love the trees and plants there.

4

Boy 3 : What do you think about that book you're reading ?
Boy 4 : I think it's the worst[9] book ever !

Check Vocabulary

(7) حمام سباحة	(8) فكرة جيدة	(9) الأسوأ

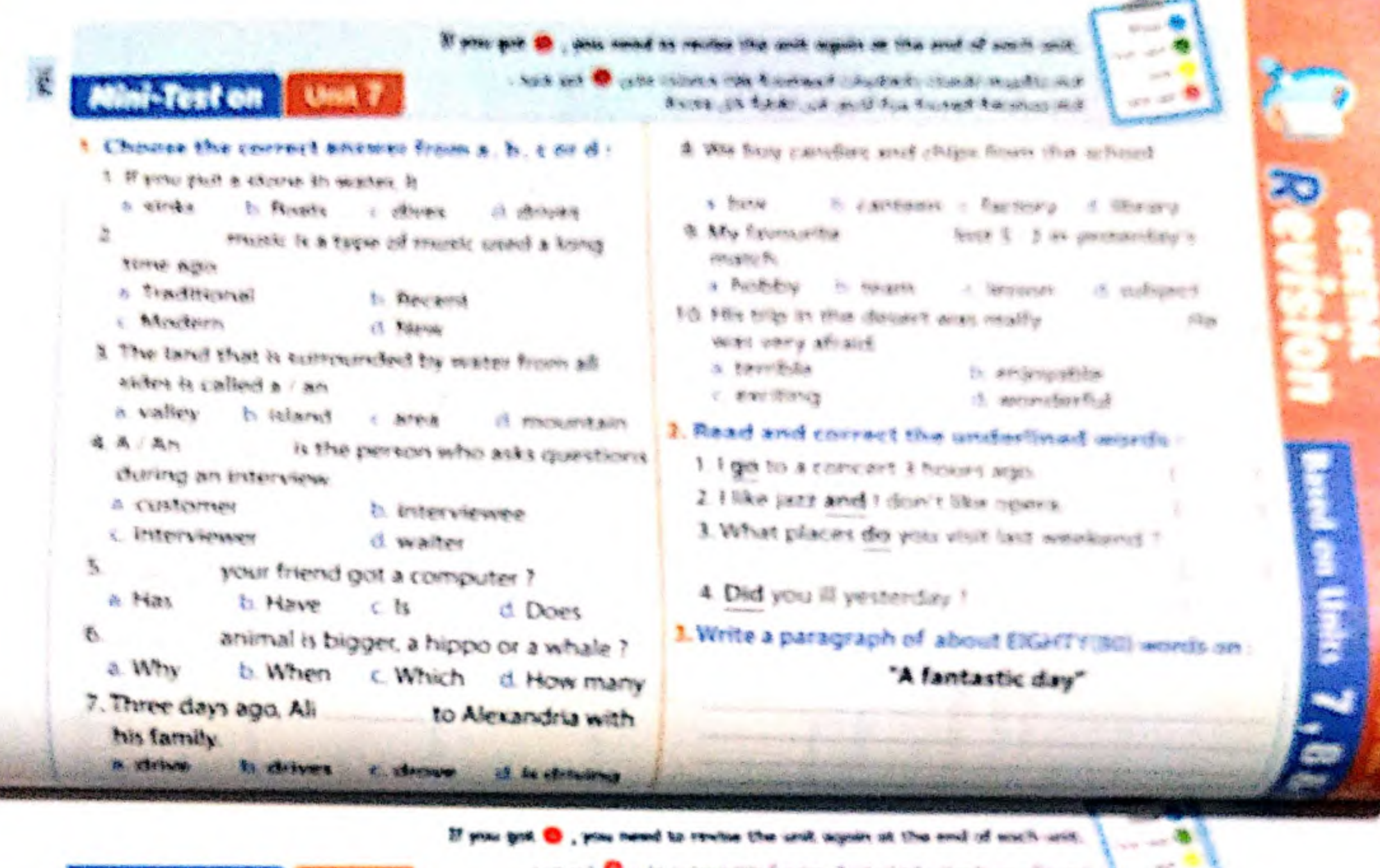
• Lesson 2 SB page 33

Woman : Egypt is just over one million square kilometres[1].
Man : Australia is the sixth largest country[2] in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.
Woman : The highest mountain[3] in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.
Man : The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two thousand, two hundred metres high.
Woman : The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through[4] Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, six hundred kilometres long.
Man : The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles[5]!
Woman : In Egypt, one of the oldest buildings[6] is the Khufu Pyramid. It is about 4,600 years old.
Man : The oldest building in Australia is Elizabeth Farm, in Sydney. It is over 200 years old.

Check Vocabulary

(1) كيلومتر مربع	(2) دولة	(3) جبل	(4) يتدفق خلال	(5) تماسيح	(6) مبانى

CamScanner ضوئيا بـ



If you get 🔴, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

Mini-Test on Unit 7

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you put a stone in water, it ....
   a. sinks b. floats c. dives d. drives
2. .... music is a type of music used a long time ago.
   a. Traditional b. Recent
   c. Modern d. New
3. The land that is surrounded by water from all sides is called a / an ....
   a. valley b. island c. area d. mountain
4. A / An .... is the person who asks questions during an interview.
   a. customer b. interviewee
   c. interviewer d. waiter
5. .... your friend got a computer ?
   a. Has b. Have c. Is d. Does
6. .... animal is bigger, a hippo or a whale ?
   a. Why b. When c. Which d. How many
7. Three days ago, Ali .... to Alexandria with his family.
   a. drive b. drives c. drove d. is driving
8. We buy candies and chips from the school ....
   a. box b. canteen c. factory d. library
9. My favourite .... is ... in yesterday's match.
   a. hobby b. team c. lesson d. subject
10. His trip in the desert was really .... He was very afraid.
    a. terrible b. enjoyable
    c. exciting d. wonderful

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I go to a concert 3 hours ago. (..........)
2. I like jazz and I don't like opera. (..........)
3. What places do you visit last weekend ? (..........)
4. Did you ill yesterday ? (..........)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A fantastic day"

If you get 🔴, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

Mini-Test on Unit 8

1. Complete the following dialogue :

A tourist wants to go to Qasr El-Nil Bridge.

A : Is this your first visit to Cairo ?
B : (1) .... Can you tell me where Qasr El-Nil Bridge is ?
A : (2) ....
B : (3) .... ?
A : Yes. The city centre is on the River Nile.
B : Is it only for cars and buses to go across it ?
A : (4) ....
B : (5) .... ?
A : People enjoy walking on its pavements.
B : Thanks for your help.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egypt is a big .... in the North of Africa.
   a. country b. city c. island d. ocean
2. Bangkok is the .... of Thailand.
   a. island b. river c. country d. capital
3. The museum is usually .... on Saturday than on Sunday.
   a. crowded b. most crowded
   c. more crowded d. the most crowded
4. Mountain .... is the most dangerous sport at all.
   a. delivery b. climbing c. weighing d. skating
5. It's important to be proud of your country's ....
   a. sunrises b. suspensions
   c. achievements d. sunsets
6. This is .... film I've ever seen.
   a. boring b. as boring
   c. more boring d. the most boring
7. This pen is .... of all.
   a. the better b. the best
   c. more good d. most good
8. The bridge was built on stone .... to stay strong.
   a. shows b. valley c. columns d. lines
9. Many people enjoy walking on the .... of Tahya Masr Bridge.
   a. flower b. flour c. floor d. fire
10. Taka wants to take part in the school .... for the talented musicians.
    a. award b. competition
    c. museum d. treasure

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Adel is tall, but Ramy is tallest. (..........)
2. She is beautiful than her cousin. (..........)
3. Tokyo is the busier city in the world. (..........)
4. How long is it ? It's 67.38 metres wide. (..........)

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Mini-Test on Unit 9



If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Ali are talking about music.

Ahmed : What type of music do you like ?
Ali : (1) ....
Ahmed : Do you like another type of music ?
Ali : (2) ....
Ahmed : (3) .... ?
Ali : Yes, I like listening to songs.
Ahmed : (4) ....
Ali : The piano! (5) .... ?
Ahmed : My dad taught me to play the piano.
Ali : That's fantastic.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. All you need to go .... is a boat and some wind.
   a. sailing b. trekking c. diving d. zip lining
2. When we go camping, we sleep in a ....
   a. castle b. hotel c. tent d. hut
3. On his way down, Tamer .... over and hurt himself.
   a. took b. fell c. made d. gave
4. There is .... at the top of the mountain. Look! It's white.
   a. air b. storm c. sun d. snow
5. I cleaned the kitchen .... myself.
   a. on b. in c. about d. by
6. The birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles.
   a. herself b. itself
   c. yourselves d. themselves
7. Lamees is going to .... the game.
   a. eat b. win c. drive d. go
8. Shall we .... rock climbing ?
   a. going b. go c. went d. to go
9. My favourite .... is reading. I like it so much.
   a. sport b. study c. hobby d. trip
10. A .... is a long trip from one place to another.
    a. trip b. journey c. challenge d. capital

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Holiday plans"

....

....

....

UNIT 10

Welcome to my home !

SB pages 34-43 WB pages 93-99

Objectives

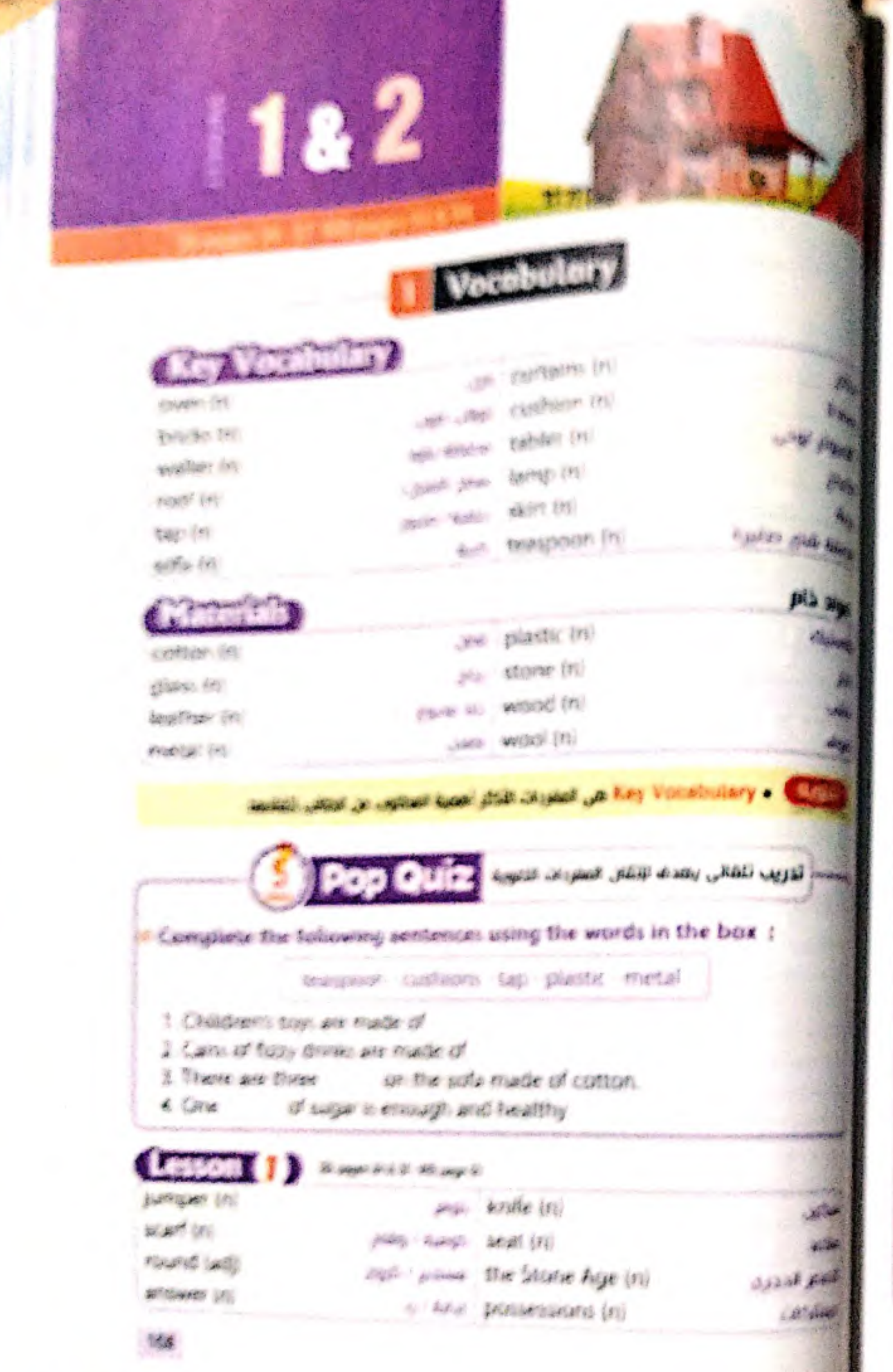
- **Reading :** Homes in ancient Egypt; round houses around the world
- **Writing :**
  - A paragraph describing your first school
  - A timeline of a famous person's life
  - A diagram of future houses
- **Listening :** A podcast about homes of the future
- **Speaking :** Saying what things are made of; predicting the future
- **Language :** is/are made of; there was/were; there will/won't be for predictions with no evidence; saying years
- **Life Skills :** Creativity; good listening and self-expression





موقع التفوق
AltFwok

CamScanner ـب ضوئيًا حة


1 & 2

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

oven (n)	curtains (n)
brick (n)	cushion (n)
wall (n)	table (n)
roof (n)	lamp (n)
tap (n)	skin (n)
sofa (n)	teaspoon (n)

Materials

cotton (n)	plastic (n)
glass (n)	stone (n)
leather (n)	wood (n)
metal (n)	wool (n)

• Key Vocabulary

Pop Quiz

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

teaspoon - cushions - tap - plastic - metal

1. Children's toys are made of
2. Cans of fizzy drinks are made of
3. There are three on the sofa made of cotton.
4. One of sugar is enough and healthy.

Lesson 1

jumper (n)	knife (n)
scarf (n)	seat (n)
round (adj)	the Stone Age (n)
answer (n)	possessions (n)

Famous places in Egypt

	The Valley of the Kings
	The Nile valley

Lesson 2

ancient Egypt	the ancient Egyptians
village (n)	painted walls
	life (n)
kitchen (n)	carts
living room (n)	oven (n)

Study these definitions

cotton	a soft, white material from a plant that is used to make clothes
cushion	a soft object to sit on or rest your head on
glass	a hard material that you can see through, used to make bottles, windows, etc
leather	the material from the skins of animals, used to make shoes and bags
oven	the equipment used for cooking or baking food
plastic	a light, strong material used for making many things such as toys, rulers, etc
wood	a natural material that is made from trees
wool	a soft material that is made from the hair of sheep or goats
brick	a hard, square object that is used for building houses, walls, etc.
roof	• the place at the top of a house • the top part of a building
tap	you turn on it to get water in the house, garden, etc.
metal	a hard material, for example, gold, silver
round	with a shape like a circle
stone	a hard, natural material that is made from rocks

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 هناك كلمات فى اللغة الانجليزية جمع دائما وليس لها مفرد وتتكون من جزئين

socks – pants – trousers – glasses – scissors – scales

تستخدم كلمة (a pair of) مع هذه الكلمات بمعنى زوج من لتشير إلى أنها جزئين لا يمكن فصلهما عن بعض (أى أنها شئ واحد) ويأتى بعدها فعل مفرد.

ex.: - The socks are wet now. - This pair of socks is blue.

2 glass – a glass – glasses

- glass زجاج
  ex.: - Windows are made of glass.
- a glass كوب
  ex.: - Can you bring me a glass of water, please ?
- glasses أكواب - نظارة
  ex.: - He drank 3 glasses of water. - He is wearing his glasses.

3 wood – a wood

- wood خشب
  ex.: - Doors are made of wood.
- a wood غابة
  ex.: - There is a small wood near my house.

4 leather - skin

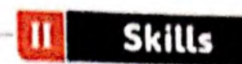
- leather جلد (مدبوغ)
  ex.: - Shoes and bags are made of leather.
- skin جلد (الجسم)
  ex.: - We can feel things with our skin.

5 roof – ceiling

- roof سطح (المقصود السطح العلوى من المبنى)
  ex.: - In summer, some people sleep on the roof at night.
- ceiling السقف (المقصود السطح الداخلى / سقف الغرفة)
  ex.: - There are two lamps and a fan in the ceiling.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the roof	على السطح	about two kilometres away	على بعد ٢ كيلومتر
(be) made of	مصنوع من	work in	يعمل فى
get ... from	يحصل على ... من	(be) sure of	متأكد من
at night	ليلا	on top of	على قمة ...
with red doors	بأبواب ذات لون أحمر		



1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع **Pop Quiz**



on Lesson 1 WB page 93

Boy 1 : What is a car made of ?

Boy 2 : That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things. For example, a car door[1] is made of metal[2] and the windows are made of glass.

Boy 1 : What are the seats[3] made of, where you sit ?

Boy 2 : I think expensive car seats are made of leather[4]. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of plastic[5].

Check Vocabulary

(1) باب السيارة	(2) معدن	(3) مقاعد	(4) جلد	(5) بلاستيك



on Lesson 2 SB page 36



In ancient Egypt[1], there was a village[2] called Deir el-Medina. The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings[3]. There were 68 houses.

The walls[4] of the houses were made of bricks[5] and the doors were made of wood[6]. The people painted[7] **their** houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there weren't any bedrooms.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مصر القديمة	(2) قرية	(3) وادى الملوك	(4) حوائط	(5) قوالب طوب	(6) خشب	(7) دهن / لون

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

People usually slept on the roof[8] because it was very hot at night. There was usually an oven[9] for bread in the kitchen, but there weren't any taps[10]. People got their water from the Nile valley[11], about two kilometres away.

(8) سطح (المنزل)	
(9) فرن	
(10) حنفيات	
(11) وادى النيل	

Answer the following questions :

- Understanding reference. فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Learn 1. What does the underlined word their in the second paragraph refer to ?
- *It refers to the people of Deir el-Medina.*

Practice 2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" in the third paragraph refer to ?
- ....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The walls of the ancient houses were made of .... in Deir El-Medina.
   a. brakes　b. bricks　c. breaks　d. bread
2. The Ancient Egyptians built .... for making bread in their kitchens.
   a. houses　b. walls　c. ovens　d. roofs
3. You can turn on the .... to get water.
   a. tape　b. tap　c. top　d. toy
4. The wall is made of ....
   a. stone　b. wool　c. cloth　d. leather
5. My .... is made of leather.
   a. table　b. wallet　c. television　d. statue

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. SB What colour did they .... their houses ?
   a. point　b. design　c. draw　d. paint
7. WB Expensive car .... are made of leather. *(Multidisciplinary - El Gamaliya - Dakahlia 2021)*
   a. windows　b. doors　c. seats　d. bags
8. WB .... is the material from the skin of animals.
   a. Leather　b. Stone　c. Glass　d. Cotton

9. .... are made of cotton. *(Roda - Damietta 2022)*
   a. Tables　b. Cushions　c. Lamps　d. Televisions
10. Most windows are made of .... *(Kafr Saqr - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. wool　b. glass　c. cotton　d. paper

Definitions تعريفات

11. .... is a soft material that is made from the hair of sheep or goats.
   a. Wood　b. Wool　c. Wallet　d. Wing
12. The .... is the top part of a building.
   a. bedroom　b. wall　c. oven　d. roof

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

13. Most children's toys are made of ....
   a. leather　b. paper　c. plastic　d. glass
14. Teaspoons and some pots are made of ....
   a. wool　b. leather　c. cotton　d. metal

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. My house is about three kilometres ....
   a. way　b. away　c. of　d. out

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering about what things are made of
توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن مما تصنع الأشياء

Questions	Answers
• What's your pencil case made of ? مما تصنع مقلمتك ؟	- It's made of plastic. تصنع من البلاستيك.
• What's your bag made of ? مما تصنع حقيبتك ؟	- I'm not sure; I think it's made of cotton. أنا غير متأكد. أعتقد أنها تصنع من القطن.
• What are the cushions made of ? مما تصنع الوسائد ؟	- They are made of cotton. تصنع من القطن.

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة :

في هذا الجزء تتمكن من الكتابة عن قرية دير المدينة

Deir el-Medina دير المدينة

1. Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt.
كانت دير المدينة قرية في مصر القديمة
2. The people from this village worked in the Valley of the Kings.
كان يعمل الناس من هذه القرية في وادي الملوك
3. There were 68 houses.
كان يوجد بها ٦٨ منزلا
4. The walls of the houses were made of bricks.
كانت حوائط البيوت مصنوعة من الطوب
5. The houses had no bedrooms.
كانت لا توجد غرف للنوم في تلك المنازل
6. They painted their houses white with red doors.
كانت المنازل مطلية باللون الأبيض مع أبواب ذات لون أحمر

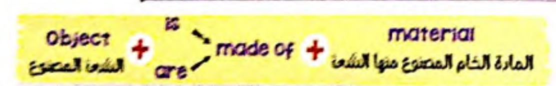


III Language



(1) .... is/are made of ....

1 لوصف المادة الخام المصنوع منها شيء ما نستخدم



Illustrated examples









ex. - The television is made of glass and plastic.
- Curtains are made of cotton.
- The wallet is made of leather.

2 للسؤال عما صنع منه الشيء نستخدم :

◄ للسؤال عن شيء مفرد (singular)

What is + اسم شيء مفرد + made of ?

ex. - What is the sofa made of ? - The sofa is made of leather.

◄ للسؤال عن شيء جمع (plural)

What are + اسم شيء جمع + made of ?

ex. - What are the statues made of ? - The statues are made of stone.

Remember تذكر

Countable and uncountable nouns : الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد

Countable nouns الأسماء التي تعد (لها جمع)		Uncountable nouns الأسماء التي لا تعد (ليس لها جمع) وتعامل معاملة المفرد أي يأتي بعدها فعل في صيغة المفرد	
an apple تفاحة	apples	time وقت	water ماء
a potato ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes	furniture أثاث	money نقود
a man رجل	men	salt ملح	sugar سكر
an ox ثور	oxen	advice نصيحة	news أخبار
a loaf رغيف خبز	loaves	gold ذهب	information معلومات
a child طفل	children	bread خبز	molokhia ملوخية
a lentil حبة عدس	lentils	koshari كشري	lamb لحم الحمل

ex. - Dates are delicious. (تعد)
- Meat is my favourite food. (لا تعد)

(2) There was / There were كان يوجد

1 Affirmative في صيغة الإثبات

تستخدم There was / were للتعبير عن شيء كان يوجد في الماضي.

There was + اسم مفرد

There was + اسم مفرد يعد / اسم لا يعد

تستخدم بمعنى (كان يوجد) ويأتي بعدها اسم مفرد يعد أو اسم لا يعد

ex. - There was a sofa in the living room.
- There was rice in the kitchen.

موقع التفوق AlTFwoK.com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

There were ➜ There were + اسم جمع بعد
تستخدم بمعنى (كان يوجد) ويأتى بعدها اسم جمع بعد

There were + اسم جمع بعد

ex. - There were boats.
- There were taps.

2 Negative في صيغة النفي

Negative

➜ there was not (wasn't) + اسم مفرد بعد / اسم لا يعد

ex. - There wasn't a storm yesterday.

➜ there were not (weren't) + اسم جمع بعد

ex. - There weren't any cars in that street.

Remember تذكر

any

➜ **Negative statements :** في الجمل الخبرية المنفية :
(مع الأسماء التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد):

ex. - There weren't any vegetables in the fridge.
- There wasn't any meat in the dish.

➜ **Interrogative :** في صيغة الإستفهام :

ex. - Do you have any tomatoes?
- Was there any salad in the dish?

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The belt is made .... leather.
   a. off b. of c. on d. by
2. Books are .... of paper.
   a. make b. makes c. making d. made
3. There .... a village called Deir el-Medina in the past.
   a. was b. were c. have d. had

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتفسير	
1	b	[illegible]
2	d	[illegible] (made).
3	a	[illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➲ SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB The sofa .... made of leather.
   a. are b. were c. is d. am
   (Multidisciplinary - El Montazah - Alexandria 2021)
2. There .... any rice in the kitchen.
   a. aren't b. haven't c. weren't d. wasn't
3. WB There were trains in 1900. There .... any TVs.
   a. wasn't b. weren't c. haven't d. aren't
4. SB In ancient Egypt, there .... a village called Deir el-Medina.
   a. is b. was c. were d. are
5. WB The pan and the statue are .... of metal.
   a. made b. make c. makes d. making
6. There .... any computers in the past. (El Matareya - Dakahlia 2022)
   a. were b. aren't c. weren't d. wasn't
7. SB What .... the things in the photos made of ?
   a. am b. is c. are d. was

➲ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. There .... boats in ancient Egypt.
   a. haven't b. hadn't c. were d. was
9. I'm not sure, I think .... made of cotton.
   a. it b. its c. is it d. it's
10. There .... any cars in ancient Egypt.
    a. weren't b. wasn't c. are d. isn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

➲ SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB When **were** the Stone Age ? (........)
2. WB My bed is **make** of wood. (........)
3. SB There **were** any bedrooms in their houses. (........)
4. **When** is your bag made of ? (Edfu - Aswan 2022) (........)
5. There **aren't** any phones in ancient Egypt. (East Mansoura - Dakahlia 2022) (........)

➲ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. **Is** the glasses made of plastic ? (........)
7. There weren't **some** taps in ancient Egypt. (........)
8. The scissors **is** made of metal. (........)

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. A car door is made of ....
   a. metal b. plastic c. glass d. gold
2. Car .... are made of glass.
   a. doors b. seats c. windows d. tires
3. Expensive car .... are made of leather.
   a. seats b. windows c. doors d. motors
4. Some car seats are made of ....
   a. plastic b. metal c. glass d. wood

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is a hard material used for making cars.
   a. Wool b. Metal c. Cotton d. Leather
2. Many chairs are made of .... *(East Zagazig - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. wool b. wood c. glass d. stones
3. In .... Egypt, people used papyrus for writing.
   a. new b. modern c. ancient d. big
4. What do you know about the Stone .... ?
   a. Page b. Year c. Ago d. Age
5. We have a/an .... to cook food in.
   a. oven b. seat c. air conditioner d. knife
6. SB In ancient Egypt, there was a / an .... called Deir el-Medina.
   a. country b. village c. street d. city
7. Most bags are made of .... *(Ezbet El Borg - Damietta 2022)*
   a. leather b. weather c. wood d. metal

8. There .... a lot of traditional houses in the past. *(Tahta - Sohag 2022)*
   a. is b. are c. were d. was
9. Were there .... kitchens in the past ?
   a. some b. so c. any d. a
10. What's your shirt made .... ? *(Beni Mazar - Minia 2022)*
    a. on b. of c. up d. into

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB Lamps are made **by** glass. (........)
2. What **is** the car seats made of ? *(West Zagazig - Sharkia 2022)* (........)
3. **Was** there taps in ancient Egypt ? (........) *(Shibin El Qanater - Qalyubiya 2022)*
4. There **were** any men in the hall. (........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Deir el-Medina"

....

....

....

موقع
التفوق
AltFwok

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



LESSONS **3 & 4**

SB pages 38 - 40 WB pages 95 & 96

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

electricity (n)	كهرباء	robot (n)	إنسان آلى
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	architect (n)	مهندس معمارى
safer (adj)	أكثر أماناً	wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح (محركات تعمل بقوة الرياح)
accident (n)	حادث	machine (n)	آلة
warm (adj)	دافئ	Earth (n)	كوكب الأرض
space (n)	فراغ / مساحة	rocket (n)	صاروخ
material (n)	مادة خام	earthquake (n)	زلزال - هزة أرضية
driverless car (n)	سيارة بدون سائق	moon (n)	قمر
electric car (n)	سيارة كهربائية	igloo (n)	منزل من الجليد
solar panels (n)	الألواح الشمسية		

تنويه ■ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

◎ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

Igloo - Electric - solar panels - earthquake - materials

1. .... cars are safer than oil cars.
2. .... is a house made of ice and snow.
3. We should use .... to produce electricity.
4. Houses fell to the ground after the ....

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 95

sign (n)	علامة - إشارة	apartment (n)	شقة
petrol (n)	بنزين	parcels (n)	طرود بريدية
produce (d) (v)	ينتج	predictions (n)	تنبؤات

robot teacher (n)	المعلم الآلى	charger (n)	شاحن (كهربى)
podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية / برنامج إذاعى	presenter (n)	مقدم برامج
guest (n)	زائر / ضيف	land telephone (n)	تليفون أرضى
recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير	palm tree (n)	نخلة

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 96

area (n)	مساحة / منطقة	Mongolia (n)	جمهورية منغوليا
suddenly (adv)	فجأة	Burkina Faso (n)	دولة بوركينا فاسو
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	Canada (n)	دولة كندا
ground (n)	أرضية / أرض	cheaper (adj)	أرخص
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	project (n)	مشروع
quieter (adj)	أكثر هدوءاً	yurt (n)	خيمة دائرية الشكل

Shapes أشكال

square	مربع	rectangle	مستطيل
circle	دائرة	triangle	مثلث

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
ordinary	عادى	special	خاص / مميز
positive	إيجابى	negative	سلبى

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

cool	a nice temperature that is cold, but not too cold	بارد
drone	a small flying object that you can control from the ground; it has no pilot	طائرة تعمل بالتحكم من على الأرض (بدون طيار)
earthquake	a natural event when the ground suddenly moves	زلزال / هزة أرضية
electricity	electric power	كهرباء
yurt	a large circular tent that people can live in	خيمة دائرية الشكل
warm	a nice temperature that is hot but not too hot	دافئ
igloo	a house made of ice and snow	منزل من الجليد
wind turbine	a machine that uses the wind to make electricity	توربين الرياح
solar panel	a flat glass object that uses the sun to make electricity	لوح خلية شمسية

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

driverless car	a car that can drive itself, without a driver	سيارة بدون سائق
space	an area that you can move around in	فراغ / مساحة
rocket	an object that can travel to space	صاروخ

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 electricity – electric
كهرباء
- electricity (n)
  ex.: - The High Dam produces electricity.

كهربى
- electric (adj)
  ex.: - People will all use electric cars.

2 round / around
دائرى / مستدير
- round (adj)
  SB Many traditional houses in the past were round.

حول
- around (adv)
  We hear birds singing around us.

3
لاحظ استخدام المقطع (less–) فى نهاية بعض الكلمات لتعنى «بدون» أو النفى
- a driverless car = a car without a driver
- a homeless child = a child who has no house
- a useless plan = a plan with no use

4 solar – lunar
شمسى
- solar (adj)
  ex.: - People will use solar energy in the future.

قمرى
- lunar (adj)
  ex.: - The lunar year is different from the year on the Earth.

5 afraid
خائف من
- afraid of + (اسم) / (inf + ing)
  - Basem is afraid of snakes.
  - Ashraf is afraid of flying.

خائف أن
- afraid to + inf. + ...
  SB Don't be afraid to express your own ideas.

آسف
- afraid = sorry
  - A : Can I speak to Sara, please ?
    B : I'm afraid, she is out.

6 sign – signal
- sign — لافتة - لوحة إرشادية
  ex.: - This sign means you mustn't smoke here.
- signal — إشارة (ضوئية - صوتية)
  ex.: - He gave me a signal to start driving.

7 fall – feel – fail – fill
لاحظ تصريفات ومعانى هذه الأفعال :

fall	fell	fallen	يسقط
feel	felt	felt	يشعر
fail	failed	failed	يرسب / يفشل
fill	filled	filled	يملأ

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

design buildings	يصمم مبانى	keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
a sign for	علامة لـ	keep cool	يحتفظ بالبرودة
make predictions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات	fewer materials	مواد أقل
under the sea	تحت البحر	How fantastic !	كم هو شئ رائع !
listen carefully	يستمع بحرص / بعناية	homes of the future	منازل المستقبل
fall from the roof	يسقط من السطح	get electricity	يولد / يحصل على كهرباء
In what ways ... ?	إلى أى مدى ؟	make electricity	يولد كهرباء
work on a project	يعمل على إنجاز مشروع	do the housework	يقوم بأعمال المنزل
fall to the ground	يسقط على الأرض	look like	يشبه
heavy snow	ثلج كثيف	use land telephone	يستخدم تليفون أرضى

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening
تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع — Pop Quiz







Presenter : Hello, welcome to our podcast[1]: Homes of the Future. Today we have a special guest[2] – Dina Hassan. She is a famous architect[3]. Hello Dina.

Check Vocabulary
(1) نشرة صوتية | (2) ضيف مميز | (3) مهندس معمارى مشهور

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

Dina	: Hello.
Interviewer	: What does an architect do ?
Dina	: Well, I design buildings[4] such as houses or schools. I think about what materials[5] to use and I draw pictures of it.
Interviewer	: What are you designing at the moment ?
Dina	: I'm working on a project[6] for houses for the future. They'll be a bit different to our houses today.
Interviewer	: In what ways will they be different ?
Dina	: Well, I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space[7]. So the garden will be on the roof.
Interviewer	: A garden on the roof, great !
Dina	: And I think people will all use electric cars[8] in the future, so there'll be chargers[9] for electric car next to the house.
Interviewer	: How will people get their electricity ?
Dina	: There'll be lots of solar panels[10] and a wind turbine[11]. They'll make the electricity.
Interviewer	: Great. What else will be different in 2050 ?
Dina	: Well, I think there will be robots to do all the housework.
Interviewer	: Fantastic! Will people use drones[12] ?
Dina	: Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels[13] to the house.
Interviewer	: What materials will the house be made of ?
Dina	: We will use plastic bricks[14] that are very strong. We'll also use a lot of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.
Interviewer	: Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to us. I think I'll like living in this house !

Check Vocabulary

(4) يصمم مباني	(5) مواد خام	(6) مشروع	(7) فراغ / مساحة	(8) سيارات كهربية	(9) شواحن
(10) الواح شمسية	(11) توربين الرياح	(12) طائرات بدون طيار	(13) طرود بريدية	(14) قوالب طوب بلاستيكية	

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Holidays on the moon



In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your holiday[1]. You will go to the moon! There will be rockets[2] that leave Earth[3] every day, and the journey[4] will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast!

Driverless cars



In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car[5]. They will be safer[6] and there won't be any accidents[7]. Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school!

Check Vocabulary

(1) اجازة
(2) صواريخ
(3) كوكب الأرض
(4) رحلة طويلة
(5) سيارة بلا سائق
(6) أكثر أماناً
(7) حوادث

Answer the following questions :

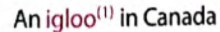
- Critical thinking skill — مهارة التفكير الناقد

Learn 1. Do you like to have a driverless car ? Why ? Why not ?
- *Yes, I do. I think it will be safer and comfortable.*

Practise 2. Where do you think will spend their holiday ?
- ....

on Lesson 4 SB page 40





An igloo[1] in Canada



A yurt[2] in Mongolia

Check Vocabulary

(1) منزل من الجليد	(2) خيم دائرية الشكل تستخدم كمنزل متنقل



ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner


A round house in Burkina Faso


A round house in Siwa

Round houses around the world

Many traditional[1] houses in the past were round. Today, many modern[4] houses are also round. Why is this ? There are lots of reasons[5]!

A round shape[6] means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake[7] or in strong winds[8]. Also, heavy snow[9] or rain[10] will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm[11] or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle[12] or square[13].

Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is cheaper to make[14]). It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

Check Vocabulary

(3) تقليدى	(4) حديث	(5) أسباب / مبررات	(6) شكل دائرى	(7) زلزال	(8) رياح شديدة
(9) جليد	(10) مطر	(11) يحتفظ بالدفء	(12) مستطيل الشكل	(13) مربع الشكل	(14) أرخص فى البناء

Videoscript on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Do you live in a village[1] or in a city ? And do you live on the coast[2], near the sea or in the desert ? There are often different houses for each place. This house is a traditional Nubian house[3]. The floors[4] are made of sand[5] and there is normally a bench[6] outside each house to sit on. This is made of mud[7].

These Nubian houses are in Aswan. They're very colourful[8].

There are paintings[9] on the walls of Nubian houses of things like fish, crocodiles[10] and palm trees[11].

Check Vocabulary

(1) قرية	(2) الساحل	(3) منزل نوبى تقليدى	(4) الأرضية	(5) رمال	(6) مقعد
(7) طين	(8) ملوّن	(9) رسومات	(10) تماسيح	(11) نخل	

The door of each house usually faces south. This is to protect people from the strong wind from the north. Houses will probably be different in the future. Many houses will be made of recycled material[12] or natural material[13], like wood.

This hotel is in Siwa and it's made of natural materials.

The roof is made of palm trees.

Many houses in the future will use the sun for electricity.

This is called solar power[14].

What type of house do you want to live in? Is it a house ?

Or is it an apartment[15] ? There are lots of different places to live.

Check Vocabulary

(12) مادة معاد تدويرها	(13) مادة طبيعية	(14) الطاقة الشمسية	(15) شقة سكنية

موقع التفوق AltFwuk.com

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. .... help us to produce electricity.
   a. Robots b. Solar panels c. Swimming pools d. Cameras
2. People won't use oil in the future, so they will use .... cars.
   a. plastic b. electric c. toy d. gas
3. .... cars go without a driver.
   a. Helpless b. Driverless c. Homeless d. Colourless

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. SB Driverless cars will be safer and there won't be any ....
   a. ideas b. apartments c. chargers d. accidents
5. WB The .... is a machine that can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot.
   a. drone b. robot c. panel d. charger
6. SB A nice temperature that is hot but not too hot is called ....
   a. freezing b. cold c. boiling d. warm
7. To build a house, you think of the design and the .... you will use. (Sohag - Minia 2022)
   a. rooms b. roofs c. materials d. parts

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

8. I want a good .... to design my villa. (Qena 2022)
a. architect b. pilot c. driver d. teacher

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Students, in the future, won't need to go to schools. They will depend on robot ....
a. painters b. cookers c. teachers d. doctors

10. The opposite of the word "ordinary" is "........."
a. modern b. negative c. special d. warm

Definitions

11. A nice temperature that is cold but not too cold is called ....
a. very hot b. freezing c. cool d. warm

12. A/An .... is a natural event when the ground suddenly moves.
a. earthquake b. hurricane c. storm d. tornado

13. A/An .... is a house that is made of ice and snow.
a. drone b. igloo c. project d. ground

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. It's easy to .... warm or cool in round houses.
a. get b. keep c. give d. take

15. Scientists .... predictions for the future every day.
a. take b. see c. do d. make

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1 Predicting the future : التنبؤ بالمستقبل

subj. + will / won't + inf.

ex.: - There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be ordinary mobiles.

2 Expressing ideas and opinions التعبير عن الأفكار والآراء :

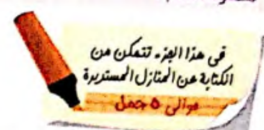
1. I think .... أنا أعتقد ....
2. I agree with you. أنا اتفق معك.
3. I don't agree with you / I disagree with you. أنا لا اتفق معك.
4. I'm not sure. أنا غير متأكد.
5. I'm .... to express my own ideas. أنا .... لكى أعبر عن أفكارى الخاصة.
6. I would like to .... أنا أفضل أن ....

ex.: 1- A : I think we will all use driverless cars.
B : I disagree. I think we will use electric cars.
2- A : I think there will be robot teachers.
B : I'm not sure.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Round houses
المنازل المستديرة





1. Many countries have round houses. ١. كثير من الدول لديها منازل مستديرة.
2. Round houses are strong. ٢. المنازل المستديرة قوية.
3. Round houses are easier to keep warm or cool. ٣. المنازل المستديرة أسهل فى الاحتفاظ بالدفء أو البرودة.
4. They are cheap because they use few materials. ٤. هم أرخص لأنهم يستخدمون مواد أقل فى بناءهم.
5. I'd like to live in a round house. ٥. أود أن أعيش فى منزل مستدير.

III Language





The future with "will" : المستقبل باستخدام (will)

Formation التكوين

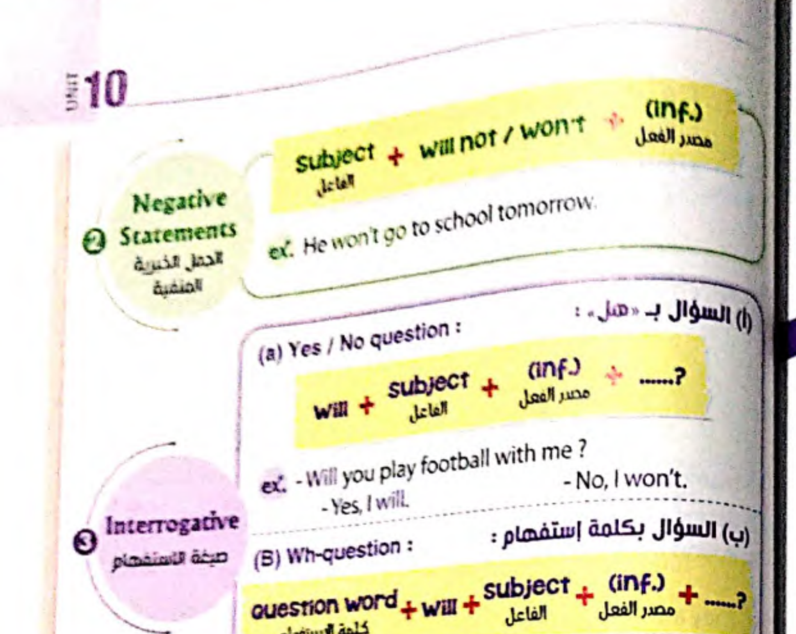
1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + **will** سوف + **(inf.)** مصدر الفعل

ex. He will go to the zoo.

ALtFwok.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



Usage الاستخدام

Prediction without evidence :

تستخدم (will+ inf.) عند التنبؤ بأحداث فى المستقبل (بدون دليل واضح على حدوث الشئ) تأتى معها كلمات مثل :

I'm sure	expect	think	hope	probable	probably	perhaps
انا متأكد	يتوقع	يعتقد	يتمنى	محتمل	من المحتمل	ربما

هنا فى هذه الجملة اتحدث عن رأيى فى الطقس ولكن ليس معى دليل إذا ما كان الطقس سيكون لطيفاً أم لا.

ex.: I think the weather will be nice later.

كما يمكن ان تستخدم فى الحالات الآتية

(1) Quick decision : (١) عند إتخاذ قرار سريع (لحظة الكلام) :

ex.: - I'm hungry. I'll have a sandwich.

- The phone is ringing, I'll answer it.

(2) Request : (٢) عند طلب شئ من شخص :

ex.: Will you shut the door, please ?

(3) Offer : (٣) عند عرض أو تقديم شئ :

ex. : I will help you with your homework.

(4) Facts in the future : (٤) عند ذكر حقيقة فى المستقبل :

ex. : Next year, I will be 17 years old.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Do you think we .... have robot doctors in the future ?
   a. would b. will c. do d. have
2. I will .... 14 next year.
   a. be b. are c. is d. been

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتفسير
1	b [illegible]
2	a [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB People won't all .... electric cars.
   a. used b. use c. using d. uses
2. I think drones will .... food and parcels to the house.
   a. brings b. bringing c. bring d. brought
   (Desouk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)
3. SB The garden .... be on the roof.
   (Multidisciplinary - Old Cairo - Cairo 2022)
   a. have b. has c. will d. had
4. SB How does Dina think people will .... their electricity ?
   a. got b. get c. gets d. getting

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

5. SB There will .... lots of solar panels.
   a. being b. been c. be d. to be

6. I think people .... drive a car in 2080. *(Itsa - Faiyum 202[illegible])*
   a. wouldn't b. won't c. don't d. didn't

7. What .... life be like in cities in the future ? *([illegible] - Alexandria 202[illegible])*
   a. are b. was c. were d. will

8. In 2080, I think we .... all have a driverless car. *([illegible] - Alexandria 202[illegible])*
   a. are going to b. is going to c. will d. going to

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Will she .... a garden on the roof ?
   a. has b. had c. having d. have

10. I think that drones .... bring our food and parcels in 2080.
   a. will b. are going c. going to d. will go

11. My brother .... be 17 years old next month.
   a. is going b. will c. have to d. might

12. I think the weather .... be hot tomorrow.
   a. hasn't b. isn't c. haven't d. won't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB What materials will the house **being** made of ? (........)
2. SB We won't **goes** to the moon. (........)
3. SB The journey will **took** only 12 hours. (........)
4. WB What will holidays **been** like in the future ? (........)
5. I think we will **having** solar panels on planes in the future. *(Menouf - Monufia 2022)* (........)
6. **Last** year, we will buy a new car. *(Girga - Sohag 2022)* (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Perhaps, he **call** me to visit our friend tomorrow. (........)
8. **Do** you bring me a cup of coffee, please ? (........)
9. What will **happens** next week ? (........)
10. Will we **to build** houses on the moon ? (........)

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. The text is about things will happen ....
   a. in the past b. now c. in the future d. today
2. .... will do the housework.
   a. Rabbits b. Bricks c. Robots d. Ropes
3. We will build houses using .... bricks.
   a. glass b. plastic c. wood d. iron
4. Plastic bricks will be ....
   a. expensive b. terrible c. cheap d. hard

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Ramy about his job.

Ahmed : What's your job ?
Ramy : (1) ....
Ahmed : (2) .... ?
Ramy : An architect designs new buildings.
Ahmed : What are you doing at the moment ?
Ramy : (3) ....
Ahmed : A house ! Where will the garden be ?
Ramy : (4) ....
Ahmed : Oh! (5) .... ?
Ramy : Because there won't be much space. *(Al Masara - Cairo 2022)*

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A / An .... is a large circular tent that people can live in. *(El Badari - Assiut 2022)*
   a. drone b. yurt c. igloo d. warm
2. Wind turbines will make .... *(Burj Al Arab - Alexandria 2022)*
   a. electricity b. drones c. sound d. clouds

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

- 3. Solar panels get their energy from the ....
  a. moon b. sun c. planet d. earth
- 4. .... can leave the Earth to the moon.
  a. Rackets b. Guns c. Planes d. Rockets
- 5. When there's a/an .... , we feel the ground suddenly moves.
  a. volcano b. earthquake c. wind d. storm
- 6. In the future, people will use a .... that flies without a pilot.
  a. taxi b. robot c. drone d. boat
- 7. There will be .... for electric cars next to the houses.
  a. chargers b. freezers c. fridges d. drinks
- 8. WB I think we .... more robots in our schools.
  a. had b. have c. will have d. would have
- 9. SB Will there .... ordinary mobiles in the future ?
  a. is b. are c. be d. were
- 10. Where will you .... on holiday ?
  a. going b. go c. goes d. went

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I think we **would** live on the moon; it is my dream. (............)
2. WB I think we **have** more robots in our schools in 2080. (............)

(Sayeda Zainab - Cairo 2022)

3. Hatem won't **goes** to the museum. (............)
4. Will we **to have** driverless cars ? (............)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Round houses"

....

....

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 41 & 42 WB pages 97 & 98

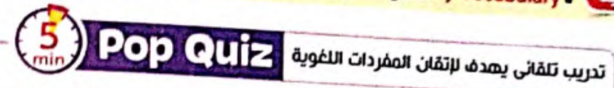


I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

amazing (adj)	مدهش	footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
Mount Kiliminjaro	جبل كليمنجارو	diagram (n)	رسم توضيحى
timeline (n)	جدول زمنى / تسلسل زمنى	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
divide (d) (v)	يُقسم	calendar(n)	نتيجة/تقويم

تنويه • Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

diagrams - calendar - divided - amazing - technology

1. Making .... helps students to learn easily.
2. You should look at the .... to know today's date.
3. Our teacher .... us into two groups.
4. All the ideas Ali suggested were ....

Lesson 5 SB page 41 WB page 97

events (n)	احداث	African (adj)	افريقى
European (adj)	اوروبى	Champions League (n)	دورى الأبطال
Switzerland (n)	سويسرا	date (n)	تاريخ

Lesson 6 SB page 42 WB page 98

creative (adj)	مبتكر / ابداعى	decide (d) (v)	يقرر / يحدد
task (n)	مهمة	shape (n)	شكل
details (n)	تفاصيل	introductory (n)	فقرة تمهيدية
explain (ed) (v)	يفسر / يشرح	topic sentence (n)	جملة رئيسية
heading (n)	عنوان / رأس الموضوع	compare (d) (v)	يقارن
imagination (n)	خيال / تخيل		

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
keep	يحتفظ / يحفظ	kept	kept
bear	يلد	bore	born

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

imagination	using the mind to think creatively	خيال
round	with a shape like a circle	دائرى

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 move house = move to a new house ينتقل إلى منزل جديد

ex.: Last year, I moved house / moved to a new house in Giza.

2 (be) born in ... (مكان / سنة) ولد فى

ex.: Jana was born in 2008.

3 learn + (how) to + inf. ..... يتعلم أن .....

ex.: I learned (how) to ride a bike when I was young.

4 in detail بالتفصيل

ex.: Tell me everything about you in detail.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have fun	يستمتع	change any ideas that don't work	قم بتغيير أى افكار لا تؤدى الغرض
as many ___ as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع		
play for	يلعب لصالح (فريق)	African footballer of the year in 2017	احسن لاعب افريقى لعام ٢٠١٧
European Champions League	دورى أبطال أوروبا	start school	يبدأ دراسة
draw a plan	يرسم خطة	compare with	يقارن بـ
I hope so anyway	أتمنى ذلك على أى حال	write down	يدون
different to	مختلف عن	make a plan	يضع خطة

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



on Lesson 6 SB page 42

How to plan[1] a creative[2] writing task.

First, think of as many ideas[3] as you can. What will the house look like[4] ? What will it be made of ? What will be different to houses of today ? You can write down[5] or draw your ideas.

Use your imagination[6] and have fun ![7]

Then, decide[8] which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time.

Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail[9]. How can you make the idea work ?

Make a plan[10] (maybe in a diagram[11] or drawing). You can change[12] any ideas that don't work[13].



Check Vocabulary

(1) يخطط
(2) إبداعى
(3) أفكار
(4) يشبه
(5) يدون
(6) خيال
(7) استمتع
(8) اتخذ قرار
(9) بتفاصيل أكثر
(10) ضع خطة
(11) رسم توضيحى
(12) يغير
(13) غير فعالة / لا تؤدى الغرض

Answer the following questions :

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

Learn 1. How can you make the idea work after you write it down ?
- *You can make a plan, the plan maybe in a diagram or a drawing.*

Practise 2. What can you do after you think of any idea don't work ?
- ....

موقع التفوق AltFwak.com

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

- on Lesson 6 WB page 98



1. No more journeys by plane

Today, I am going to describe what I think holidays will be like in the future.

2. The schools of tomorrow

I want to explain how I planned the school building you can see above.



3. Taller, cleaner, better

Today's cities are usually big, noisy and dirty, but what will they be like in the future?

Listening

- on Lesson 5 WB page 97

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to Switzerland[1] to play for[2] Basel in 2012.

In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah was also African Footballer of the Year[3] in 2017, and in 2019, he won[4] the European Champions League[5] with Liverpool.

Check Vocabulary

(1) سويسرا (2) يلعب لصالح (3) أفضل لاعب كرة قدم في أفريقيا لهذا العام (4) فاز (5) دوري أبطال أوروبا

- on Lesson 5 SB page 41

A
1 : twenty fifty
2 : twenty twenty
3 : twenty thirty-five
4 : nineteen ninety-nine

B ten sixty-six / two thousand / nineteen twenty-three / two thousand and eight / three thousand and one / twenty seventy-five

Basel's timeline[1].

Basel : Hi, I'm Basel. These are the important events[2] in my life.
I was born in 2007 in Alexandria.
I started school in 2012.
I liked my school!
I learned to ride a bike in 2013.
I love my bike!
In 2018, we moved house[3].
We live in Cairo now.
In 2019, we went on holiday[4] to the Red Sea. It was amazing[5]!
In 2023! I will climb Mount Kiliminjaro[6] - I hope so anyway[7]!

Check Vocabulary

(1) خط زمني / تسلسل زمني (2) أحداث هامة (3) انتقل لمنزل جديد (4) ذهبنا في أجازة (5) مدهش (6) جبل كليمنجارو (7) على أي حال / بأي طريقة

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Write the important events in your life in a ....
   a. time b. timeline c. map d. corner
2. The new film looks .... I'll watch it at the cinema tomorrow.
   a. ancient b. boring c. warm d. amazing
3. Modern .... has improved our life a lot.
   a. sizes b. champions c. technology d. texts

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات وامتحانات سابقة

4. (WB) I want to .... how I planned the school building you can see above.
   a. explain b. draw c. compare d. move
5. (WB) Mohamed Salah .... the European Champions League with Liverpool in 2019. (Exam 2022)
   a. won b. bore c. found d. kept
6. (SB) .... your plans with other students. Which plan is the best?
   a. Have b. Think c. Compare d. Learn

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Circle, square, pyramid and oval are all ....
   a. numbers b. shells c. tasks d. shapes
8. I'm so busy on Friday. I have many .... to do.
   a. reasons b. risks c. tasks d. details

AlTFwak.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

9. Egypt is an African ....
a. city b. town c. country d. village

10. All the ideas he suggested were ....
a. creative b. creature c. alive d. living

11. Hatem was .... in 2011. He's twelve years old now.
a. born b. drawn c. learned d. kept

Definitions تعريفات

12. .... means using the mind to think creatively.
a. Project b. Idea c. Imagination d. Champion

13. " .... " means with a shape like a circle.
a. Amazing b. Round c. Creative d. Size

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. You should think about your new ideas in .... to choose the best.
a. total b. detail c. careful d. problem

15. In 2012, Mr Ahmed .... to a new house.
a. look b. moved c. born d. lived

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Saying years : كيفية نطق السنوات :

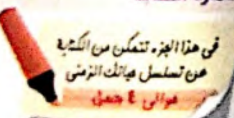
a We usually divide the years into two parts : عادة ما نقسم السنوات لجزئين
2050 = twenty fifty 1977 = nineteen seventy seven

b For the year 2000, we say : أما بالنسبة لعام ٢٠٠٠ نقول :
2000 = two thousand

c For the years 2001 : 2009 we say : أما بالنسبة للأعوام من ٢٠٠١ حتى ٢٠٠٩ نقول :
two thousand + number رقم
2001 = two thousand and one / 2006 = two thousand and six

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Your timeline
تسلسل حياتك الزمني



1. I was born in nineteen ninety five. ١. ولدت في عام ١٩٩٥
2. I started school in two thousand and one ٢. بدأت الدراسة في عام ٢٠٠١
3. I learnt to ride a bike in 2010. ٣. تعلمت ركوب الدراجة في عام ٢٠١٠
4. I moved to a new house in twenty seventeen. ٤. انتقلت إلى منزل جديد عام ٢٠١٧

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6



• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. In .... , we moved house.
a. 2013 b. 2018 c. 2012 d. 1990

2. We went on a holiday to ....
a. the River Nile b. the Red Sea c. Cairo d. Alexandria

3. Now, we live in ....
a. Cairo b. the Red Sea c. Aswan d. Luxor

4. I learned to .... a bike in 2013.
a. drive b. buy c. ride d. give

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When you think creatively, then you have ....
a. imagination b. diagram c. grammar d. kilogram

2. SB Make a .... of what you are going to do.
a. plan b. plane c. plain d. pain

3. He .... to buy a new car after he had had money.
a. divided b. decided c. explained d. kept

4. WB Enjoy your time and have .... (New Cairo - Cairo 2022)
a. fun b. fan c. fine d. final

5. My brother will .... a mountain when he visits China.
a. ride b. climb c. take d. explain

6. Remember to be .... when you plan your house in the future.
a. active b. creative c. voluntary d. related

7. SB I was born .... 2008.
a. in b. on c. at d. by

8. What technology .... in the future ?
a. did you have b. do you have c. will you have d. you have

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



9. In 2030, there .... many good teachers at my school.
   a. are b. were c. will be d. would be

10. Omar and his father .... alike.
   a. take b. look c. make d. do

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She **is** born in 2010. (Sedfa Assiut 2022) (..........)
2. We will **had** modern technology in the future. (..........)
3. Which house will you live **on** ? (..........)
4. Write **on** your own ideas. (..........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Planning your future home"



....

Review on unit 10

SB page 43 WB page 99

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
cotton قطن glass زجاج leather جلد metal معدن plastic بلاستيك stone حجر wallet محفظة roof سطح taps حنفيات - صنابير solar panels ألواح شمسية wind turbines توربينات الرياح earthquake زلزال robot إنسان آلى advantages مميزات wool صوف tablet جهاز لوحى bricks طوب oven فرن electric car سيارة كهربائية driverless cars سيارات بدون سائق	**1- Describing materials :** What → is it / اسم مفرد / are they / اسم جمع → made of ? It is / They are made of المادة المصنوع منها الشئ . - What is the jumper made of ? - It is made of wool. **2- will / won't for predictions :** استخدام will / won't للتنبؤ بما سيحدث فى المستقبل : Subj. (فاعل) → will / won't + inf. .... - There will be electric cars in the future. - We won't use landline telephones. - Will we live on the moon ? - Where will you live in the future ?	1. Saying what things are made of الحديث عن مما تصنع الأشياء - What is the sofa made of ? - It is made of leather. - What are the cushions made of ? - They are made of cotton. 2. Predicting the future التنبؤ بما سيحدث فى المستقبل - I think we will use driverless cars in 2050. - I disagree. I think we'll all use electric cars.

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Stimulus	Response	Usage الاستخدام
1 What are the cushions made of ? 2 What is your bag made of ?	- They are made of cotton. - It is made of leather.	السؤال عن مم صنع الشيء
3 Do you think we will all use driverless cars ? 4 Do you think there will be robot teachers ?	- I think not all people will use driverless cars. - I'm not sure about that.	السؤال عن المستقبل (ما سيحدث في المستقبل)

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية في الورقة الامتحانية. (٣٣ جملة)

1 "Houses of Deir el Medina"

There was a village called Deir el Medina in ancient Egypt[1]. There were 68 houses in that village[2]. The houses walls were made of bricks[3]. The doors were made of wood[4]. The people painted their houses white, with red doors[5]. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there weren't any bedrooms[6]. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night[7]. There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen[8]. There weren't any taps[9]. People got their water from the Nile Valley about two kilometers away[10].

2 "What life will be like in 2080 (in the future)"

Homes of the future will be a bit different[11]. I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space[12]. The gardens will be on the roof[13]. I think people will all use electric cars in the future[14]. There will be chargers for electric cars next to the house where you live[15]. There will be lots of solar panels and wind turbines to make electricity[16]. I think there will be robots to do all the housework[17]. Also I think drones will bring food and parcels to the house[18].

3 Types of houses around the world

Many traditional houses in the past were round[19]. Also there are rectangular and square houses[20]. Many modern houses are also round[21]. A round shape means the building is very strong[22]. This is important when there is an earthquake or in strong winds[23]. Heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof[24]. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool[25].

4 How to plan a creative task

First, think of as many ideas as you can[26]. You can write down or draw your ideas[27]. Use your imagination and have fun[28]! Try to decide which of your ideas are the best[29]. Keep the other ideas for another time[30]. Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail[31]. Don't forget to make a plan by using a diagram or drawing[32]. You can change any ideas that don't work[33].

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Test on unit 10

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Mohamed Salah was born in ....
   a. Cairo b. Zagazig c. Fayoum d. Alexandria
2. Salah played for .... in 2010.
   a. El Mokawloon b. Basel c. Liverpool d. Al Ahly
3. Mohamed Salah was born in ....
   a. 1994 b. 1991 c. 1992 d. 1996
4. .... is in Switzerland.
   a. Basel b. Liverpool c. Manchester d. El Mokawloon

B. Language Function

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Wafaa asks Tasneem about her new shoes.

Wafaa : I like your new shoes, what are they made of ?
Tasneem : (1) ....
Wafaa : (2) .... ?
Tasneem : I bought them last week.
Wafaa : Who got them for you ?
Tasneem : (3) ....
Wafaa : (4) .... ?
Tasneem : It was my birthday.
Wafaa : Great. Can you come with me to buy a pair of shoes for me ?
Tasneem : (5) ....

(Edfu - Aswan 2022)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this ? There are lots of reasons ! A round

shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the **roof**. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. **It** also has more space inside. How fantastic!

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**roof**" is the place .... of a building.
   a. at the bottom b. at the top c. inside d. in front
2. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to the .... building.
   a. round b. empty c. square d. rectangle
3. Round, square and rectangle are all .... for buildings.
   (Matai - Minya 2022)
   a. places b. shapes c. pieces d. spaces

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   ....
5. Do you think that traditional houses were comfortable ? Why / Why not ?
   ....
6. What happens when there's heavy snow or rain ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can get electricity from solar ....
   a. planes b. panels c. pens d. poles
2. I enjoyed my journey. It was really .... *(Waraaq - Giza 2022)*
   a. amazing b. amazed c. expensive d. excited
3. The word "ancient" is the opposite of ....
   a. old b. traditional c. modern d. able
4. SB The people .... their houses white, with red doors in Deir el-Medina.
   a. played b. painted c. ate d. drove

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

5. Change the ideas that don't ....
   a. make   b. do   c. work   d. take
6. People got their water from the Nile .... , about 2 km away.
   a. Island   b. Kitchen   c. Temple   d. Valley
7. Mum used the .... to make bread.
   a. oven   b. carpets   c. curtains   d. cushions
8. I think people .... live on the moon in the future.
   a. would   b. be   c. will   d. are
9. There weren't .... books here.
   a. any   b. no   c. some   d. one
10. He'll .... to Luxor soon.
   a. travelling   b. to travel   c. travels   d. travel

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I think people will all **used** electric cars. (..........)
2. WB There weren't **some** TVs in 1900. (..........)
3. What **is** your sunglasses made of ? (..........)
4. There will **been** modern houses in the future. (..........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Houses in the future"

....

....

....

....

موقع التفوق AltFwok

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 10 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Sami : .... ?
Ali : Car seats are made of leather.

B. Marwa : What does an architect do ?
Dina : ....

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Round houses"

....

....

....

....

....

2. Use your brain, think smart طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The wild animals live in the ....
   a. wood   b. wool   c. cotton   d. metal
2. I don't like this plan, it's ....
   a. useful   b. useless   c. used   d. a use
3. Study well or you'll ....
   a. fill   b. fell   c. fail   d. feel
4. Which of these is correct ?
   a. a pair of sock   b. pair of sock
   c. two pair of socks   d. a pair of socks
5. Don't be afraid .... your own ideas.
   a. shares   b. sharing   c. share   d. to share

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Quiz on units 7,8,9&10

اختبار تراكمى على الوحدات (٧، ٨، ٩ و ١٠)

• يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة فى الوحدات



Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Cairo has .... than Aswan.
   a. most population b. more population
   c. least population d. population
2. It .... last night and it was cold.
   a. raining b. rains c. rain d. rained
3. There is a singing .... to choose a chorus.
   a. exclamation b. pollution c. competition d. exhibition
4. She is a .... in a famous band.
   a. musician b. writer c. player d. sailor
5. It's easy to .... warm or cool in round houses.
   a. make b. keep c. give d. take



Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Take care of .... It's a dangerous adventure.
   a. herself b. themselves c. yourself d. itself
2. I'm not sure, I think it .... of cotton.
   a. made b. will make c. making d. is made
3. If a metal coin fell in the water, it'll ....
   a. sink b. move c. float d. dive
4. The castle was built on stone ....
   a. shows b. valleys c. columns d. fires
5. All you need to go .... is a boat and some wind.
   a. sailing b. trekking c. diving d. zip lining

March assessment

اختبار شهر مارس

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Eman is in ....
   a. Hurghada b. Dahab c. Siwa d. Ras Shetan
2. She is with her ....
   a. teachers b. friends c. family d. cousins
3. They are going to go .... in the mountains.
   a. travelling b. trekking c. rock climbing d. zip lining
4. Rock climbing is too .... for Eman.
   a. interesting b. exciting c. boring d. scary

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

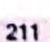
Ali and Salim are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Ali : Do you know Mohamed Salah ?
Salim : (1) ....
Ali : (2) .... ?
Salim : He was born in 1992.
Ali : (3) .... ?
Salim : He plays in England for Liverpool.
Ali : Is he good at scoring goals ?
Salim : (4) ....
Ali : What do you think about his character ?
Salim : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Marwan is a very **smart** boy in the third grade. He always remembers his homework and does well in all of his tests. Last Sunday, he woke up late and quickly left his house. When he arrived at school, he noticed that



ALtFwk.Com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

his homework was not in his school bag. Marwan was upset because his teacher, Mrs Maha, gets angry when students don't do their homework. He started to get worried but **he** decided to be brave and apologize to his teacher and tell her he won't do that again. Mrs Maha wasn't angry as she knows that Marwan is a good student.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to ....
   a. Marwan's brother b. Marwan's cousin c. Marwan d. Marwan's friend
2. Mrs Maha becomes .... when her students forget their homework.
   a. bored b. proud c. excited d. angry
3. The underlined word "**smart**" means ....
   a. happy b. proud c. clever d. polite

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Why did Marwan leave his house quickly?

....

5. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

6. Why do you think Mrs Maha wasn't angry with Marwan?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. They went .... across Sinai.
   a. tricking b. picking c. joking d. trekking
2. There was a storm, so the boat ....
   a. floated b. sank c. flew d. built
3. .... you going to study French?
   a. Will b. Have c. Did d. Are
4. Is there .... rice in the bag?
   a. many b. few c. any d. some



5. .... are small planes without pilots.
   a. Drowns b. Drones c. Tunnels d. Tools
6. Ali, please behave .... !
   a. myself b. yourself c. themselves d. himself
7. Scientists can .... predictions about the future.
   a. play b. steal c. make d. take
8. He looked at the .... to see if he was injured.
   a. sand b. mirror c. cupboard d. medal
9. In villages, people use .... to make bread.
   a. bins b. fans c. ovens d. curtains
10. We must .... other people.
   a. respect b. hate c. learn d. spend

5 **Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. There will **been** holidays on the moon. (............)
2. Hatem and Ramy went shopping by **himself**. (............)
3. He is going to **spent** a week in Dahab. (............)
4. Most furniture **make** of wood. (............)

E. Writing

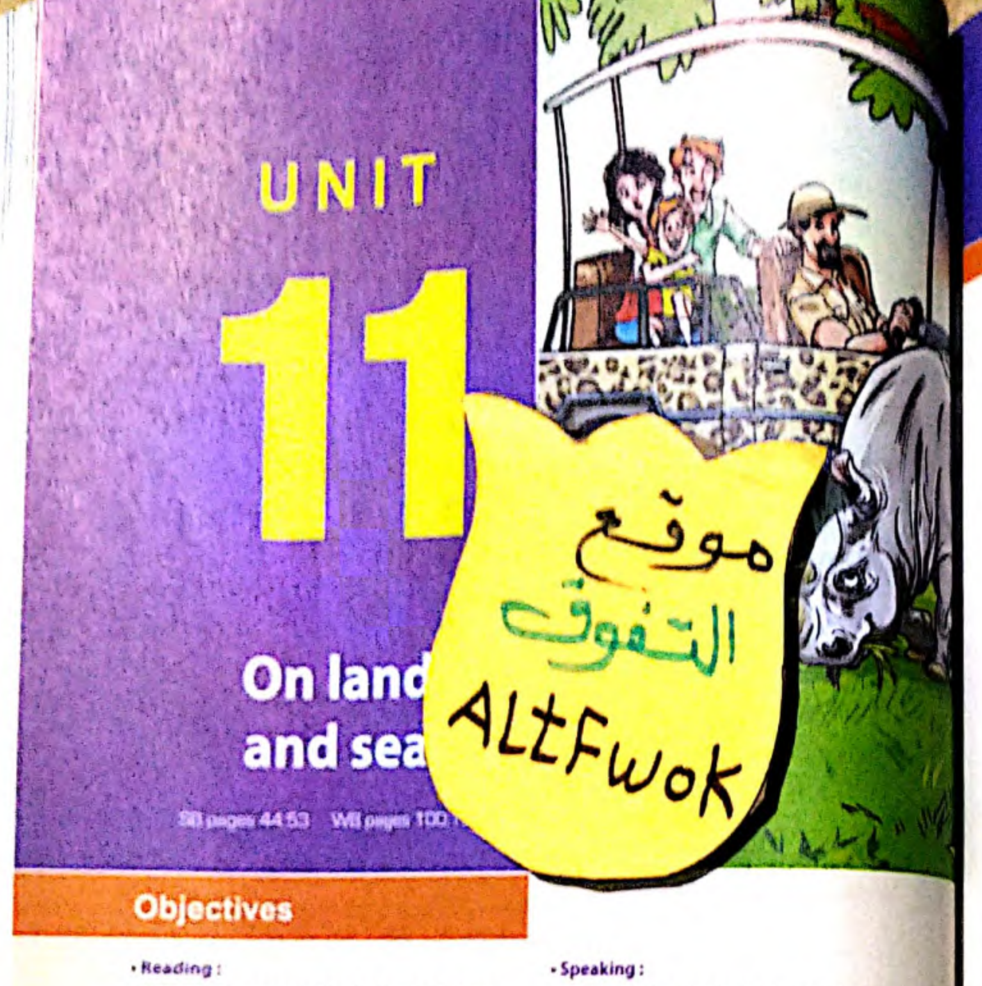
6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:**

"Adventure sports in Egypt"

....

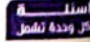


تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



Objectives

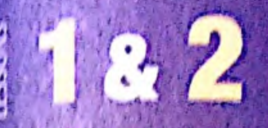
- **Reading :** A paragraph about sea life; a leaflet about plastic pollution; The Old Man and the Sea
- **Writing :** Writing rules; writing an advertisement; a text explaining a beach clean-up day
- **Listening :** A talk at a nature reserve
- **Speaking :** Talking about saving the environment
- **Language :** Zero conditional; must/mustn't; should/shouldn't; asking for, giving and sequencing instructions
- **Life Skills :** Collaboration; setting clear goals



- العلامة (!) تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة (W) تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.



- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة والملحق.
- اختبارات شهرية داخل كتاب الشرح.
- جزء للمتابعة اليومية وإتقان المفردات اللغوية (التسمي) فى نهاية الكتاب.





SB pages 44 - 47 WB pages 100 & 101

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

coral reef (n)	شعاب مرجانية	shell (n)	صدفة / قوقعة
jellyfish (n)	قنديل البحر	tail (n)	ذيل
octopus (n)	أخطبوط	sea turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
stingray (n)	سمكة الراى اللاسع	whale (n)	حوت
sea life (n)	حياة بحرية	environment (n)	البيئة
ocean (n)	محيط	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تصنيع
sting (v)	يلدغ	rubbish (n)	قمامة
poisonous (adj)	سام	shark (n)	سمكة قرش

تنويه ▪ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

ocean - whale - turtles - octopus - environment

1. The .... is bigger than the sea.
2. The .... has eight legs and lives at the bottom of the sea.
3. The .... is everything around us.
4. All .... have shells on their back.

Lesson 1 SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 100

danger (n)	خطر	facts (n)	حقائق
flat (adj)	مسطح	away (adv)	بعيدًا
hard (adj)	صلب	turn (ed) (v)	يتحول
touch (ed)(v)	يلمس	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك

Lesson 2 SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 101

save (d) (v)	يحفظ	planet (n)	كوكب
everywhere (adv)	فى كل مكان	necessary (n)	ضرورى

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

sea birds	طيور بحرية	view (n)	منظر
shopping bags	حقائب التسوق	traffic rules (n)	قواعد المرور

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost	lost
sting	يلسع	stung	stung
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
fast	سريع	slow	بطئ
die	يموت	live	يعيش
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

coral reef	a hard area of something like rock made from small sea animals (coral)	شعاب مرجانية
environment	the world around us	بيئة
flat	having no high areas	مسطح
jellyfish	a sea animal with a soft body that you can see through. It stings when you touch it	قنديل البحر
ocean	a large sea	محيط
whale	it is the largest sea animal in the world	حوت
octopus	a sea animal with eight legs	أخطبوط
planets	objects like the Earth that go around the sun	كواكب
poisonous	if something is poisonous, it can make you very ill or kill you	سام
recycle	use again	يعيد تدوير
rubbish	things we do not need	قمامة
shark	a large, dangerous sea animal with sharp teeth	سمكة قرش

shell	the hard part on the outside of a turtle, nut etc.	صدفة / قوقعة
sting	if an animal stings you, it hurts you to protect itself	يلدغ
stingray	a big, flat fish with a long tail that can sting	سمكة الراي اللاسع
tail	the part that is at the end of an animal's body	ذيل
throw away	put something you do not need somewhere	يلقي بعيدًا
sea turtle	a large sea animal with a hard shell on its back	سلحفاة بحرية

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

take	time	يستغرق وقت	have	a test	يمتحن
	a photo	يلتقط صورة / يصور			

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 one of the + اسم جمع + صفة تفضيل (تستخدم غالبًا مع صيغة التفضيل)

ex.: SB The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.

2 protect ...... from .... يحمي .... من

ex.: SB How do fish and sea animals protect themselves from danger?

3 flat

- a flat (n) شقة
  ex.: - Hoda lives in a small flat.
- flat (adj) مسطح
  ex.: - This table has a flat round top.

4 die from – die of – die out

- die from يموت من ....
  ex.: SB Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.
- die of يموت بسبب
  ex.: - His uncle died of cancer سرطان.
- die out ينقرض
  ex.: - Dinosaurs died out millions of years ago.

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make oceans dirty	يجعل المحيطات غير نظيفة	swim away	يسبح بعيدًا
stay safe	يظل آمنا	walk on the grass	يمشي على الحشائش
stay in	يظل / يمكث في	get home from	يصل للمنزل من
get rid of	يتخلص من	give us clean air	يعطينا هواء نقيا
run across	يجري عبر	dangerous for	خطر على
jump out of the water	يقفز خارج الماء	feel tired	يشعر بالتعب
more than once	أكثر من مرة	hit with their tails	يضربوا بذيولهم
throw away	يلقي بعيدا	find a safe place to cross	يجد طريقًا آمنًا للعبور
take a long time	يستغرق وقتا طويلا	in danger	في خطر
use again = recycle	يستخدم مرة أخرى / يعيد تدوير	easier to recycle	أسهل في إعادة التصنيع
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	necessary to + inf.	ضروري لـ
take off	يخلع (ملابسه أو حذائه)	(be) not allowed to + inf.	غير مسموح بـ
go into the shell	يدخل إلى داخل الصدفة	on roads	على الطرق
feel ill	يشعر بالمرض	go around the sun	يدور حول الشمس
fall asleep	يستغرق في النوم	on land	على أرض يابسة

II Skills

1 Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



• on Lesson 1 SB page 45







Dangers(1) of the sea

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean(2). If it loses(3) a tooth, a new one grows(4). A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!

Check Vocabulary

(1) مخاطر	(2) محيط	(3) يفقد	(4) ينمو

So how do fish and sea animals(5) protect(6) themselves from danger?

A stingray(7) is a big, flat(8) fish and it lives in the coral reef. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!







A sea turtle(9) has a hard shell(10) to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast - the octopus(11) has got eight legs to help it!

Some sea life, like the jellyfish(12), is poisonous(13). It stings(14) you when you touch it.

What about the whales(15)? These big, heavy animals hit with their big tails(16)!

Check Vocabulary

(5) حيوانات بحرية	(6) يحمي	(7) سمكة الراى اللاسع	(8) مستو/مسطح	(9) سلحفاة بحرية	(10) صدفة
(11) اخطبوط	(12) قنديل البحر	(13) سام	(14) يلدغ	(15) حيتان	(16) ذيول

• on Lesson 2 SB page 46

We must save(1) our planet(2)!

Plastic(3) is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment(4) for a very long time.



Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle(5) some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يحمي / ينقذ	(2) كوكب	(3) بلاستيك	(4) البيئة	(5) يعيد تصنيع

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

We must try to use other materials[6] – paper and glass, for example – because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish[7] from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!



(6) مواد خام
(7) قمامة

Answer the following questions:

- Giving the main idea and Extracting informations
إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية واستخراج المعلومات

Learn 1. What is the main idea of the passage?
- *We must save our planet.*

Practice 2. Which two materials are easier to recycle than plastic?
- ....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. The .... is everything around us. We must keep it clean.
   a. sea b. environment c. planet d. plant
2. The .... is the biggest sea animal in the world.
   a. elephant b. whale c. horse d. stingray
3. Plastic is ...., so sea animals and birds die from it.
   a. useful b. healthy c. poisonous d. clean

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. SB A .... is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it.
   a. sea turtle b. whale c. shark d. jellyfish
   (Al-Sayeda Zainab - Cairo 2022)
5. SB It has a hard shell to protect it. It is a/an .... *(Haram - Giza 2022)*
   a. octopus b. shark c. turtle d. whale
6. SB The whales which are heavy sea animals hit with their big ....
   a. hands b. wings c. legs d. tails
7. WB The .... is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.
   a. jellyfish b. turtle c. shark d. octopus

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. We don't need these old things. You can put them with the ....
   a. plastic b. planet c. rubbish d. shark
9. My .... hurt me, I need to visit the dentist.
   a. hands b. legs c. eyes d. teeth
10. A jellyfish will .... you if you touch it.
   a. sing b. bring c. sting d. watch

Definitions تعريفات

11. .... are objects like the Earth that go around the sun.
   a. planets b. planes c. plans d. plains
12. To "........" means putting something you don't need somewhere.
   a. put on b. come into c. throw away d. put up
13. A/An .... is a sea animal which has eight legs.
   a. jellyfish b. octopus c. shark d. whale

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. How do fish and sea animals protect themselves .... danger?
   a. of b. from c. off d. about
15. SB The octopus swims very fast when it's .... danger.
   a. out b. at c. on d. in

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

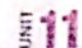
1. Describing sea animals ١. وصف الحيوانات البحرية

1. It can swim .... (ظرف) .
2. It has (عدد) .... (أرجل/زعانف) .
3. It lives in .... (مياه) .
4. The .... (سمكة القرش) is very dangerous.
5. A .... (سمكة الراي) is a big, flat fish.

2. Talking about the rules (What we must / mustn't do) ... .
٢. الحديث عن القواعد (ما يجب ولا يجب علينا القيام به)

Asking for opinions السؤال عن الرأي	Giving opinions إعطاء الرأي
1. A: What must I do when I cross the road? ١- ما الذي يجب القيام به عندما أعبر الطريق ؟	B: You must look left and right. يجب عليك أن تنظر جهة اليسار وجهة اليمين.
2. A: What mustn't you do on roads? ٢- ما الذي يجب عليك عدم القيام به على الطرق ؟	B: We mustn't play games on roads. يجب علينا ألا نلعب ألعاب على الطرق.

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة



Ways to save the environment
طرق للحفاظ على البيئة

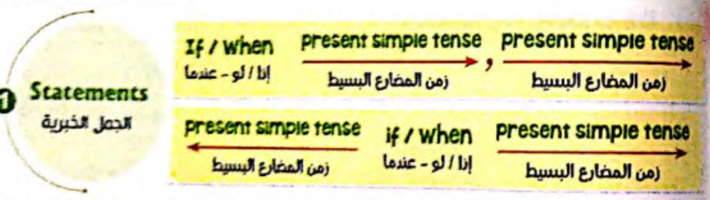
1. We mustn't use a lot of plastic materials.
١. لا يجب علينا أن نستخدم الكثير من المواد البلاستيكية.
2. Plastic materials are very dangerous and damage the environment.
٢. المواد البلاستيكية خطيرة جدا وتدمر البيئة.
3. We must try to use safe materials like paper and glass.
٣. يجب علينا أن نحاول استخدام مواد آمنة مثل الورق والزجاج.
4. We must keep our planet safe and clean.
٤. يجب علينا أن نحافظ على كوكبنا آمن ونظيف.

III Language



(1) Zero conditional with (If or When)

Formation التكوين



1 Statements الجمل الخبرية

If / when إذا / لو - عندما	present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط	,	present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط
present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط	if / when إذا / لو - عندما	present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط	

لاحظ وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية في حالة وجود (If / When) في البداية.

Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the zero conditional to say what always happens if/when a certain action takes place.
١. تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث دائمًا عندما يحدث حدث آخر معين.

ex. - I say hello **when** I see my friends.
- I wear my jacket **if** it is cold.

2. We use the present simple to talk about the action (with if or when) and the result.
٢. يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط عند الحديث عن شيء يحدث مع (if/when) وما يترتب عليه من نتائج.

ex. - I go to bed **when** I'm tired. - **When** I'm tired, I go to bed.

3. It expresses true situations.
٣. تعبر عن مواقف حقيقية.

ex. - **If /When** you **touch** the screen, the game **starts**.
- I **use** my dictionary **if/when** I **don't know** a word.

4. It describes facts related to (nature, physics and astronomy ...).
٤. تصف حقائق ترتبط بـ (الطبيعة والفيزياء والفلك ...).

ex. - **If** you **put** an orange into water, it **floats**.
- **When** you **add** oil to some water, the oil **floats**.
- **If/When** something **has** enough air in it, it **doesn't sink**.

استخدام (If / When) في صيغة الاستفهام :

2 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

ex. - **Do** you **feel** ill if/when you **eat** too many sweets ?
- When you eat too many sweets, do you feel ill ?
- What **do** you **do** if/when your friend **feels** sad ?
- What happens if/when you mix red with blue ?

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB When I feel ill, I .... to bed.
a. goes b. go c. went d. gone
2. SB If you .... a jellyfish, it stings you.
a. touched b. touches c. touch d. touching
3. SB When I am hungry, I .... something to eat.
a. had b. has c. have d. having
4. If Fatma .... a lot of TV, she feels tired. (Hadayek El Kobba - Cairo 2022)
a. watch b. watching c. watches d. watched
5. WB .... we hear something funny, we all laugh.
a. Why b. When c. What d. Where



CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

➲ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. When you leave ice in the sun, it .... water.
a. became b. becomes c. becoming d. become

7. If I .... rubbish on the ground, I put it in the rubbish bin.
a. sees b. saw c. see d. seen

8. I wear my jacket .... it is cold.
a. without b. so c. if d. but

9. If you put ice outside a freezer, it ....
a. melts b. melt c. melting d. melted

10. What .... if you put a coin into water ?
a. happening b. happens c. happen d. is happened

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

➲ SB, WS and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. If we don't water the plants, they died. (West Cairo - Cairo 2022) (........)
2. Where I've got a test, I always study hard. (........)
3. When it is very cold, water turned into ice. (........)
4. When my grandfather is tired, he falling a sleep. (........)
5. If you heat water, it boil. (Mallawi - Minya 2022) (........)
6. When I'm tired, I going to bed. (Kafr Saqr - Sharkiya 2022) (........)

➲ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. If people eats too many sweets, they get fat. (........)
8. She buys expensive clothes where she goes shopping. (........)
9. The river freezes if it be very cold. (........)
10. If we made noise in class, our teacher feels angry. (........)

(2) must /mustn't

Usage الاستخدام

- We use "must" to talk about things that are necessary to do.
- We use "mustn't" to talk about things that you are not allowed to do.

تستخدم "must / mustn't" عندما نريد أن نقول أنه من الضروري القيام أو عدم القيام بشئ ما.

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

Formation التكوين

Subject. (الفاعل) + must / mustn't + (inf.)

ex. - You must listen carefully to your teachers.
- You mustn't use a mobile phone in the class.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

- We use "must / mustn't" to ask for necessity

تستخدم "must / mustn't" للسؤال عن الضرورة

Must + Subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ... ?

ex. - Must I buy a ticket ? - Yes, you must buy a ticket.

Question word + must / mustn't + Subject + inf. (المصدر) ... ?

ex. - Where must I put the rubbish ? - You must put it in a trash bin.
- What mustn't you do on roads ? - We mustn't play games on roads.

(3) should / shouldn't.

Usage الاستخدام

- We use "should/shouldn't" to talk about things that are good ideas to do or not to do.

تستخدم "should/shouldn't" عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن اشياء جيدة أو غير جيدة للقيام بها.

Formation التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + should /shouldn't + (inf.)

ex. - We should recycle plastic. - You shouldn't waste your time.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Should + Subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ... ?

ex. - Should I finish the story today ?
- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

question word + should/shouldn't + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ... ?

ex. - What should I do to keep fit ? - You should do more exercises.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When it is very cold, water .... into ice.
   a. turns b. turning c. turned d. turn
2. She .... join the Faculty of Medicine. She is very clever.
   a. mustn't b. may not c. should d. couldn't
3. You .... listen carefully to your teacher.
   a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. can't
4. You .... walk on the grass.
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. could

No.	Answer + Explanation التوضيح
1	a [illegible] (fact) [illegible]
2	c (should) [illegible]
3	a (must) [illegible]
4	b [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB The animals .... eat plastic.
   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. have to
2. What must you .... before exams ? *(Samalut - Minya 2022)*
   a. do b. to do c. doing d. did
3. SB What should I .... first ?
   a. done b. did c. doing d. do

4. SB You mustn't .... angry with people you don't agree with.
   a. be b. being c. been d. to be
5. WB You .... run across the road. It's not safe.
   a. should b. must c. can d. mustn't
6. Sara must .... rubbish in the bins. *(Amreya - Alexandria 2022)*
   a. put b. are putting c. puts d. putting
7. What .... we do with the rubbish we find ? *(West Port Said 2022)*
   a. have b. had c. should d. haven't
8. You .... speak in the library loudly. *(El Tor - South Sinai 2022)*
   a. mustn't b. can't c. must d. can

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Heba .... take a taxi. She is very late.
   a. can b. must c. can't d. mustn't
10. You .... look left and right when you cross the road.
    a. must b. mustn't c. can d. can't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB You shouldn't **made** decisions or rules yourself. (........)
2. SB We **must** make a lot of noise. (........)
3. WB You must **came** early. (........)
4. You mustn't **plays** with the knives. *(Shubra - Cairo 2022)* (........)
5. You **must** write on the wall of the class. *(Hihya - Sharkia 2022)* (........)
6. You **mustn't** obey your teachers. *(Qena 2022)* (........)
7. SB Why must we **cleaned** the beaches ? (........)
8. WB You **mustn't** follow traffic rules. (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. The students shouldn't **used** their mobiles in the exams. (........)
10. It's a great film. You **shouldn't** watch it. (........)
11. You must **tidies** your room. (........)

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Eman and Aya are talking about marine animals.

Eman : What do you think the most dangerous sea animal is ?

Aya : (1) ....

Eman : (2) .... ?

Aya : Sharks live in oceans.

Eman : (3) .... ?

Aya : A turtle is the sea animal that has a hard shell.

Eman : Why is the shell useful to the turtle ?

Aya : (4) ....

Eman : What about the jellyfish ? Does it have a shell?

Aya : (5) .... But it can sting you when you touch it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Earth is the .... where we live. *(Fuwa - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
   a. plant b. planet c. star d. moon
2. SB The word "recycle" means to ....
   a. use something once b. not use something
   c. use something again d. never use something
3. SB If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you.
   a. stings b. jumps on c. pleases d. grows
4. SB A/An .... has eight legs and it can swim fast. *(Dayrout - Assiut 2022)*
   a. octopus b. shark c. whale d. jellyfish
5. The .... is the air, water and land around us.
   a. planet b. environment c. life d. material
6. WB A shark uses more than 20,000 .... in its life.
   a. feet b. fins c. tails d. teeth
7. All .... have shells on their back to protect them from danger.
   a. octopuses b. birds c. turtles d. planets

8. When there's a good view, you .... take a photo.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. have
9. We must .... our planet. It's important.
   a. saving b. to save c. save d. to saving
10. SB We get water if it ....
    a. rain b. will rain c. is rained d. rains

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

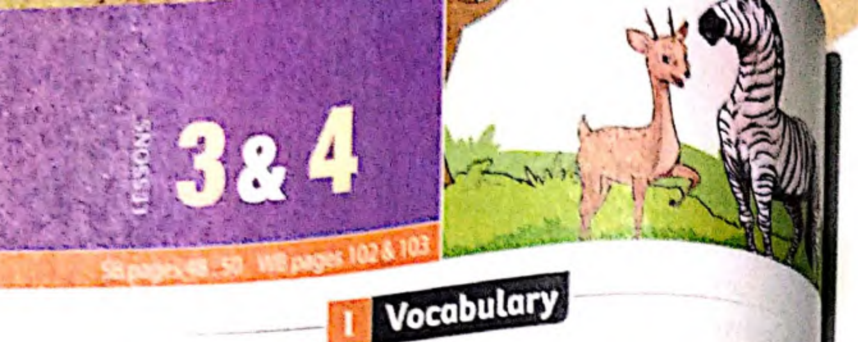
1. SB I <u>felt</u> tired when it's late. (...........)
2. WB You <u>mustn't</u> look left and right when you cross the road. (...........)
3. Students mustn't <u>shouted</u> in the classroom. (...........)
4. Why must we <u>cleaned</u> the beach ? *(Edfu - Aswan 2022)* (...........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Sea animals"

موقع التفوق
AltFwok

CamScanner حة ضوئيا بـ



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	water (ed) (v) , (n)	يسقى - ماء
soil (n)	تربة (زراعية)	nut (n)	حبة مكسرات
hole (n)	حفرة / ثقب	ground (n)	أرض
seed (n)	بذرة	instructions (n)	إرشادات/تعليمات
frighten (ed) (v)	يخيف	project (n)	مشروع
school work (n)	عمل مدرسى		

تنويه ▪ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

▪ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

water - school - instructions - reserves - soil

1. You should follow your teacher's ....
2. Good .... produces good crops.
3. If you don't .... the plants, they die.
4. Students should pay attention to their .... work.

Lesson 3
SB pages 48 & 49   WB page 102

visit (ed) (v), (n)	يزور / زيارة	knives (n)	سكاكين
reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات	fishing line (n)	صنارة الصيد
dive (d) (v)	يغطس	Ras Mohammed reserve (n)	محمية رأس محمد
rules (n)	قواعد	decisions (n)	قرارات

Lesson 4
SB page 50   WB page 103

press (ed) (v)	يضغط	stones (n)	احجار
deep (adj)	عميق	space (n)	فراغ
phone call (n)	مكالمة هاتفية	warm (adj)	دافئ

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hide	يخفى / يختبئ	hid	hidden
pay	يدفع (مال)	paid	paid

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
hard	صلب	soft	لين / أملس
give	يعطى	take	يأخذ
empty	فارغ	full	مملوء

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

fishing line	a thin line used to catch a fish	صنارة الصيد
ground	the top part of the Earth, where we stand	أرض
hole	an empty space in something	فتحة / ثقب
cover	put something over something else to protect or hide it	يغطى / يحمى
seed	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants	بذرة
nature reserve	an area of land used to protect nature, animals and plants	محمية طبيعية
pot	a small container	إناء
soil	what plants usually grow in	تربة (زراعية)

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

make	noise	يحدث ضوضاء	do	an activity	يقوم بنشاط
	a decision	يتخذ قرار	take	turns	يتبادل أدوار
	a rule	يصنع قاعدة	play	a sport	يلعب / يمارس رياضة
	a hole	يصنع حفرة		a game	يلعب لعبة
	a phone call	يجرى مكالمة هاتفية	have	a picnic lunch	يتناول وجبة غداء فى نزهة
	a sandwich	يُعد ساندويتش			
	something from recycled plastic	يصنع شئ من البلاستيك المعاد تدويره			

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 reserve

- reserve (v) = book يحجز
  ex.: - He reserved two tickets at the cinema.
- reserve (n) محمية (للحيوانات والنباتات)
  ex.: - You mustn't damage anything in a nature reserve.

2 soil - floor

- soil التربة (التى نزرع فيها النباتات)
  ex.: - To grow this plant, you need a good soil.
- floor أرضية (الحجرة)
  ex.: - We put a carpet سجادة on the floor.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take with	يأخذ مع	press ... into	يضغط فى
bad for	سئ لـ	cover with	يغطى بـ
share ... with	يشارك ... مع	through the reserve	خلال المحمية الطبيعية
angry with	يغضب من	walk into their homes	يدخلوا منازلهم
agree with	يتفق مع	find their own food	يجدوا طعامهم
at the bottom	فى القاع	come from	يأتى من
give instructions about	يعطى تعليمات بشأن	keep air healthy	يحافظ على الهواء صحى
famous for	مشهور بـ	work as a group	يعمل كمجموعة
collaborate with	يتعاون مع	pay around	يدفع حوالى / ما يقرب من
think of ways to...	يفكر فى طرق لـ	fill with	يملئ بـ

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Listening

- on Lesson 3 SB page 48



Teacher : We're going to visit this nature reserve[1] today. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here so we must be careful[2] about what we do. First[3], you mustn't make a lot of noise[4]! You'll frighten[5] the animals and birds. Secondly[6], we must not leave the road through the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes, do you? Now I know we're going to have a picnic lunch[7] later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you! Next[8], you must take all your rubbish with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it. It is very bad for them. Finally[9], you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for the project[10].

Check Vocabulary

(1) محمية طبيعية
(2) حريص
(3) أولاً
(4) يحدث كثيرًا من الضوضاء
(5) يخيف
(6) ثانيًا
(7) يتناول وجبة غداء فى نزهة
(8) بعد ذلك
(9) أخيرًا
(10) مشروع

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. Why do you think we need the nature reserve ?
- *To protect our birds, animals and plants.*

Practise 2. Why do you think we must take all the rubbish with us when we leave ?
- ....

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق



CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

• Lesson 4 SB page 50

Plant a tree today !



Adult : Do you want to help save our planet[1] ? Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air[2] healthy. You can plant[3] a nut[4] or the seed[5] of a fruit.

Child : What should I do first ?

Adult : First, wash an empty plastic pot[6] and dry[7] it. Secondly, put some small stones[8] at the bottom of[9] the pot.

Child : Then what should I do ?

Adult : Then, fill the pot with soil[10].

Child : Like this ?

Adult : Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, press[11] your finger into the soil and make a small hole[12].

Child : How deep must it be ?

Adult : It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place[13]. The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

Child : Should I water it now ?

Adult : Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say "I planted that!"

Check Vocabulary

(1) تحافظ على / تنقذ كوكبنا (2) هواء (3) يزرع (4) حبة مكسرات (5) بذرة (6) أناء بلاستيك فارغ
(7) يجفف (8) أحجار (9) فى قاع (10) تربة زراعية (11) يضغط (12) حفرة/فتحة (13) مكان دافئ

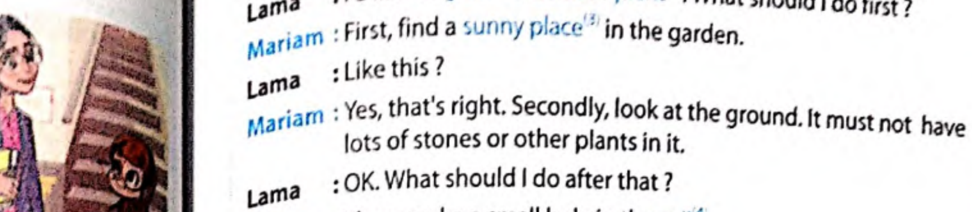
• on Lesson 4 WB page 103

How to grow a tomato plant



- **First,** find a sunny place in the garden.
- **Second,** look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.
- **Then,** make a small hole in the soil.
- **Next,** put some water in the hole so it is not too dry.
- **Finally,** put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

• Lesson 4 WB page 103



Lama : I'd like to grow[1] a tomato plant[2]. What should I do first ?

Mariam : First, find a sunny place[3] in the garden.

Lama : Like this ?

Mariam : Yes, that's right. Secondly, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.

Lama : OK. What should I do after that ?

Mariam : Then, make a small hole in the soil[4].

Lama : How deep must it be ?

Mariam : About 2 cm. Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry[5].

Lama : Should I water[6] it now ?

Mariam : Yes, you should. Finally, put the seed[7] in the hole and cover[8] it with soil.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يزرع (2) نبات الطماطم (3) مكان مشمس (4) تربة زراعية (5) جاف (6) يسقى / يروى (7) حبة / بذرة (8) يغطى



• on Lesson 3 WB page 102

Ras Mohammed



Ras Mohammed reserve is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs here to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you must pay around[1] LE 100. When you dive, you mustn't touch or give food to any of the fish. You must only use knives[2] to cut fishing lines[3] and you must never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you must be careful !

Check Vocabulary

(1) يدفع حوالى (2) سكاكين (3) صنارات صيد

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

Plant a tree today!

Do you want to help save our planet ?

Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy[1]. You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.

1. First, wash the plastic pot[2] and dry it.
2. Second, put some small stones[3] at the bottom[4] of the pot.
3. Then, fill[5] the pot with soil.
4. Next, press[6] your finger into the soil and make a small hole about 2 cm deep.
5. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
6. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.
7. Water it every day. (Don't give it too much water).
8. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground.

















Check Vocabulary

(1) يحافظ على الهواء صحى	(2) إناء بلاستيكى	(3) أحجار	(4) فى قاع	(5) يملأ	(6) يضغط

Videoscript on Lesson 3 SB page 49

From the camel to the beautiful desert cat[1], or caracal[2] to the Nile crocodile[3], there are many animals in Egypt. But some animals are in danger of extinction[4]. This means that every example of the animal will die. The Dorcas gazelle[5] lives in the Sinai Peninsula[6] and in other parts of North Africa. It eats plants and you can sometimes see them early in the morning and late in the evening. The animal is in danger because some people want to eat it.

In the past, the Barbary sheep[7] lived all over the country. It eats plants, but warmer weather[8] means the sheep find it harder to find food. Today, you can only find them in the mountains of southern[9] and western[10] Egypt.

The striped hyena[11] looks like a dog. You can only see it at night. It eats other animals. People think that there are only a small number of striped hyenas in Egypt.

One of the most unusual animals is the dugong[12]. This animal lives in the Red Sea and other places. It is also called the sea cow. This is because it only eats plants that grow underwater.

The dugong is in danger because there is plastic and other pollution[13] in the sea. Also, there is not much food in the sea for it to eat.

Today, there are some organisations[14] that want to help these and other animals that are in danger, like this turtle. It is helpful for animals when we take rubbish from the beaches. We must all do what we can to help to protect nature.

Check Vocabulary

(1) القط الصحراوى	(2) الكاركال (حيوان الوشق البرى)	(3) تمساح نهر النيل	(4) معرض لخطر الانقراض	(5) غزال الدوركاس
(6) شبه جزيرة سيناء	(7) الخروف البربرى	(8) الجو الأدفء	(9) جنوبى	(10) غربى
(11) الضبع المخطط	(12) حيوان الأطوم (عجل البحر)	(13) تلوث	(14) منظمات	

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. When you put a/an .... into the soil, it grows into a new plant.
   a. brick b. seal c. seed d. egg

AlFukk.com موقع الفكوك

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

UNIT 11

2. Press your finger into the soil and make a small .... about 2 cm deep.
a. hall b. hole c. hill d. hell

3. You'll .... the animals and birds if you make noise.
a. laugh b. frighten c. save d. keep

4. This area gives a lot of good crops. It has a good ....
a. soil b. desert c. earth d. land

5. Nature .... protect a lot of animals and birds.
a. preserves b. resorts c. reserves d. deserts

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. WB You must .... around LE 100 when you go diving.
a. take b. throw c. leave d. pay

7. WB You can only use .... to cut fishing line.
a. knight b. lives c. knives d. dives

8. SB First, ... the plastic pot and dry it to be clean. *(Tema - Sohag 2022)*
a. make b. play c. throw d. wash

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Can I borrow your phone ? I need to make a /an ....
a. email b. article c. phone call d. text message

10. Trees keep air .... and clean.
a. unhealthy b. noisy c. hot d. healthy

11. Try to keep this plant in a .... place.
a. word b. worm c. warm d. wool

Definitions تعريفات

12. The .... is the top part of the Earth, where we stand.
a. hole b. planet c. plant d. ground

13. WB .... is a thin line used to catch a fish.
a. Fishing net b. Network c. Fishing line d. Fishing boat

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. .... decisions quickly isn't a good habit. You should think well.
a. Talking b. Making c. Having d. Giving

15. SB You shouldn't be angry .... people you don't agree with.
a. of b. at c. with d. about

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Ask and answer questions about a nature reserve ١. السؤال عن المحمية الطبيعية والإجابة عليها

Questions	Answers
• What is a nature reserve ? ما هى المحمية الطبيعية ؟	- It is an area, smaller than a park for the purpose of preserving some animals, plants or both. هى مكان أصغر من الحديقة يستخدم بغرض حماية بعض الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الاثنين معًا.
• What do you think people must do in a nature reserve ? فى رأيك ماذا يجب أن يفعل الناس فى المحمية الطبيعية ؟	- They must be careful about what they do. يجب أن يكونوا حذرين لما يفعلوه.
• What do you think people mustn't do in a nature reserve ? فى رأيك ماذا يجب ألا يفعل الناس فى المحمية الطبيعية ؟	- They mustn't walk into animals' homes. يجب ألا يدخلوا بيوت الحيوانات. - They mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. يجب ألا يعطوا أى طعام للحيوانات أو الطيور.
• How can we save our planet ? كيف يمكننا حماية كوكبنا ؟	- We can save our planet by planting trees, nuts and fruits. يمكننا أن نحمى كوكبنا عن طريق زراعة الأشجار والمكسرات والفواكه.

2. Asking for and giving instructions ٢. طلب وإعطاء التعليمات

Asking for instructions طلب التعليمات	Giving instructions إعطاء التعليمات
• I want to make a phone call. What should I do first ? أريد أن أقوم بإجراء مكالمة هاتفية. ماذا ينبغى على أن أفعل أولًا ؟	- First, you should turn the phone on. أولًا. يجب عليك تشغيل الهاتف.
• Like this ? بهذه الطريقة ؟	- Yes, that's right ! Second, find the name or number of the person you want to call. نعم. هذا صحيح ! ثانيًا. ابحث عن الاسم أو رقم الشخص الذى تريد الاتصال به.
• Should I press the person's number ? هل ينبغى على أن أضغط على رقم الشخص ؟	- Yes, you should. Finally, wait for the person to answer ! نعم. ينبغى عليك. أخيرًا. انتظر الشخص ليقوم بالرد عليك!

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

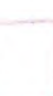


3. Writing

Nature reserve
محمية طبيعية

فى هذا الجزء لتمكن من الكتابة عن المحمية الطبيعية

1. We mustn't make much noise in the nature reserve.
يجب ألا نحدث الكثير من الضوضاء فى المحمية الطبيعية
2. We mustn't give food to the animals or birds there.
يجب ألا نعطى طعام للحيوانات أو للطيور هناك
3. The animals mustn't eat plastic. يجب ألا تأكل الحيوانات البلاستيك
4. We mustn't walk into animals' homes. يجب ألا ندخل بيوت الحيوانات



How to plant
كيفية زراعة نبات

فى هذا الجزء لتمكن من الكتابة عن كيفية زراعة نبات
حوالى ٦ جمل

1. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. أولاً، قم بغسل الأناء البلاستيكى وجففه
2. Second, fill the pot with soil. ثانياً، املأ الإناء بالتربة (الزراعية)
3. Next, press your finger into the soil and make a hole.
ثم، اضغط بإصبعك فى التربة الزراعية واصنع حفرة
4. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
أزرع البذرة فى الحفرة وقم بتغطيتها بالتربة
5. Water it every day. اسقيها كل يوم
6. Don't give it too much water. لا تقم بإعطائها الكثير من الماء

Remember تذكر

Rules for writing instructions **قواعد لكتابة التعليمات :**

- Use short sentences. استخدم جمل قصيرة.
- Use the imperative. استخدم صيغة الأمر.
- Say one thing in each sentence. اذكر شىء واحد فى كل جملة.
- Use sequencing words to show the order in which actions or instructions happen : First, Second, Next, etc.
- استخدم كلمات التوالى / التعاقب لتوضح ترتيب الأحداث أو التعليمات باستخدام : أولاً، ثانياً، ثم ...

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We should help .... our planet.
   a. take b. make c. save d. give
2. The Earth is our ....
   a. plant b. planet c. star d. sun
3. .... keep our air healthy.
   a. Trees b. Planets c. Earth d. Sun
4. We can breathe fresh ....
   a. plants b. air c. Earth d. planet

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar is telling Kareem about his visit to a nature reserve.

Kareem : Where did you go yesterday ?
Omar : (1) ....
Kareem : How did you go there ?
Omar : (2) ....
Kareem : (3) .... ?
Omar : I saw a lot of rare animals and plants.
Kareem : Did you give the animals anything to eat ?
Omar : (4) .... Animals must try to find their own food.
Kareem : (5) .... ?
Omar : This place is important because we protect these animals and plants. (New Cairo - Cairo 2022)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Plants need good .... to grow quickly. (Desouk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)
   a. planet b. soil c. ground d. hill
2. Nature .... keep our birds, plants and animals safe.
   a. resorts b. reserves c. services d. parks
3. Plants help to keep our air ....
   a. healthy b. wealthy c. cloudy d. dusty

موقع التفوق AltFuuk.com

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

4. That pot is .... There's nothing in it.
   a. filled   b. dirty   c. empty   d. busy
5. Be careful, there's a .... in front of you.
   a. hall   b. hole   c. wheel   d. whole
6. SB Plant the .... in a hole and cover it with soil.
   a. pot   b. water   c. seed   d. ground
7. "........" means to put something over something else to protect or hide it.
   a. Save   b. Frighten   c. Reserve   d. Cover
8. He must .... to other friends' ideas.
   a. listen   b. to listen   c. listening   d. listens
9. You .... play games in the road. *(Tema - Sohag 2022)*
   a. should   b. must   c. mustn't   d. can
10. We .... be careful with what to do in a nature reserve.
   a. must   b. shouldn't   c. mustn't   d. can't

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB What must the birds and animals <u>found</u> ? (..........)
2. WB You should <u>sharing</u> your ideas with others. (..........)
3. WB Should I <u>watered</u> the plants now ? (..........)
4. When you visit a reserve, you <u>must</u> cut the rare flowers. (..........)

(Helwan - Cairo 2022)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"What we must do to keep animals safe"

....

ALtFwok.com موقع التفوق

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52 WB pages 104 & 105



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	leaflet (n)	منشور - كتيب ارشادى
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس	plastic rubbish (n)	نفايات بلاستيكية
fisherman (n)	صياد	desert (n)	صحراء
skeleton (n)	هيكل عظمى	radio station (n)	محطة إذاعية
respect (ed) (v)	يحترم	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
character (n)	شخصية	writer (n)	كاتب / مؤلف
West Beach (n)	الشاطئ الغربى	helmet (n)	خوذة
advertisement (n)	إعلان	gloves (n)	قفازات (جوانتى)

تنويه ▪ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



5 min Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

skeleton - character - conclusion - writer - snacks

1. Vegetables are healthy ....
2. What is the main .... in this story ?
3. Naguib Mahfouz is the .... of famous novels.
4. The teacher asked us to write the .... of the story.

Lesson 5 SB page 51 WB page 104

worry (ied) (v)	يقلق	smile (d) (v), (n)	يبتسم / ابتسامة
pull (ed) (v)	يسحب / يشد	illness (n)	مرض
bones (n)	عظام	position (n)	موضع / مكان

Lesson 6 SB page 52 WB page 105

poster (n)	ملصق	title (n)	عنوان (مقال - مسرحية)
key points (n)	نقاط رئيسية	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص / يوجز
headings (n)	عناوين (رؤوس الموضوعات)	concluding sentence (n)	جملة ختامية

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

clear goals	أهداف واضحة	conclude (d) (v)	يختتم / ينهي
local (adj)	محلي	comment (ed) (v) (n)	يعلق / تعليق

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
brave	شجاع	afraid / frightened / coward	خائف أو جبان
tiny	ضئيل	enormous	ضخم
increase	يزيد / يزداد	decrease	يقلل / يقل
pull	يسحب	push	يدفع
simple	بسيط	complex	معقد

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

fisherman	a man who catches fish	صياد (سمك)
respect	show care and admiration for someone	يحترم
skeleton	the bones of the body	هيكل عظمي
rubbish	things we do not need	قمامة

General Notes on Reading

1 feel + (adj) لاحظ : أن الفعل feel دائمًا يُتبع بصفة.

• Santiago felt worried.

Rahma feels sad when she sees an orphan. يتيم

2 catch معانٍ مختلفة للفعل

- catch a bus / a train / a plane يلحق بالأتوبيس / القطار / الطائرة
- catch fish يصطاد سمك
- catch a thief يقبض على لص
- catch a ball يمسك الكرة
- catch an illness يصاب بمرض

3 role – rule

• role (n) دور

ex.: - We all have a role to play in helping the environment.

• rule (v), (n) يحكم / قاعدة

ex.: - The Romans ruled Egypt a long time ago.
- All students must obey the school rules.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel worried	يشعر بالقلق	tell about	يخبر عن
at the end of	في نهاية	at the bottom of the ocean	في قاع المحيط
find a new use for	يجد استخدام جديد لـ	on the ground	على الأرض
on the beach	على الشاطئ	home to	موطن لـ
onto the boat	على متن القارب	study for the test	يدرس/يذاكر للامتحان
How big the fish was!	كم كانت السمكة كبيرة!	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
pieces of	قطع من	more than ever	أكثر من ذى قبل
for up to (1000 years) ...	يصل إلى أو يقترب من	make art with	يزينها / يجعلها زينة
have a role to play	لديه دور يقوم به	dangerous for	خطير على
give yourself clear goals	حدد لنفسك أهداف واضحة	get well	يشفى / يتعافى
		travel on the bus	يسافر بالأتوبيس
To conclude .... = In conclusion	في الختام / في النهاية	keep water clean	يحافظ على الماء نظيفًا
		eat too many sweets	يأكل الكثير من الحلوى
I don't feel well today	لا أشعر بتحسن اليوم	run away	يهرب

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



• **Lesson 5 SB page 51**

The Old Man and the Sea





By Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old fisherman(1). He felt worried, because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line(2). But the fish was stronger than(3) Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the sharks(4) came. When Santiago returned to(5) his home on the beach, he had no fish, only a skeleton(6).

Check Vocabulary

(1) صياد | (2) صنارة صيد | (3) أقوى من | (4) أسماك القرش | (5) عاد إلى | (6) هيكل عظمي

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



He felt weak[7] and slept for a long time.
But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave[8] to catch it.
Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now respected[9] him more than ever.

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. Who do you think was stronger, the fish or the fisherman ?
- *I think the fisherman was stronger than the fish.*

Practice 2. What do you think the story teaches us ?
- ....

on Lesson 5 WB page 104



When Santiago woke up[1], he saw the boy Manolin. Santiago smiled[2].
"We must fish together[3] next time[4]," said Manolin.
"Yes, but I don't feel well[5] today", said Santiago.
"You must get well fast because there is so much I can learn from[6] you," said Manolin.

Check Vocabulary

(1) استيقظ | (2) ابتسم | (3) نصطاد معًا | (4) المرة القادمة | (5) لا يشعر بتحسن | (6) يتعلم من

Lesson 6 SB page 52

We must clean our beach!



1- Where and when is the event[1]?
- West Beach
- Saturday afternoon 2 p.m. – 5 p.m.

2. What do we need ?
- rubbish bags[2], gloves[3] (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks[4] to eat!
- some people like listening to music on their headphones![5]

Check Vocabulary

(1) حدث | (2) أكياس القمامة | (3) قفازات | (4) وجبات خفيفة | (5) سماعات الرأس

3. Why must we clean the beaches ?
- 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach
- one plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)

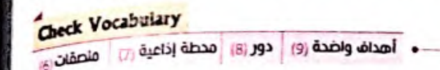
4. How can we tell people about our event ?
- posters[6] (around school and town)
- emails to local groups
- local radio station[7] or newspaper

5. What should we do with the rubbish we find ?
- recycle it - find a new use for it - make art with it

Life Skills

- Remember that we all have a role[8] to play in helping the environment. Give yourself clear goals[9] on how to do this.

Check Vocabulary



(6) ملصقات | (7) محطة إذاعية | (8) دور | (9) أهداف واضحة

Lesson 6 WB page 105

Match the headings with the conclusions to these three different texts.

a. Keeping water clean
1. To conclude, the sea gives us much more than a place to go swimming, so let's not make it dirty!

b. Think before you use plastic material
2. To conclude, we must remember how long plastic rubbish stays in our environment, and we must use different materials when we can.

c. The amazing Red Sea
3. In conclusion, the warm waters are home to everything from tiny jellyfish to very big sharks.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Ernest Hemingway is the .... of "The Old Man and the Sea".
 a. reader b. writer c. baker d. cooker
2. Having a .... is important if you are hungry.
 a. snake b. bag c. role d. snack

AltFuwk.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ضوئيا بـ

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

3. My brother bought new .... to listen to music.
a. headphones b. gloves c. helmets d. trousers

4. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says.
a. delete b. became c. respect d. expect

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. A leaflet is a .... paper that has information about something.
a. deep b. folded c. warm d. different

6. Manolin .... they fish together next time.
a. ordered b. ruled c. used d. suggested

7. The other fishermen knew that Santiago was .... to catch the big fish. (Belbis - Sharkia 2022)
a. worried b. brave c. coward d. weak

8. Remember that we all have a .... in helping our environment.
a. role b. rule c. door d. head
(Basion - Gharbia 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. She ran for four hours, so she felt ....
a. weak b. scary c. strong d. afraid

10. Reading stories can .... us lessons for life.
a. know b. get c. learn d. teach

11. Our teacher told us to .... the lesson into five sentences.
a. summarise b. listen c. paint d. draw

Definitions تعريفات

12. The bones of the body are called a ....
a. muscle b. stomach c. lung d. skeleton

13. A/An .... is a man who catches fish.
a. fisherman b. engineer c. doctor d. carpenter

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. It took two days for Santiago .... the fish to the boat.
a. pulls b. pulling c. to pull d. pull

15. One plastic bottle can stay in our environment for .... to 1,000 years.
a. down b. up c. bottom d. over

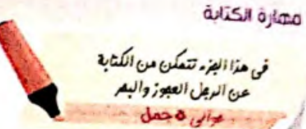
2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Discussing the problem of rubbish مناقشة مشكلة القمامة

Questions	Answers
• Is rubbish a problem in your area ? هل القمامة مشكلة فى منطقتك ؟	- Yes, it is. نعم، إنها كذلك.
• What must people do to help ? ماذا يجب أن يفعل الناس للمساعدة ؟	- They must clean their city. يجب أن ينظفوا مدينتهم.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

"The Old Man and the Sea"
الرجل العجوز والبحر



1. Santiago was an old fisherman. ١. كان سنتياجو صياد عجوز.
2. He felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line. ٢. شعر بسمكة كبيرة فى نهاية صنارته.
3. The fish was stronger than Santiago. ٣. كانت السمكة أقوى من سنتياجو.
4. The other fishermen saw how big the fish was. ٤. رأى الصيادين الآخرين كم كانت السمكة كبيرة.
5. The fishermen now respected him more than ever. ٥. الآن إحترم الصيادون سنتياجو أكثر من ذى قبل.

Tips for writing

1 Leaflet منشور (كتاب إرشادى)

A leaflet is a folded paper that has information about something. It has :
المنشور (أو نشرة التعليمات) هو عبارة عن ورقة مطوية بها معلومات عن شىء ما وأهم ما يميزها أن لها :

1. a short, exciting title. ١. عنوان رئيسى قصير مثير للانتباه.
2. a short, simple introduction. ٢. مقدمة قصيرة وبسيطة.
3. clear headings. ٣. عناوين واضحة.
4. simple sentences. ٤. جمل بسيطة.

2 How to conclude a text كيف تنهى نص مكتوب

1. When you finish writing a text, you use a concluding sentence.
١. عندما تنهى نصًا، نستخدم جملة ختامية.
2. A concluding sentence summarises the key points of your text.
٢. الجملة الختامية تلخص النقاط الرئيسية للنص.
3. Always include a comma after phrases such as "to conclude, ..." "In conclusion, ..."
٣. دائمًا ضع فاصلة سفلية بعد التعبيرات التى تعبر عن النهاية.

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

General Exercises on LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Santiago was an old ....
   a. fisherman b. carpenter c. sailor d. farmer
2. Santiago didn't .... fish for a long time.
   a. buy b. sell c. catch d. eat
3. ...., there was a big fish.
   a. Today b. Yesterday c. One day d. Last week
4. The big fish was .... his fishing line.
   a. at the end of b. in the front of c. in the middle of d. at the top of

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Adel tells Hany about a story he read.

Hany : What are you reading, Adel ?
Adel : (1) ....
Hany : A story ! (2) .... ?
Adel : It's about the old man and the sea.
Hany : What does it tell us about ?
Adel : (3) ....
Hany : Did the old man catch any fish ?
Adel : (4) ....
Hany : (5) .... ?
Adel : No, he couldn't sell it at the market.

(Akhmeem - Sohag 2022)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When I share a post, my friends write ....
   a. commas b. comments c. blogs d. plays
2. "........" means to show care and admiration for someone.
   a. Conclude b. Respect c. Worry d. Smile
3. .... people sometimes do dangerous jobs.
   a. Quiet b. Lazy c. Weak d. Brave

4. If something is .... , it is very small.
   a. weak b. strong c. tiny d. enormous
5. Judy felt very .... after she was ill, but she is better now.
   a. weak b. strong c. brave d. active
6. Wear .... on your hands to keep them warm.
   a. glasses b. scarfs c. gloves d. coats
7. This isn't a .... story. The animals are talking in it !
   a. brave b. simple c. enormous d. real
8. You .... take water when you go to the desert. *(Naqada - Qena 2022)*
   a. shouldn't b. must c. haven't d. has
9. People .... smoke in hospitals. It isn't allowed to do that. *(West Mansoura - Dakahlia 2022)*
   a. should b. must c. will d. mustn't
10. We must .... the beaches regularly.
   a. clean b. cleaned c. to clean d. cleaning

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You <u>mustn't</u> follow the traffic rules. *(Tala - Menoufia 2022)* (............)
2. I learnt how <u>doing</u> this activity alone. (............)
3. SB It's important <u>study</u> hard for the test. (............)
4. SB Don't <u>threw</u> rubbish in the ground. (............)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"*A story you like*"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

موقع التفوق AltFwok

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Review on unit 11

SB page 53 WB page 106

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
coral reefs شعاب مرجانية octopus اخطبوط jellyfish قنديل البحر stingray سمك الراي اللاسع turtle سلحفاة whale حوت ocean محيط sting يلدغ tail ذيل planet كوكب environment البيئة recycle يعيد تدوير nature reserve محمية طبيعية frighten يخيف rules قواعد local محلي soil تربة زراعية protect يحمي poisonous سام fisherman صياد skeleton هيكل عظمي seed بذرة respect يحترم throw away يلقى بعيدا weak ضعيف	**1- Zero conditional (If)** If / When present simple , present simple - If it rains, we get water. - When it's late, I feel tired. Present simple if / when present simple - We get water if it rains. - I feel tired when it's late. **2- must / musn't + inf.** مصدر الفعل - We must save our planet. - We musn't throw rubbish in the ocean. **3- should / shouldn't + inf.** مصدر الفعل - He should study hard. - He shouldn't be rude to his friends.	1. Talking about saving the environment. - We mustn't throw trash in the streets. - We must clean our beaches. 2. Describing sea animals : - The shark is very dangerous. - The stingray is a big, flat fish.

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

. تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Stimulus	Response	Usage الاستخدام
1. What mustn't you do in the library ? 2. What must you do when your teacher speak ?	- *We mustn't talk loudly in the library.* - *We must listen to our teacher.*	الحديث عن ما يجب ولا يجب علينا القيام به
3. Where does a stingray live ? 4. How does the jellyfish protect itself from danger ?	- *It lives in the coral reef.* - *It stings you when you touch it.*	وصف الحيوانات البحرية
5. I want to make a phone call. What should I do first ?	- *First, you should turn the phone on.*	طلب نصيحة والرد عليه
6. What must people do to help with the rubbish problem ?	- *They must clean their city.*	مناقشة مشكلة القمامة
7. What is a nature reserve ?	- *It is an area of land used to protect nature, animals and plants.*	السؤال عن المحمية الطبيعية
8. How can we save our planet ?	- *We can save our planet by planting trees.*	السؤال عن كيفية حماية كوكبنا
9. What do you think people mustn't do in a nature reserve ?	- *They mustn't walk into animals homes.*	السؤال عما لا يجب الناس فعله في المحمية

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

. تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية فى الورقة الامتحانية. (٢٩ جملة)

1 Sea animals

There are many types of animals in the sea[1]. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean[2]. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows[3]. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life[4]. Sea animals use many ways to protect themselves from danger.[5]. A stingray lives in the coral reef[6]. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water[7]. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it[8]. Other animals can swim very fast like the octopus which has eight legs to help it[9]. The jellyfish is poisonous[10]. It stings you when you touch it[11]. Whales are big, heavy animals[12]. They hit with their big tails[13].

2 "We must save our planet"

Plastic is a big problem in our seas and oceans[14]. Plastic stays in the environment for a long time[15]. Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old[16]. We can recycle some plastic, but some of it goes into the ocean[17]. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it[18]. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic[19]. We must try to use other materials-paper and glass, for example-because they are easier to recycle[20].

3 Nature reserve

A nature reserve is an area of land[21]. We have it to help our birds, plants and animals[22]. Many birds, animals and plants live in nature reserves[23]. So it's a very important place[24]. We must be careful when we go there[25]. We mustn't make a lot of noise there as that will frighten the animals and birds[26]. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve[27]. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds[28]. We must take all the rubbish with us when we leave[29].




Test on unit 11

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه: يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

A. Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. What is the text about ?
   a. The shark b. The sea animals
   c. The teeth d. The shark's tail
2. What is the most dangerous sea animal ?
   a. The dolphin b. The whale c. The shark d. The octopus
3. What happens if the shark loses a tooth ?
   a. It loses another one. b. A new one grows.
   c. It uses less teeth. d. It loses its life.
4. How many teeth does the shark use in its life ? - More than ....
   a. 1,000 b. 4,000 c. 20,000 d. 2000

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar and Zaid are talking about sea animals.

Omar : Yesterday, we had an interesting science lesson.
Zaid : (1) .... ?
Omar : It was about sea animals.
Zaid : What animals did you learn about ?
Omar : (2) ....
Zaid : (3) .... ?
Omar : Yes, they are dangerous.
Zaid : Where does a stingray live ?
Omar : (4) .... It never likes sharks.
Zaid : (5) ....

(Minya al-Qamh - Sharkia 2022)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. Some of the

CamScanner ـب ضوئيا حة

plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can **recycle** some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. When we use plastic shopping bags, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers. We must try to use other materials – for example paper and glass, because **these** are easier to recycle. When we use a plastic shopping bag, we should try to use it more than once.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**these**" refers to ....
   a. dolphins b. paper and glass
   c. fishing lines d. plastic bags
2. The word "**recycle**" means ....
   a. reuse b. repay c. reduce d. refer
3. It's better to use paper than ....
   a. glass b. bags c. fishing d. plastic

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.
....
5. Why must we try to use other materials such as paper and glass?
....
6. Why do you think plastic is dangerous for the life of animals?
....

(Koum Hamada - Beheira 2022)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the museum, we saw a .... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big.
   a. sand b. skeleton c. soil d. star
2. " .... " means to put something you don't need somewhere.
   a. Catch b. Turn to c. Cut down d. Throw away
   (Baltim - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)

3. Cleaning plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean helps to protect our .... *(Abu Hommus - Beheira 2022)*
   a. moon b. problem c. star d. planet
4. The .... is the air, water and land on Earth.
   a. wind b. environment c. ocean d. skeleton
5. You can practise your favourite sport in the sports ....
   a. centre b. road c. barn d. circle
6. What's your favourite .... in this story? - Alice. *(El Badari - Assiut 2022)*
   a. adventure b. event c. character d. actor
7. A .... reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected.
   a. furniture b. future c. nature d. culture
8. When a turtle is in danger, it .... into its shell. *(Nag Hammadi - Qena 2022)*
   a. go b. goes c. going d. went
9. At school, you .... talk to your friends during the lesson.
   a. must b. can c. mustn't d. should
10. What .... to get high marks?
    a. I should do b. should I do c. do I should d. should do

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You must **tidies** your room. *(North Sinai - Sinai 2022)* (........)
2. WB You **must** forget why you are doing the activity. (........)
3. What **we should** do with the rubbish? (........)
4. We get water when it **rained**. (........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Planting a tree"

....



....

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 11 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Eman : How can we save our planet ?

Aya : ....

B. Yasser : .... ?

Ali : Santiago is the main character in the story of "The Old Man and the Sea".

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Sea animals"

....

....

....

....

....

....

2. Use your brain, think smart

طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Everybody has a .... to play in keeping the environment clean.
   a. rule b. role c. roll d. ruler
2. A turtle goes .... the shell when it is in danger.
   a. on b. away c. into d. around
3. Dinosaurs died .... millions of years ago.
   a. in b. off c. of d. out
4. If we .... noise in class, our teachers feel angry.
   a. make b. do c. take d. get

Quiz on units 7,8,9,10&11

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (٧ ، ٨ ، ٩ ، ١٠ و ١١)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة فى الوحدات

Model A

Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I .... lunch in the school canteen yesterday.
   a. have b. had c. am having d. has
2. Bangkok is the .... of Thailand.
   a. island b. river c. country d. capital
3. We can see ourselves in the ....
   a. line b. mirror c. door d. storm
4. She took a photo of ....
   a. himself b. yourself c. herself d. myself
5. The .... is made of leather.
   a. lamp b. cushion c. wall d. wallet

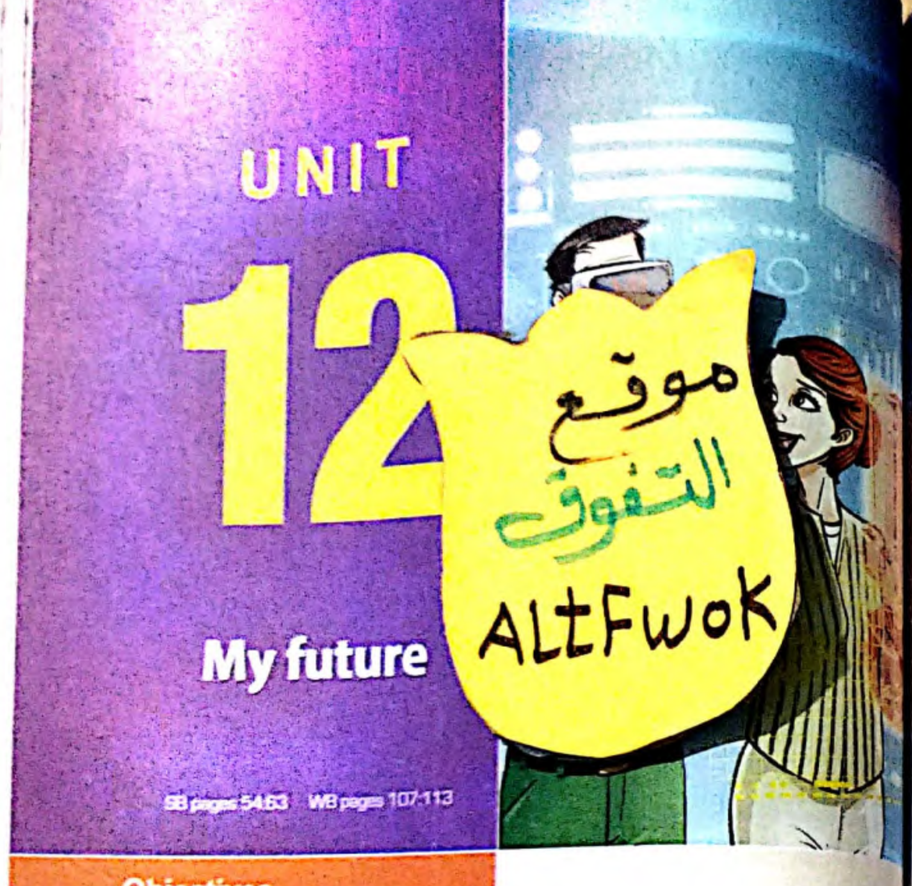
Model B

Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An .... is a sea animal which has eight legs.
   a. shark b. whale c. octopus d. jellyfish
2. I think it .... be cold tomorrow.
   a. going b. will c. going to d. is going to
3. The museum has a lot of valuable ....
   a. competitions b. numbers c. centres d. treasures
4. When you put a key in water, it ....
   a. floats b. thinks c. sinks d. thanks
5. I .... on the big wheel at the funfair yesterday.
   a. drove b. read c. climbed d. rode
6. A: What .... cook ? - B: Chicken and rice.
   a. is going b. she is going to c. is going to d. is she going to

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

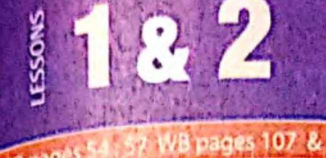


Objectives

- **Reading :** An interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; a text predicting the future
- **Writing :** A paragraph giving information about the future
- **Listening :** A description of a job; an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans
- **Speaking :** Describing and asking questions about jobs; talking about future times
- **Language :** Relative pronoun who; question tags; the first conditional
- **Life Skills :** Productivity : set clear goals

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل
- العلامة  تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

لإتقان الوحدة
- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة والملحق.
- اختبارات شهرية داخل كتاب الشرح.
- جزء للمتابعة اليومية وإتقان المفردات اللغوية (التسميع) فى نهاية الكتاب.



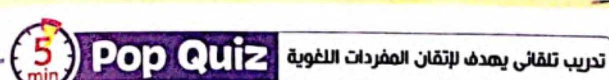


I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

accountant (n)	محاسب	research (n)	بحث
architect (n)	مهندس معمارى	scientist (n)	عالم
businessman (n)	رجل أعمال	writer (n)	كاتب
businesswoman (n)	سيدة أعمال	marine biologist (n)	عالم أحياء بحرية
computer programmer (n)	مبرمج كمبيوتر	pilot (n)	طيار
photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافى	dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان
engineer (n)	مهندس	laboratory (n)	معمل
interview (ed) (v),(n)	يجرى مقابلة - مقابلة (شخصية)	business (n)	عمل تجارى / شركة
		design (ed) (v),(n)	يصمم - تصميم

 ▪ Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.



◉ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

scientist - photographer - laboratory - dentist - pilot

1. We have a science lesson. We will go to the ....
2. I like taking photos. I want to be a/an ....
3. The .... flies planes and visits many countries.
4. My teeth hurt. I'll go to the ....

Lesson 1 SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 107

office (n)	مكتب	sum (n)	مسألة حسابية / مبلغ من المال
meeting (n)	اجتماع	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
engine (n)	محرك	quiz (n)	اختبار قصير
machine (n)	آلة	photograph (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية
African countries (n)	دول إفريقية	sick (adj)	مريض
score (d)(v)	يحرز / يسجل	name (d) (v), (n)	يسمى - اسم
wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك	voluntary work (n)	عمل تطوعى

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 108

dive (d) (v),(n)	يغطس / غطسة	diving (n)	رياضة الغطس
Atlantic Ocean	المحيط الأطلنطي	terrible (adj)	رهيب / فظيع
dream (ed) (v),(n)	يحلم / حلم	storm (n)	عاصفة
prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	يتطوع / متطوع
especially (adv)	بصورة خاصة	record (ed) (v)	يسجل
radio programme (n)	برنامج إذاعي	collect (ed) (v)	يجمع
presenter (n)	مقدم برامج	coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية

Famous cities and countries مدن وبلاد مشهورة

Neweiba (n)	مدينة نويبع	England (n)	إنجلترا
Thailand (n)	تايلاند	Australia (n)	أستراليا
France (n)	فرنسا		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
read	يقرأ	read	read

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

an accountant	a person who works with money and numbers	محاسب
a businessman / businesswoman	- a man or a woman who works in business - a person who works in an office and goes to meetings	رجل أعمال / سيدة أعمال
a dentist	a person who looks after people's teeth	طبيب أسنان
a scientist	a person who works with science	عالم
an architect	a person who designs buildings	مهندس معماري
an engineer	a person who designs or mends or works with machines, engines and buildings	مهندس

a pilot	a person who flies a plane	طيار
a marine biologist	a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it	عالم أحياء بحرية
a computer programmer	a person who writes computer programmes	مبرمج كمبيوتر
engine	a machine that makes something move	محرك
teacher	a person who teaches students	معلم
machine	an object, often electric, that can do jobs for us	آلة
meeting	a time when people who work together can talk about important things	اجتماع
photographer	a person who takes photographs	مصور فوتوغرافي
writer	a person who writes books or articles	كاتب
laboratory	a place where scientists work and do experiments	معمل
test	to check or do a scientific experiment on something	يختبر

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

design	buildings	يصمم مباني	do	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي
	machines or engines	يصمم آلات ومحركات		a test	يجري اختبار
write	books or articles	يكتب كتب أو مقالات		very well	يؤدي أداءً حسنًا
	computer programmes	يبرمج برامج الكمبيوتر		sums	يحل مسائل حسابية

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 'd like (to + inf.) = want + (to + inf.) — يريد أن - يود أن

ex.: I'd like to be an architect. = I want to be an architect.

2 work (ed) (v),(n) — يعمل - عمل (اسم لا يعد)

- work in / for — يعمل فى / لدى

ex.: I work in / for a big company.

ex.: Hend works for a hotel.

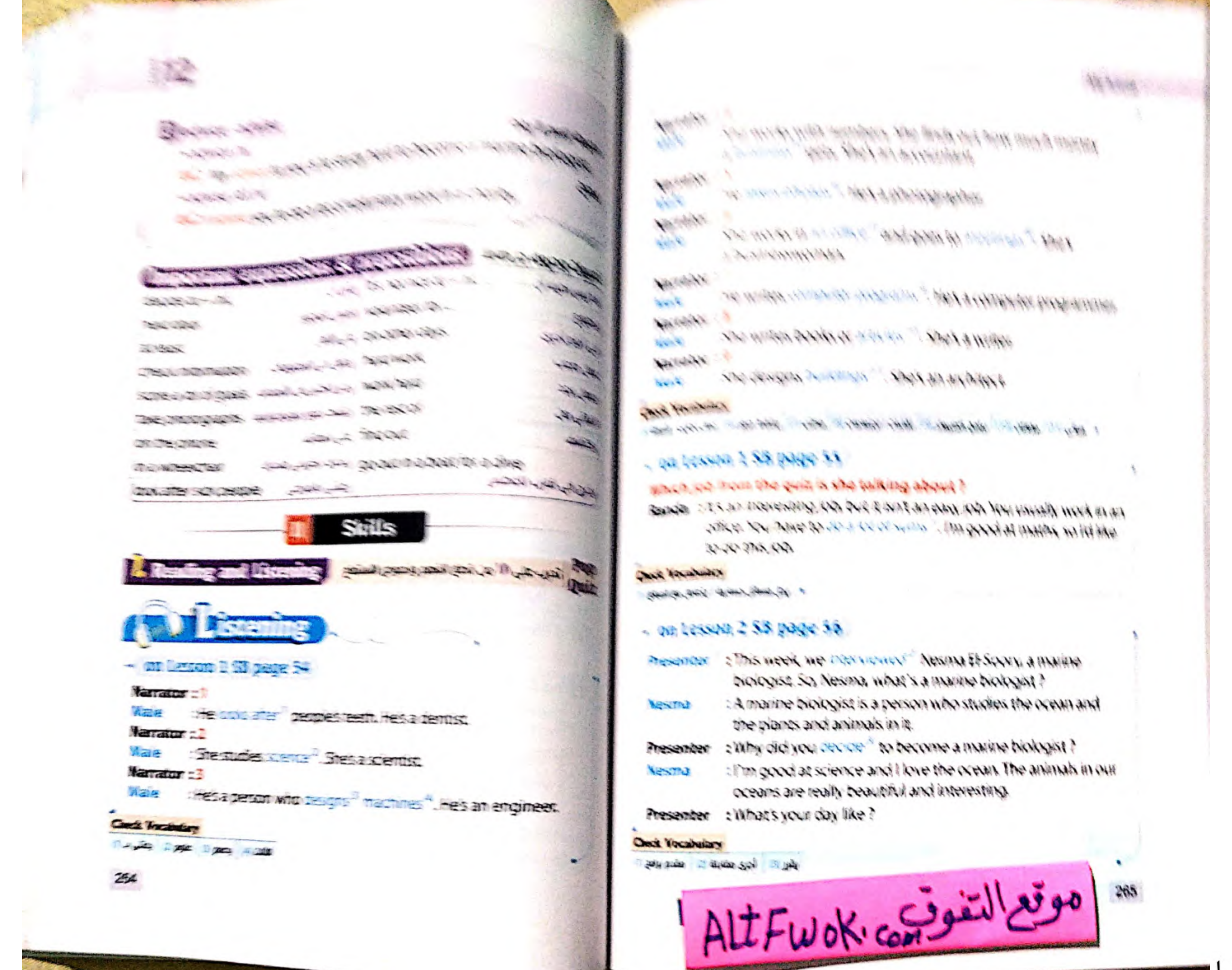
- work with — يتعامل مع

ex.: An accountant works with money and numbers.

- work on — يعمل على تحسين (مهارة - صناعة مثلًا)

ex.: You need to work on writing skills.

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



Skills

Listening

Narrator : 1

Waie : He looks after[1] people's teeth. He's a dentist.

Narrator : 2

Waie : She studies science[2]. She's a scientist.

Narrator : 3

Waie : He's a person who designs[3] machines[4]. He's an engineer.

Check Vocabulary

Check Vocabulary

on Lesson 2 SB page 56

Presenter : This week, we interviewed[1] Nesma El Sooy, a marine biologist. So, Nesma, what's a marine biologist ?

Nesma : A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.

Presenter : Why did you decide[2] to become a marine biologist ?

Nesma : I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

Presenter : What's your day like ?

Check Vocabulary

موقع التفوق AltFwoK.com

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Nesma : In my job, every day is different ! On some days, I go diving[4] around coral reefs[5]. On other days, I test[6] water from the ocean in the laboratory[7]. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results[8] of tests.

Presenter : What's the best thing about your job ?

Nesma : My research[9] helps to protect[10] the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet[11], isn't it ?

Presenter : And what's the worst thing ?

Nesma : There are bad things about every job, aren't there ? Sometimes the weather[12] is terrible[13]. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm[14] !

Check Vocabulary

(4) الغطس	(5) شعاب مرجانية	(6) يختبر	(7) معمل	(8) نتائج	(9) بحث (علمي)
(10) يحمي	(11) كوكب	(12) طقس	(13) فظيع / رهيب		(14) عاصفة

on Lesson 2 SB page 57

Listen to the rest of the interview with Nesma.

Presenter : You visit some interesting places[1], don't you ?

Nesma : Yes, I do ! At the moment[2], I'm working in the Red Sea[3], near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before that, I worked in Thailand.

Presenter : Wow ! And what different kinds of animals do you study ?

Nesma : Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like whales and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals around coral reefs.

Presenter : It sounds like a dream job[4] to be a marine biologist, but it isn't an easy job, is it ?

Nesma : No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect[5] and record[6]. It's hard work and it takes a long time. I work about ten hours a day.

Presenter : What is your advice[7] to young people who want to become a marine biologist ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) أماكن رائعة	(2) في هذه اللحظة	(3) البحر الأحمر	(4) الوظيفة التي يحلم بها	(5) يجمع	(6) يسجل	(7) نصيحة

Nesma : Work hard at school, especially in science. You have to love science to be a marine biologist ! And find out everything you can about the job. You can even volunteer[8] for dives.

Presenter : That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.

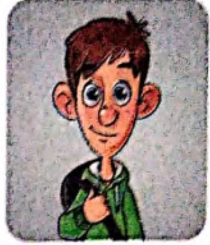
Nesma : You're welcome[9].

Check Vocabulary

(8) يتطوع	(9) على الرحب والسعة

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 55



My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. An engineer[1] is a person who designs machines and engines[2]. My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day ! My aunt is a businesswoman. That's an interesting job, too. A businesswoman[3] and a businessman[4] are people who work in an office[5] and go to meetings[6].

Amir

Check Vocabulary

(1) مهندس	(2) محركات	(3) سيدة أعمال	(4) رجل أعمال	(5) مكتب	(6) إجتماعات / مقابلات

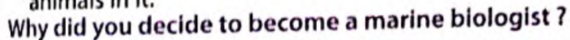
on Lesson 2 SB page 56

My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist[1].

What's a marine biologist ?

1. A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.



Why did you decide to become a marine biologist ?

2. I'm good at[2] science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عالم أحياء بحرية	(2) جيد في



ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

What's your day like ?

3. In my job, every day is different ! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs. On other days, I test[3] water from the ocean in the laboratory. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results[4] of tests.

What's the best thing about your job ?

4. My research[5] helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it ?

(2) يختبر
(4) نتائج
(5) بحث علمي
(6) عاصفة

And what's the worst thing ?

5. There are bad things about every job, aren't there ? Sometimes the weather is terrible. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm[6] !

Answer the following questions :

- Extracting information استخراج معلومات

Learn 1. What does the marine biologist do ?

- *She studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.*

Practice 2. What's the best thing about the job of the marine biologist ?

- ....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Amr's uncle is a famous .... He designs new buildings.
   a. writer b. architect
   c. dentist d. computer programmer
2. My uncle Ali is a/an .... He has many projects and a big company.
   a. photographer b. engineer c. businessman d. writer
3. Naguib Mahfouz is a famous .... He wrote many novels.
   a. writer b. businessman c. programmer d. scientist
4. SB An engineer is the person who .... machines and engines.
   a. plays b. acts c. designs d. cooks
5. WB The scientists did lots of tests in the ....
   a. machines b. laboratory c. engine d. library

SB, WB and previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. I like computer so much. I hope to work as a/an .... in the future. *(Qaha - Qalubiya 2022)*
   a. actor b. dentist
   c. computer programmer d. doctor
7. I like the coral .... in the Red Sea. *(West El Mahalla - Gharbia 2022)*
   a. fish b. plastic c. lines d. reefs
8. A famous scientist .... to teach us about our planet. *(Biyala - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
   a. kept b. volunteered c. spent d. tested

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Heba works in a bank. She is a/an ....
   a. actor b. accountant c. teacher d. nurse
10. Ayman's hobby is taking photos. He wants to be a/an ....
    a. dentist b. businessman c. engineer d. photographer
11. The car was out of petrol so, the .... stopped working.
    a. design b. quiz c. plan d. engine

Definitions تعريفات

12. A/An .... is a person who studies or works with science.
    a. architect b. engineer c. dentist d. scientist
13. The person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it is called ....
    a. an engineer b. a marine biologist
    c. a dentist d. a doctor

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. It's really important to .... after our planet.
    a. take b. look c. make d. do
15. I .... him to be careful with the knife.
    a. revised b. advised c. walked d. viewed

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Describing and asking questions about jobs : وصف وتوجيه أسئلة عن الوظائف

Questions	Answers
• Who is an architect ? من هو المهندس المعماري ؟	- An architect is a person who designs buildings. المهندس المعماري هو شخص يقوم بتصميم المباني.

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

• Who is a writer ? من هو الكاتب ؟	- A writer is a person who writes books or articles. الكاتب هو شخص يكتب الكتب أو المقالات.
• Who is a marine biologist ? من هو عالم الأحياء المائية ؟	- A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it. عالم الأحياء المائية هو شخص يدرس المحيط والنباتات والحيوانات التى توجد به.
• Who is a dentist ? من هو طبيب الأسنان ؟	- A dentist is a person who looks after people's teeth. طبيب الأسنان هو شخص يقوم بالاعتناء بأسنان المرضى.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

فى هذا الجزء تتمكن من الكتابة عن الوظيفة التى تحلم بها حوالى ٧ جمل

Your dream job
الوظيفة التى تحلم بها

1. My dream job is to be a marine biologist.
   ١. الوظيفة التى احلم بها هى أن أكون عالم أحياء مائية
2. I want to study the ocean, the plants and animals in it.
   ٢. اريد أن ادرس المحيط والنباتات والحيوانات الموجودة به
3. I'm good at science and I love the ocean. ٣. أنا جيد فى العلوم وأحب المحيط
4. I will go diving around coral reefs. ٤. سوف أذهب للغوص حول الشعاب المرجانية
5. My research will help to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.
   ٥. سيساعد بحثى فى حماية النباتات والحيوانات التى فى المحيط
6. I will test water from the ocean in the laboratory.
   ٦. سأقوم باختبار مياه من المحيط فى المعمل التى فى المحيط
7. I will do my best to look after our planet. ٧. سأفعل ما بوسعى لاعتنى بكوكبنا

III Language



1 The Relative pronoun (who)

We can join two sentences about people using the relative pronoun (who) :
يمكننا ربط جملتين فاعلهما عاقل باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who).

ex. - A businesswoman is a woman. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a woman who works in an office.

2 Question Tag السؤال المذيل

We use question tags to check information (so we expect people to agree).
نستخدم الأسئلة المذيلة للتحقق من معلومات (لذلك نتوقع ان يوافق الشخص على السؤال).

The voice goes down at the end of the question tag.
ينخفض الصوت فى نهاية السؤال المذيل.

يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتى :

جملة خبرية , فعل مساعد + ضمير فاعل ?

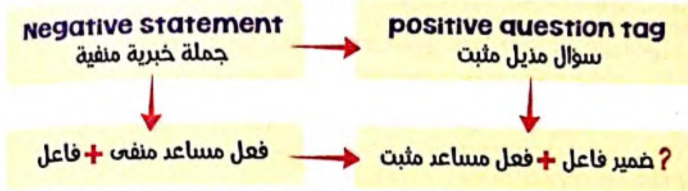
① عند وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالاتى :

ex.



positive statement جملة خبرية مثبتة	→	Negative question tag سؤال مذيل منفى
فعل مساعد مثبت + فاعل	→	فعل مساعد منفى + ضمير فاعل ?

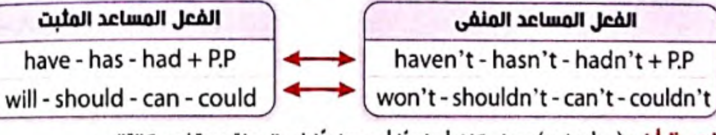
- She **is** wearing glasses, **isn't** she ?
- Ashraf **should** study hard, **shouldn't** he ?



Negative statement جملة خبرية منفية	→	positive question tag سؤال مذيل مثبت
فعل مساعد منفى + فاعل	→	فعل مساعد مثبت + ضمير فاعل ?

- Your brother **can't** play the guitar, **can** he ?
- Maha **won't (will not)** travel to England, **will** she ?

- اى انه يتم تغيير حالة الفعل المساعد من الإثبات إلى النفى أو من النفى إلى الإثبات كالاتى :



الفعل المساعد المثبت		الفعل المساعد المنفى
have - has - had + P.P	↔	haven't - hasn't - hadn't + P.P
will - should - can - could	↔	won't - shouldn't - can't - couldn't

لاحظ أن : (v. to be) سواء كان أساسيًا أو مساعدًا فى الجملة يستخدم كالتالى :

is - are - was - were → isn't - aren't / wasn't - weren't

ex. - It isn't hot today, is it ?
- There were a lot of people at the meeting, weren't there ?

موقع التفوق AltFwoK.com
CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

5 عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتى :

السؤال المذيل	الجملة الخبرية
, don't	فعل بدون إضافات (مضارع بسيط)
, doesn't	فعل مضاف إليه ies/es/s (مضارع بسيط)
, didn't	فعل فى التصريف الثانى (ماضى بسيط)

ملحوظة : صيغة الفعل المساعد المنفى فى السؤال المذيل يجب أن تكون مختصرة (isn't - don't).

ex. - You **like** shopping, **don't** you ?
- Adel **speaks** English well, **doesn't** he ?
- She **used** the computer, **didn't** she ?

6 لاحظ إذا كان (v. to have) فعل أساسى ينفى كالتالى :

have → don't   has → doesn't   had → didn't

ex. - Nabil has a car, doesn't he?
- We have a new flat, don't we?

7 لاحظ أنه إذا وجدت الكلمات التالية يكون السؤال المذيل مثبت لأنها تدل على النفى :

hardly	never	scarcely	seldom	few	little
بالكاد	أبداً	نادراً	نادراً	قليل	ضئيل

ex. We can **hardly** go inside, **can** we ?

8 تحول (I am) إلى (aren't I ?) أما (I am not) إلى (am I?).

ex. - **I am** tall , **aren't I** ?   - **I am not** short, **am I** ?

9 عند الإجابة على السؤال المذيل :

- إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة تكون الإجابة بـ (Yes).

ex. - Nada is late, isn't she ? - **Yes**, she is.

- إذا كانت الجملة منفية تكون الإجابة بـ (No).

ex. - They aren't at home, are they ? - **No**, they aren't.

10 تعلو نبرة صوت المتحدث فى نهاية السؤال المذيل :

- عند السؤال عن معلومة :

ex. - Omar doesn't play tennis, does he ?

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He went to school early, ... he ?
   a. did   b. didn't   c. had   d. hadn't
2. Salma is the woman .... stole my wallet.
   a. which   b. when   c. who   d. where
3. Mona has got a car, ... she ?
   a. hasn't   b. doesn't   c. can't   d. won't

No.	Answer + Explanation	
1	b	[illegible]
2	c	(who) [illegible]
3	a	(hasn't) [illegible] (has got) [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams   تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB A person .... takes photographs is called a photographer.
   a. where   b. which   c. who   d. when
2. WB She .... French, doesn't she ?
   a. speaks   b. never speaks   c. doesn't speak   d. isn't speaking
3. WB Nasser will write to me when he gets there, ... he ?
   a. will   b. will not   c. isn't   d. won't
4. SB An architect is a person .... designs buildings.
   a. who   b. which   c. when   d. where
5. WB You're Ali's cousin, ... ?
   a. isn't he   b. aren't we   c. don't you   d. aren't you

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

6. WB Sara wants to be a marine biologist, ... ?
   a. doesn't she b. does she c. is she d. isn't she
7. A businessman is a man .... works in an office and goes to meetings. *([illegible] - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
   a. whose b. which c. when d. who
8. You like your job, ... you ? *(Kom ombo - Aswan 2022)*
   a. doesn't b. do c. don't d. didn't
9. She made a very nice cake, ... she ? *(El Saff - Giza 2022)*
   a. isn't b. wasn't c. didn't d. doesn't

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. You can find vitamins in many kinds of food, ... ?
    a. aren't you b. can't you c. can you d. do you
11. Our parents are very helpful, ... ?
    a. are they b. they are c. they aren't d. aren't they
12. I'm your friend, ... I ?
    a. are b. am not c. aren't d. am

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB & Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB You did your homework last night, **don't** you ? (...........)
2. SB You want to be a nurse, **doesn't** you ? (...........)
3. SB You **don't** forget to phone me, will you ? (...........)
4. WB Can you name a person **whose** is taller than you ? (...........)
5. It isn't hot today, **doesn't** it ? *(Tema - Sohag 2022)* (...........)
6. They bought a new car, **did** they ? *(Wasat Alexandria - Alexandria 2022)* (...........)
7. This bag is heavy, **is** it ? *(Hadayek El Kobba - Cairo 2022)* (...........)
8. Toka likes pop music, **does** she ? *(Al Waili - Cairo 2022)* (...........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. A nurse is a person **when** looks after sick people. (...........)
10. Hady is the footballer **this** scores many goals. (...........)

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. The text is about a/an ....
   a. scientist b. animal c. marine biologist d. crab
2. A marine biologist studies ....
   a. the ocean b. fruits c. vegetables d. salt
3. The .... in the oceans are beautiful.
   a. snakes b. animals c. sailors d. engineers
4. There are animals and plants in the ....
   a. park b. garden c. ocean d. lake

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Samar and Nada are talking about their future job.

Samar : How are you ?
Nada : (1) .... Why don't we talk about our future job ?
Samar : (2) ....
Nada : (3) .... ?
Samar : My favourite subjects are English, Math and Science. What about you ?
Nada : My favourite subjects are Science and English.
Samar : (4) .... ?
Nada : I want to be a teacher. And you ?
Samar : (5) ....
Nada : We all work to achieve our dreams.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It's important for a marine biologist to .... water from the ocean.
   a. test b. collect c. damage d. send
2. WB Mohammed Salah is a footballer who .... a lot of goals.
   a. teaches b. scores c. meets d. takes
3. He gave me some .... about how to be a clever student.
   a. advice b. robots c. oceans d. corals
4. That photo was taken by a clever ....
   a. programmer b. researcher c. photographer d. biologist

CamScanner ـحة ضوئيا بـ

5. .... work with doctors to take care of sick people.
   a. Patients b. Nurses c. Architects d. Writers
6. WB I didn't like this book. I thought it was ....
   a. beautiful b. terrible c. amazing d. interesting
7. A : What about the .... of the tests ?
   B : You've succeeded.
   a. causes b. reasons c. jobs d. results
8. Habiba is a girl .... always gets high marks. *(East - Zagazig - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. who b. where c. when d. whose
9. He visits his uncle every Friday, ... ?
   a. isn't he b. doesn't he c. does he d. is he
10. Hamza is a great teacher, ... ? *(Kafr Saad - Damietta 2022)*
   a. he isn't b. he is c. is he d. isn't he

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. This is the engineer <u>whose</u> designed this machine. *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)* (........)
2. WB Girls are quieter than boys, <u>isn't she</u> ? *(South Suez - Suez 2022)* (........)
3. She was here yesterday, <u>isn't</u> she ? (........)
4. Samy and Kamel speak English very well, <u>do</u> they ? (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"My dream job" *(Ismailia 2022)*

....
....
....

موقع التفوق AltFwok

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 58 - 60 WB pages 109 & 110

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

apartment (n)	شقة	colourful jewellery (n)	مجوهرات ملونة
university (n)	جامعة	grandparents (n)	أجداد
workshop (n)	ورشة	skill (n)	مهارة
pottery (n)	الأواني الفخارية	education (n)	تعليم
adult (n)	بالغ / راشد	earn (ed) (v)	يكسب / يربح


تنويه ▪ Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

apartment - jewellery - education - University - earn

1. Hala's favourite piece of .... is her diamond ring.
2. Cairo .... is a very old one.
3. You should work hard to .... much money.
4. We live in a/an .... in New Cairo.

Lesson 3
SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 109

enough (adj)	كافٍ	hope (d) (v)	يتمنى
life events	أحداث حياتية	countryside (n)	الريف
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	carry (ied) (v)	يحمل
flying (n)	الطيران	player (n)	لاعب
blog (n)	مدونة	probable (adj)	محتمل

Lesson 4
SB page 60 WB page 110

African villages	قرى أفريقية	necklace (n)	عقد / قلادة
local people	المحليون	beliefs (n)	معتقدات
businesses (n)	أعمال تجارية	fully (adv)	تماما / كليًا
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي	continue (d) (v)	يستمر

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
culture (n)	ثقافة	Ghana (n)	دولة غانا
change (d) (v), (n)	يغير / تغيير	traditional jobs	وظائف تقليدية
ring (n)	خاتم	modern offices	مكاتب حديثة
clay (n)	صلصال / طين الفخار	repair (ed) (v)	يصلح
extra (adj)	زائد / إضافي	tradition (n)	عرف / عادة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
catch	يلحق بـ	caught	caught
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
local	محلى	international	دولى

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

Word	Definition	Meaning
earn	get money from a job by working	يربح - يكسب
jewellery	• things such as rings and necklaces that you wear • necklaces, rings, earrings etc. often made of silver or gold	مجوهرات
adult	a fully grown person	بالغ / راشد
workshop	• a place where people work to create things • a room or a small building where people make or repair things	ورشة
skill	an ability to do something well	مهارة
culture	the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people	ثقافة
pottery	pots, dishes, etc. made from clay	الأوانى الفخارية
apartment	a home that is a number of rooms in a building	شقة
basket	something you can use to carry or hold things	سلة
colourful	with many different colours	ملون
education	the knowledge you get from studying something	تعليم
get married	become husband and wife	يتزوج
Ghana	a country in West Africa	دولة غانا

Word	Definition	Meaning
Kenya	a country in East Africa	دولة كينيا
university	a place where you study after you leave school, for a degree	جامعة

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	make	basket	يصنع سلة
get	married	يتزوج	make	pottery	يصنع أوانى فخارية
get	money	يحصل على مال	make	jewellery	يصنع مجوهرات
do	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	make	things	يصنع أشياء

Many verbs become adjectives by adding the suffix (-ful).

بعض الأفعال تصبح صفات عند إضافة الناهية (-ful) لها.

Verb الفعل		Adjective الصفة	
colour	يلون	colourful	ملون
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد
hope	يأمل / يتمنى	hopeful	متفائل

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 earn money = make money يكسب مال

ex.: - My uncle works hard to earn money.

2 businesses = companies أعمال تجارية / شركات

ex.: - Today some businesses use social media to sell their products.

3 pass = succeed in

• pass an exam يجتاز الامتحان

ex.: - Ashraf passed his exams.

• succeed in an exam ينجح فى امتحان

ex.: - Ashraf succeeded in his exams.

4 maths + singular verb فعل مفرد مادة الرياضيات

لاحظ أن مادة الرياضيات تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد أى يأتى بعدها فعل مفرد.

ex.: - Maths is my favourite subject.

موقع التفوق AltFwoK.com

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have children	لديه أطفال	be able to + inf.	قادر على
plans for future	خطط للمستقبل	a way for	طريقة لـ ...
all over the country	في جميع أنحاء البلد	down the road	أسفل الطريق
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	for many years	لعدة سنوات
learn to drive	يتعلم كيف يقود	take the rubbish from	يخرج القمامة من
travel around the world	يسافر حول العالم	(be) better for	أفضل لـ
come back	يعود	I'd love to	أود أن
repair things	يصلح الأشياء	use modern technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة

II Skills

2. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Munir's plans for the future

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education[1] is very important. I hope[2] that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject[3].

I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world[4]. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!

Check Vocabulary

(1) التعليم
(2) يتمنى
(3) مادة دراسية
(4) يسافر حول العالم

Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:

- Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات

Learn 1. Munir thinks that .... is very important.
a. education b. pollution c. freedom d. technology

Practise 2. If Munir has enough money, he'll buy a/an ....
a. car b. villa c. shop d. apartment

موقع التفوق AltFwoK.com

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Traditional jobs in Africa

Today, many people in Africa work in modern offices[1], but traditional jobs[2] and skills[3] are still important.



A

1. People started making pottery[4] thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops or their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults[5] can learn this skill.



B

2. It is traditional to make jewellery[6] in Kenya. You can see the colourful[7] jewellery in markets[8] all over the country. Today, some local businesses[9] also use social media[10] and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues[11] an old tradition[12] and it helps local people to earn money[13].



C

3. It is an important part of Africa's culture[14] to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets[15]. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.



D

Check Vocabulary

(1) مكاتب حديثة	(2) وظائف تقليدية	(3) مهارات	(4) الأوانى الفخارية	(5) البالغين
(6) مجوهرات / حلى	(7) ملون	(8) أسواق	(9) أعمال تجارية محلية	(10) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
(11) يستمر	(12) تقليد / عادة قديمة	(13) يكسب مال	(14) ثقافة أفريقيا	(15) سلال

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

Listening

- Lesson 3 SB page 58

Rami and Amira are talking about their plans for the future.

Presenter : Rami, what do you want to do when you're older ?

Rami : I really want to be an architect[1]. I must go to university[2] for that so I need to work hard. I won't pass my exams[3] if I don't work hard ! When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to get a job[4] in another country, like South Africa. But after a few years, I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like to get married[5] one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo. I prefer[6] the countryside[7]!

Presenter : Amira, what about you ?

Amira : I want to go to university, so I hope I'll pass my exams! If I go to university, I'll study science. I'd love to be a scientist[8]! It's a really interesting job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy an apartment[9]. I want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I'd like to get married and have children.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مهندس معماري	(2) جامعة	(3) أنجح في امتحاناتي	(4) يحصل على وظيفة	(5) أتزوج
(6) يفضل	(7) الريف	(8) عالم	(9) شقة سكنية	

Video script on Lesson 4 SB page 60

What job will you do when you are older ? Will you be an engineer[1], who designs exciting new things ? Will you be a doctor, who looks after sick people ? Or will you be an architect[2], who designs new buildings and even cities ? These will all be important jobs in the future. But did you know that the Ancient Egyptians did many of these jobs too ? They helped to form the world we know today. Engineers in ancient Egypt designed and built a lot of things, like boats.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مهندس	(2) مهندس معماري

These boats used the wind to help them travel to other parts of the world.

The Ancient Egyptians also learned how to move water from one place to the next. This helped farmers who worked far from the Nile. We use similar ideas[3] to help farmers today.

A doctor was a very important person in Ancient Egypt. The doctor used a lot of different tools. We can see some of them in this picture. The Ancient Egyptians also had dentists[4].

In the tenth century, an Egyptian doctor invented the first kind of syringe[5]. Today, doctors and scientists use syringes every day.

Imhotep was the world's very first architect. He designed a new way of building pyramids using stone. He built the Pyramid at Saqqara using this method[6]. He also used it to build the Great Pyramid at Giza. Imhotep also used stone to build columns[7]. These columns made buildings very strong. Before this, the Ancient Egyptians used mud[8] and plants to build columns. These columns sometimes fell down. But every job can be important. If you do your job well, you can help to make a better world.

Check Vocabulary

(3) أفكار متشابهة	(4) أطباء أسنان	(5) حقنة	(6) طريقة / وسيلة	(7) أعمدة	(8) طين

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Key vocabulary

1. Making jewellery helps some people in Kenya to .... money.
   a. win b. earn c. gain d. lose
2. I went to the .... to ask the mechanic for help.
   a. clinic b. gallery c. exhibition d. workshop
3. .... is very important for students' life to get good jobs.
   a. Pollution b. Education c. Engineering d. Rubbish
4. I'll join the .... after I finish secondary school.
   a. kindergarten b. primary school
   c. preparatory school d. university

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. (WB) If I have enough money, I'll buy a/an .... to live in.
   a. school b. library c. apartment d. car
   (East Bana - Gharbia 2022)

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

6. You need a lot of .... to make a beautiful basket.
a. dishes b. skills c. shops d. plates
7. If I .... my exams, I'll go to university.
a. fail b. move c. pass d. study

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. I'll get married when I .... a good job.
a. give b. make c. get d. bring
9. "International" is the opposite of " .... ".
a. global b. local c. manual d. African
10. .... jewellery is a traditional craft in Kenya.
a. Getting b. Making c. Giving d. Doing

Definitions تعريفات

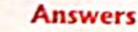
11. A .... is a room or small building where people make or repair things.
a. mosque b. workshop c. school d. café
12. .... means the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people.
a. Education b. Ability c. Culture d. Business
13. " .... " is something you can use to carry or hold things.
a. Basket b. Pottery c. Culture d. Skill

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. If you don't run, you won't .... the bus.
a. earn b. catch c. learn d. sell
15. I'll get married and .... two children.
a. get b. have c. earn d. take

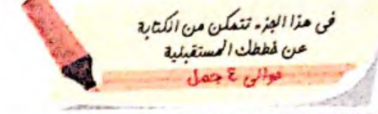
2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Using critical thinking to discuss traditional jobs :
استخدام التفكير النقدى لمناقشة الحِرَف التقليدية.



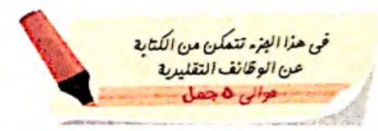

Questions	Answers
• Why is it important to keep traditional jobs ? - لماذا من المهم أن تستمر الحرف التقليدية ؟	- I think because they continue an old tradition and help local people to earn money. أعتقد لأنها استمرار لعادة أو تقليد قديم وتساعد السكان المحليين فى كسب النقود.
• How can people use modern technology to help them ? - كيف يمكن للناس استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى مساعدتهم ؟	- I think some local businesses use social media and the internet to sell their products "jewellery". أعتقد أن بعض الأعمال التجارية المحلية تستخدم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى والانترنت فى بيع منتجاتهم (المجوهرات)

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة



Your plans for the future
خططك المستقبلية

1. I hope that I will pass my exams. ١. أتمنى أن أجتاز اختباراتى.
2. I will study maths at university. ٢. سوف أدرس الرياضيات فى الجامعة.
3. I am going to learn how to drive. ٣. سوف أتعلم كيف أقود.
4. I will buy an apartment near the Red Sea. ٤. سوف أشترى شقة بالقرب من البحر الأحمر.



Traditional jobs
وظائف تقليدية

1. In Egypt, people make pottery in their workshops or their own homes.
١. فى مصر يصنع الناس أوانى فخارية فى ورشهم أو فى منازلهم.
2. There are many markets in the villages of Fayoum.
٢. يوجد العديد من الأسواق فى قرى الفيوم.
3. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.
٣. يمكنك شراء سلال ملونة من غانا من بلدان فى جميع أنحاء العالم.
4. Women from small villages make baskets to earn money.
٤. تصنع النساء بالقرى الصغيرة السلال لكسب النقود.
5. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over Kenya.
٥. يمكنك أن ترى المجوهرات الملونة بالأسواق فى جميع أنحاء كينيا.

AltFwoK.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

III Language

The first conditional clause with "If" الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ (If)

Formation التكوين

If + present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf. (مصدر)

ex. If Ali studies hard, he will pass his test.

عندما تأتى (if) فى منتصف الجملة لا نضع (,) بين الجملتين :

Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / won't + inf. (مصدر) if present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل"

Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر) + if + present Simple Tense... ? (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - Will you stay inside if it's hot tomorrow ?

- Yes, I will. - No, I will not (won't).

B Wh-question : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

Question word (كلمة استفهام) + will + subj. (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر) + if + present Simple Tense ? (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - What will you do if it is windy tomorrow ?

- We won't go to the beach.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about what will probably happen if/when another action takes place. We use if or when with the present simple, followed by (will) with a verb without (to).

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ (If) للحديث عن احتمال حدوث شىء فى المستقبل إذا تحقق شرط حدوثه. وتستخدم when / if مع المضارع البسيط متبوعًا بـ (will) والفعل بدون (to)

ex. - If Ahmed comes early, he will meet his uncle.
- If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you .... inside, you won't get wet.
 a. staying b. stays c. stay d. stayed
2. If it is sunny, we will .... to the beach.
 a. goes b. going c. went d. go
3. If you .... hard, you will pass all your exams.
 a. studying b. study c. studies d. studied
4. If she gets the job, she will .... her friends to dinner.
 a. invite b. invites c. inviting d. invited

No.		Answer + Explanation شرح الإجابة
1	c	[illegible] (stay) [illegible]
2	d	[illegible] (will) [illegible] (go) [illegible]
3	b	[illegible] (study) [illegible]
4	a	[illegible] (will) [illegible] (invite) [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB If you go to Fayoum, you will .... many people making pottery.
 a. saw b. see c. seen d. seeing

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2. WB If we .... the rubbish from all the oceans, they will be better for sea life.
   a. take b. 'll take c. taking d. took
3. SB If I .... enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea.
   a. had b. hadn't c. have d. haven't
4. WB .... we water the tree every day, it will give us more fruit.
   a. So b. While c. Although d. If
5. If Lara .... in the city, she will use the bus. *(Edko - Beheira 2022)*
   a. stays b. stay c. staying d. stayed
6. If we are noisy in class, our teacher .... us. *(Shubra - Cairo 2022)*
   a. punishes b. will punish c. punished d. are punished
7. If I .... up early, I'll visit my grandfather. *(Tanta - Gharbia 2022)*
   a. get b. got c. will get d. getting

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. If I visit my grandparents, I .... take them some sweets.
   a. wouldn't b. am c. will d. would
9. If she drops the glass of milk on the floor, her mom will .... angry.
   a. be b. is c. being d. been
10. If I get married, I'll .... a lot of children.
   a. had b. have c. has d. having
11. A: How .... when you pass your exams ? B: I will feel happy.
   a. did you feel b. will you feel
   c. have you feel d. would you feel

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB Where will you **lived** if you get a good job ? (........)
2. WB If I work near a beach, I will **swam** every day in summer. (........)
3. SB If I go to the shops, I'll **buys** a new game. (........)
4. SB If I **ate** too many sweets, I'll feel sick. *(Shorouk - Cairo 2022)* (........)
5. WB You **speak** better English if you practise every day. *(El Saf - Giza 2022)* (........)
6. If I visit Aswan, I **send** you a picture. *(Abo Hummus - Beheira 2022)* (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Peter will **gets** wet if he forgets the umbrella. (........)
8. If my dad gets home early, I'll **being** happy. (........)
9. If Ali passes his exams, he **would** go to university. (........)
10. If you **didn't** put sugar in your coffee, it won't taste nice. (........)

General Exercises  LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What is the important part of Africa's culture ? - Making ....
   a. clothes b. gloves c. baskets d. pots
2. Making baskets is a way to .... money.
   a. earn b. lose c. waste d. spend
3. What is the African country mentioned in the passage ? ....
   a. Somalia b. Ghana c. Egypt d. South Africa
4. There are a lot of .... who make and sell baskets in Ghana.
   a. boys b. women c. men d. children

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother .... married and had 3 children. *(El Ayyat - Giza 2022)*
   a. made b. got c. took d. did
2. I learned how to .... before buying my car.
   a. ride b. cycle c. drive d. dive
3. I'd like to .... my exams to go to the university.
   a. get b. pass c. succeed d. cross
4. The opposite of "traditional" is .... *(West Mahalla - Gharbia 2022)*
   a. modern b. enough c. local d. old
5. WB My cousin is a/an .... now. She was 18 last week.
   a. baby b. adult c. child d. kid
6. Noha is good at .... things and reuse them in her house.
   a. repairing b. getting c. revising d. losing
7. Her favourite piece of .... is her diamond ring.
   a. jewellery b. culture c. furniture d. paper

8. If I go to the university, I .... geography.
a. would study b. study c. am studying d. 'll study

9. What will you take with you if you .... your grandfather ?
a. visit b. 'll visit c. visited d. visits

10. I won't buy a car if I .... enough money.
a. don't have b. have
c. didn't have d. doesn't have

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Would you invite me if you have a party ? (..........)
2. WB Who do you see if you go out tonight ? (..........)
3. SB If I eat too many sweets, I'm be fat. (..........)
4. Will you go to the cinema if it will be a holiday ? (East - Cairo - Cairo 2022) (..........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your plan for the future"



LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 61 & 62, WB pages 111 & 112



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية	app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الحاسوب
injury (n)	إصابة	cure (n)	علاج / دواء
electric car (n)	سيارة كهربائية	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
countryside (n)	الريف	illness (n)	مرض
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	health (n)	صحة


تنويه • Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

health - cure - countryside - apps - injury

1. He is unable to play because of his ....
2. Modern phones and tablets have many ....
3. Scientists do their best to find .... for illnesses.
4. Living in the .... is quieter than living in the city.

Lesson 5 SB page 61 WB page 111

language (n)	لغة	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
writing (n)	كتابة	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
spelling (n)	الهجاء	area (n)	منطقة

Lesson 6 SB page 62 WB page 112

disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي	hopeful (adj)	متفائل
completely (adv)	بشكل كامل	description (n)	وصف
headlines	عناوين رئيسية	exciting (adj)	مثير / شيق
predictions (n)	تنبؤات	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

engineering (n) الهندسة	introduce (d) (v) يقدم
personal information (n) معلومات شخصية	

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
make	يصنع	made	made
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

تنويه: هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

app	• something that does a particular job on your phone or computer • something on your phone that helps you to use maps, book tickets, etc.	تطبيق على الهاتف / الكمبيوتر
cure	a treatment that can make an illness better	علاج
illness	being ill	مرض
countryside	the area that is outside a town	الريف

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

play	the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار	finish	my book	أنهى قراءة كتابى
	the piano	يعزف على البيانو			
design	an app = application	يصمم تطبيق للهاتف	learn	a new language	يتعلم لغة جديدة
	a video game	يصمم لعبة		new things	يتعلم أشياء جديدة
finish	my project	أنهى مشروعى	give	some advice	يعطى بعض النصائح
	school	ينهى الدراسة		information about	يعطى معلومات عن
			have get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

learn to dive	يتعلم أن يغطس	spend time with ...	يقضى وقتًا مع ...
learn to drive	يتعلم أن يقود (سيارة)	live longer	يعيش لوقتًا أطول
practise reading	يتدرب على القراءة	follow the advice	يتبع النصيحة
revise for the test	يراجع للامتحان	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
book tickets	يحجز تذاكر	introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكار جديدة
start university	يبدأ دراسة فى الجامعة	end with	ينتهى بـ

find cures for illnesses يجد علاجات للأمراض	What about later on ? وماذا عن بعد ذلك / فيما بعد ؟
check for any mistakes يتحقق من أى أخطاء	do first يقوم بعمل شئ أولًا
in ten years' time فى غضون / خلال عشر سنوات	

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ١٨ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz



• on Lesson 5 SB page 61

Presenter : What are your plans[1] for the future, Hussein ?

Hussein : I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar[2]. And before I leave school[3], I want to design a video game[4]!

Presenter : Wow! And what about later on ? What will your life be like in ten years' time ?

Hussein : In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

Presenter : Thank you, Hussein.

Presenter : Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future ?

Khadeeja : Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there are lots of other things I want to do first.

Presenter : Tell me about them.

Khadeeja : Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new language[5]. I also want to learn to drive.

Presenter : And what will your life be like in 10 years' time ?

Khadeeja : That's a long way into the future, isn't it ? Well, in 10 years' time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

Presenter : Thanks, Khadeeja.

Check Vocabulary

(1) خطط | (2) يعزف على الجيتار | (3) ينهى الدراسة فى المدرسة | (4) يصمم لعبة فيديو | (5) لغة

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

- on Lesson 5 WB page 111

Dina : I want to be a doctor but I need a lot of skills[1] to do that.
Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor so he can give me some advice[2].
Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor. Before I leave school, I'm going to do voluntary work[3] at a children's hospital[4].
In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university.
Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!

Check Vocabulary

(1) مهارات (2) نصيحة (3) عمل تطوعي (4) مستشفى أطفال

Reading

- on Lesson 6 SB page 62

My predictions[1] for the future
By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes[2] in our lives. Technology[3] will make our lives easier[4] and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps[5] for everything.

Scientists will find new cures[6] for illnesses[7] so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear[8] completely[9]. All our cars will be electric[10]. If this happens, it will be much better for the air[11] in our cities, won't it ? I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people. Robots[12] will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تنبؤات
(2) تغيرات
(3) تكنولوجيا
(4) تجعل حياتنا أسهل
(5) تطبيقات
(6) علاجات
(7) أمراض
(8) تختفي
(9) تمامًا
(10) كهربائي
(11) هواء
(12) الإنسان الآلي

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill — مهارة التفكير النقدي

Learn 1. Why do you think technology will make our lives easier ?
- I think because our phones will be even more important and we will have apps for everything.

Practise 2. Do you think robots will replace teachers ? Why/Why not ?
- ....

AltFwoK.com موقع التفوق

- on Lesson 6 WB page 112

1. Today, I am going to write about life in the future. I think life in the next 100 years will be very different. Here are some reasons[1] why.
2. First, I think there will be a lot more people living in Egypt. I think our cities will be much bigger. They will also be better[2]. We will have clean, quiet electric cars[3].
3. Second, we are all going to be healthier. People will not work long hours so they will have more time to do sports[4] and stay healthy[5].
4. In conclusion[6], I think the future will be very different, but I am hopeful[7] that life will be better for my children and my grandchildren.

Check Vocabulary

(1) أسباب (2) أفضل (3) سيارات كهربائية (4) يمارس رياضة (5) يبقى بصحة جيدة (6) في الخاتمة (7) متفائل

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Key vocabulary

1. Apps are examples of new ....
   a. technology b. engineering c. environment d. health
2. I saw an accident and the old man had a /an ....
   a. design b. injury c. education d. skill
3. I think some .... will disappear completely in the future.
   a. headlines b. illnesses c. changes d. numbers

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. SB I think there will be a lot of .... changes in the future.
   a. lazy b. exciting c. traditional d. disappearing
5. WB If you ...., people cannot see or find you. *(Tahta - Sohag 2022)*
   a. build b. cure c. disappear d. begin
6. SB If Mona goes to the university, she'll study ....
   a. engineer b. engine c. engineering d. engineers
   (El Hamool - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)
7. WB I am .... that life will be better for my children.
   a. sad b. bored c. hopeful d. worried

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. Our teacher asked the new student to .... herself to the class.
   a. produce b. draw c. introduce d. text
9. She gave me a full .... of her new apartment. I know it well now.
   a. advice b. headlines c. notes d. description
10. You shouldn't share your .... with people you don't know.
   a. video games b. technology
   c. language d. personal information
11. Living in the .... is quieter than living in the city.
   a. countryside b. seaside c. capital d. hospital

Definitions تعريفات

12. A/An .... is a treatment that can make an illness better.
   a. illness b. cure c. app d. design
13. A/An .... is something that does a particular job on your phone or computer.
   a. headline b. design c. app d. prediction

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Can you .... predictions about what will happen in the next 30 years?
   a. take b. make c. do d. give
15. .... three months' time, I'm going to start university.
   a. In b. At c. For d. On

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Talking about future plans : الحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية :

subj. (فاعل) + (be) going to + inf.

ex. - Next year, I'm going to design an app. - العام القادم سوف أقوم بتصميم تطبيق للهاتف.

subj. (فاعل) + want to + inf.

ex. - Next month, I want to buy a car. - أريد أن اشترى سيارة الشهر القادم.
- Before I leave school, I want to learn a new language. - قبل أن أنهى دراستى فى المدرسة. أريد أن أتعلم لغة جديدة.

subj. (فاعل) + 'd like to + inf.

ex. - In a few years' time, I'd like to improve my skills. - فى خلال سنوات قليلة. أحب أن أحسن من مهاراتى.

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

- Before I get a job, I'd like to live in the town.
- قبل حصولى على وظيفة. أحب أن أعيش فى المدينة.

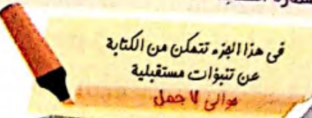
◄ أما عند الحديث عن ترتيب خططك المستقبلية أو تنبؤاتك الشخصية لما سيحدث فى المستقبل

subj. (فاعل) + will + inf.

ex. - In five years' time, I think I'll be a scientist.
- فى غضون خمس سنوات. أعتقد أننى سأصبح عالمًا.
- I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves.
- لا أعتقد. أننى سوف أضطر إلى تعلم كيفية القيادة لأن السيارات ستكون ذاتية القيادة.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Future predictions
تنبؤات مستقبلية



1. In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives.
   ١. فى الثلاثين عامًا القادمة سيكون هناك الكثير من التغيرات فى حياتنا.
2. Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting.
   ٢. ستجعل التكنولوجيا حياتنا أسهل وأكثر متعة.
3. Our phones will have apps for everything.
   ٣. سيصبح هناك تطبيقات لكل شئ على هواتفنا.
4. Scientists will find new cures for illnesses. ٤. سيجد العلماء علاجات جديدة للأمراض.
5. Some illnesses will disappear completely. ٥. ستختفى بعض الأمراض كليًا.
6. Our cars will be electric. ٦. ستصبح سياراتنا كهربائية.
7. I think, there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future.
   ٧. أعتقد. أنه سوف يوجد الكثير من التغيرات المثيرة فى المستقبل.

Writing tips

When you write your text, remember to :
عندما تكتب نص خاص بك تذكر أن :

- Include an introduction with a topic sentence.
  - اكتب مقدمة باستخدام جملة رئيسية.
- Use First, Second to introduce new ideas.
  - استخدم كلمة (أولاً) First و Second (ثانيًا) لتقدم أفكار جديدة.
- End with a conclusion.
  - قم بإنهاء النص بخاتمة.
- Read your final text and check for any mistakes. Can you improve it ?
  - اقرأ النص النهائى الخاص بك وتحقق من أى أخطاء. هل يمكنك تحسينه ؟

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

General Exercises on LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. I've got a lot of .... for the future.
   a. planes b. plans c. designs d. drawings
2. I want to play the ....
   a. guitar b. piano c. flute d. drum
3. I want to .... a video game.
   a. buy b. play c. design d. make
4. When will you learn to play the guitar ? - ....
   a. Next week b. Next month c. Next year d. Tomorrow

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. SB .... will make our lives easier. *(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2022)*
   a. Technology b. Nature c. Activities d. Biology
2. You need to .... to improve your reading skill.
   a. practise b. design c. divide d. plan
3. It's difficult to .... predictions for the future. *(Hehia - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. do b. take c. make d. be
4. .... cars are cleaner for our environment.
   a. Electric b. Electronic c. Scientific d. Economic
5. I am .... that life will be better for my family.
   a. helpful b. hopeful c. dirty d. ugly
6. Pupils should .... well for their exams.
   a. advise b. revise c. reply d. rewrite
7. It's quieter to live in the .... There is no noise there.
   a. town b. city c. countryside d. city centre
8. Asmaa doesn't like crisps, ... ?
   a. does she b. doesn't she c. is she d. isn't she
9. Mrs Warda is a teacher .... teaches Arabic.
   a. where b. when c. which d. who
10. WB If you get up late, you .... the school bus.
    a. will catch b. won't catch c. wouldn't catch d. don't catch

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. SB Children will still <u>going</u> to school in the future. (........)
2. Mohammed <u>drives</u> his car fast, didn't he ? (........)
3. My best subject is English, <u>is</u> it ? *(Desouk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)* (........)
4. Ameer will buy a car if he <u>got</u> enough money. (........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Marine biologist"

موقع التفوق AltFwok

CamScanner



Review on unit 12

SB page 63 WB page 113

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
accountant	محاسب
architect	مهندس معماري
businessman	رجل أعمال
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال
scientist	عالم
photographer	مصور
engines	محركات
marine biologist	عالم أحياء مائية
prediction	تنبؤ
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
dentist	طبيب أسنان
writer	كاتب
engineer	مهندس
laboratory	معمل
jewellery	مجوهرات
colourful	ملون
illness	مرض
cure	علاج
machines	آلات

Language

1- Relative pronoun who

يستخدم ضمير الوصل (who) للربط بين جملتين الفاعل بهما عاقل.

- A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean.

2- Question tag

نوع من الأسئلة يستخدم للتأكد من معلومة ويتكون من الفعل المساعد يليه ضمير فاعل ثم علامة الاستفهام (؟)

جملة خبرية مثبتة ⟶ سؤال مذيل منفى

- It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it ?

جملة خبرية منفية ⟶ سؤال مذيل مثبت

It isn't an easy question, is it ?

3- The first conditional (If) الحالة الأولى (If)

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى (If) للحديث عن النتائج المحتملة لحدث معين.

If present simple (مضارع بسيط) , will / won't + inf.

- If I go to university, I'll study maths.
- If I don't study hard, I won't pass my exams.

Speaking

1. Describing and asking questions about jobs.
   وصف وتوجيه أسئلة عن الوظائف.
   - Who is an architect ?
   An architect is a person who designs buildings.
2. Talking about future plans
   الحديث عن خطط مستقبلية
   - Tomorrow, I'm going to play a video game.
   - Next year, I'm *going to learn a new language.*

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

- تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الاخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Stimulus	Response	Usage الاستخدام
1. Who is a marine biologist ?	- A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it.	مناقشة الوظائف
2. What does an engineer do ?	- An engineer designs machines and engines.	
3. Why is it important to keep traditional jobs ?	- Because they continue an old tradition and help local people earn money.	مناقشة أهمية الوظائف التقليدية
4. What are your plans for the future ?	- Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar.	الحديث عن ماذا سيحدث فى المستقبل
5. Do you think jobs will change in the future ? Why/Why not ?	- I think they will change because technology makes changes to our lives.	

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية فى الورقة الامتحانية. (٤١ جملة)

1 "Your dream job"

My dream job is to be a marine biologist[1]. A marine biologist is the person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it[2]. I'm good at science and I love the ocean, so I decided to become a marine biologist[3]. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting[4]. In this job, every day is different[5]. On some days, I go diving around coral reefs[6].

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

On other days, I test water from the ocean in my laboratory[7]. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results of tests[8]. The best thing about my job is that my research will help the plants and animals in the ocean[9]. Also, there are bad things about my job[10]. Sometimes, the weather is terrible[11]. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm[12].

2 Your plans for the future

I want to be a scientist[13]. It's a really interesting job[14]. I must go to university for that so I need to work hard[15]. If I go to university, I'll study science[16]. I'd like to get a job in New Cairo[17]. I want to buy an apartment there[18]. I'd like to learn to drive so that I can visit my family[19].

3 Traditional jobs in Africa

Traditional jobs are still important today[20]. People started making pottery thousands of years ago in Egypt[21]. It is traditional to make jewellery in Kenya[22]. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over the country[23]. It's an important part of Africa's culture to make baskets[24]. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money[25]. It is an important skill because it continues an old tradition[26]. In Ghana, there are alot of women who make and sell baskets[27].

4 Different jobs

My uncle has got a very interesting job[28]. He's an engineer[29]. The engineer is a person who designs machines, engines and designs planes[30]. My sister is a businesswoman[31]. She works in an office and goes to meetings[32]. My brother is a pilot[33]. A pilot is a person who flies a plane[34]. My cousin is a photographer[35]. He takes photos[36]. He likes his job very much[37]. My neighbour is a scientist[38]. A scientist is a person who studies science[39]. I hope to be a doctor in the future to help poor people[40]. I like voluntary work so much[41].

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق



ثانوية
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. What's your uncle's job ?
   a. A doctor b. An engineer c. A businessman d. A teacher
2. Where does your uncle work ?
   a. In a building b. In an office c. In a factory d. In a school
3. What does an engineer design ?
   a. Buildings b. Machines c. Engines d. b & c
4. Is an engineer's job interesting ?
   a. Yes, it is. b. No, it isn't.
   c. Not always. d. Yes, sometimes.

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Samar and Rehab are talking about the job of a marine biologist.

Samar : What's your job ?
Rehab : (1) ....
Samar : What does a marine biologist usually study ?
Rehab : (2) ....
Samar : (3) .... ?
Rehab : On some days, I go diving around the coral reefs.
Samar : Why ?
Rehab : (4) ....
Samar : (5) .... ?
Rehab : Yes, diving is exciting, but sometimes the weather is terrible.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think education is very important. I hope that I can pass all my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I will study science. **It** is my best subject. I don't like flying, so I don't want

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

to travel around the world. I want to get a job in Egypt. I want to teach science. If I have enough money, I will buy an **apartment** near the Red Sea. I will get married but, how many children will I have ? I don't know.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. After finishing .... school, you can go to university.
   a. primary b. preparatory c. secondary d. nursery
2. The underlined word "**apartment**" means a ....
   a. flat b. garden c. beach d. park
3. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. maths b. science c. university d. work

(Ibsheway - Faiyum 2022)

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

5. What do you think about the writer ?

....

6. What is the writer's favourite job ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My cousin goes .... around the coral reefs. *(Ismailia 2022)*
   a. riding b. cycling c. diving d. driving
2. I live with my family in a small .... on the second floor.
   a. apartment b. house c. skyscraper d. department
3. When something is .... , it's very old. *(North Sinai - Sinai 2022)*
   a. clear b. modern c. traditional d. medium
4. Making jewellery helps people to .... much money.
   a. waste b. earn c. give d. draw
5. Students have to study hard in order to .... their exams.
   a. get b. pass c. learn d. give

6. Scientists work hard to find new .... for illnesses.
   a. cures b. drawings c. methods d. models
7. WB A/An .... is someone who is good with numbers.
   a. photographer b. dentist c. accountant d. architect
8. She wants to be a famous doctor, ... ? *(Damanhur - Beheira 2022)*
   a. isn't she b. didn't she c. hasn't she d. doesn't she
9. Hany and Sameer won't go to the beach, ... ?
   a. are they b. will he c. won't they d. will they
10. She'll pass the driving test if she .... well.
    a. don't drive b. drove c. drives d. doesn't drive

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB If I pass the exams, I'd go to university. (........)
2. We'll move to Cairo when our dad got a new job. (........)
3. She lives in Cairo, isn't she ? *(Girga - Sohag 2022)* (........)
4. Miss Nadia is the teacher which teaches us maths. *(Shibin El Kom - Monufia 2022)* (........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Traditional jobs in Africa"

....

AltFwoK.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 12 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Salah : .... ?
Adam : A person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it.
B. Helmy : What do you want to do when you're older ?
Alaa : ....

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Your dream job"

....
....
....
....
....
....

2. Use your brain, think smart طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He works .... his speaking skill for the interview.
   a. with b. on c. in d. for
2. I run quickly in order .... the bus.
   a. to catch b. catch c. catches d. caught
3. .... your tour guide, aren't I ?
   a. Are I b. I am c. You are d. Am I
4. He scarcely has money, ... he ?
   a. does b. doesn't c. hasn't d. haven't
5. Omar .... in his exams last year.
   a. passed b. pressed c. succeeded d. dressed

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق



Review D



SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 114 & 115

Reading

- on Lesson 1 SB page 64

A : There was a film about the dangers[1] to our planet on TV yesterday. It was very sad. What can we do ?
B : We can help, can't we, Tarek ?
A : How ?
B : If we pick up[2] the rubbish[3] from the beach, the animals won't eat it.

If we have shorter showers[4], we'll save[5] water.

We must walk or cycle when we can. I always ride my bike to the sports centre[6].

You mustn't buy plastic bags. My shopping bag is made of cotton. I use it every day.





A : If we all do these things, we'll help to save our planet.
B : Thanks Ali ! I'll do all those things !

Check Vocabulary

(1) مخاطر | (2) يلتقط | (3) قمامة | (4) دش قصير (باستخدام مياه أقل) | (5) يحافظ / يوفر | (6) مركز رياضي



Listening

- on Lesson 2 SB page 65

Malak : Here are the boxes for the recycling project[1]. Different rubbish goes into different boxes.

Hala : Great! So which box does this bottle go into ?

Malak : What is it made of plastic or glass ?

Hala : It's made of plastic.

Malak : OK, it goes into the yellow box.

Hala : Right ... There's another bottle here. This one is made of glass.

Malak : If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

Hala : What about this magazine ? It's made of paper[2].

Malak : It goes into the red box.

Hala : Where can I put this can ?

Malak : If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

Hala : Yes, it's made of metal ... I'm putting it in the green box.

Malak : What's left ?

Hala : Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we ? It's made of cotton[3].

Malak : We're not going to recycle the clothes – but we can give them to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange box, please.

Hala : The orange box ... OK.

Malak : Great. Everything is ready[4]. Thanks for your help, Hala.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشروع إعادة تدوير المخلفات | (2) ورق | (3) قطن | (4) مستعد / جاهز



Reading

- on Lesson 1 WB page 114

In the past, many people had traditional jobs[1] that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't they ?

For example, an aeronautical engineer[2] is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very interesting. If you want to help future technology[3], perhaps you will design drones[4].

Many people think that drones will carry our post[5] in the future. That will make the skies[6] above our cities interesting, won't it ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) وظائف تقليدية | (2) مهندس طيران | (3) تكنولوجيا المستقبل | (4) طائرات بدون طيار | (5) البريد | (6) سماوات



Listening

- on Lesson 2 WB page 114

Guessing something

1 : I'm not sure what this souvenir[1] is made of. Is it plastic or stone[2] ?



Giving instructions in order

2 : OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow. Then feel the fruit carefully[3]. It should not be too soft[4]. So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do ? Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

Checking information

3 : Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it ? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you ? But Aya isn't in school today, is she ?

Talking about future plans

4 : Before I go to university[5], I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity[6].



Check Vocabulary

(1) هدية تذكارية | (2) حجر | (3) بحرص | (4) ناعم | (5) جامعة | (6) جمعية خيرية



CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

GENERAL Revision

Based on Units 10, 11 & 12

Mini-Test on Unit 10

If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You can turn on the .... to get water.
   a. train b. tap c. top d. toy
2. What's your .... made of ? – Leather.
   a. table b. wallet c. television d. statue
3. I'm not sure, I think .... made of cotton.
   a. it b. its c. is it d. It's
4. There .... any cars in ancient Egypt.
   a. weren't b. wasn't c. are d. isn't
5. Mohamed Salah won the European Champions .... with Liverpool in 2019.
   a. Timeline b. League c. Diagram d. Plan
6. In the future, journeys to the moon will .... only 12 hours.
   a. make b. give c. take d. have
7. It's easy to .... warm or cool in round houses.
   a. have b. keep c. give d. take
8. This is a round shape. It is a ....
   a. circle b. triangle c. rectangle d. square
9. I think we .... more robots in our schools in the future.
   a. are having b. will have
   c. are going to have d. have
10. Can you .... three predictions about your house in the future ?
   a. give b. take c. do d. make

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. There will been a swimming pool. ( )
2. What is the car seats made of ? ( )
3. Will we to have driverless cars ? ( )
4. She was born on 2010. ( )

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Houses in the future"

....

Mini-Test on Unit 11



If you got 🔴, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Lama wants to grow a tomato plant.

Lama : I'd like to grow a tomato plant. (1) .... ?

Mariam : First, find a sunny place in the garden.

Lama : Do you mean a place under the sun ?

Mariam : (2) .... Secondly, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.

Lama : (3) .... What should I do after that ?

Mariam : Then, make a small hole in the soil.

Lama : (4) .... ?

Mariam : About 2 cm deep. Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry.

Lama : Should I water it now ?

Mariam : (5) .... Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The whales which are heavy sea animals hit with their big ....
   a. fins b. wings c. legs d. tails
2. The octopus swims very fast when it's in ....
   a. safe b. danger c. sleeping d. rest
3. If you put ice outside a freezer, it ....
   a. melts b. melt c. melting d. melted
4. You .... look left and right when you cross the road.
   a. must b. should c. mustn't d. can
5. What .... we do with the rubbish we find ?
   a. have b. had c. should d. haven't
6. When you put a/an .... into the soil, it grows into a new plant.
   a. brick b. seal c. seed d. stick
7. You mustn't .... a lot of noise in nature reserves.
   a. take b. get c. do d. make
8. That pot is .... There's nothing in it.
   a. filled b. dirty c. empty d. busy
9. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says.
   a. delete b. become c. respect d. expect
10. A lot of .... catch fish from the Red Sea.
   a. teachers b. fishermen
   c. farmers d. firefighters

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Planting a tree"

....

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

تم مراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة. غير جيد 🔴 إذا حصلت على

Mini-Test on Unit 12

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The .... is the person who looks after your teeth.
   a. engineer b. dentist
   c. accountant d. actor
2. My uncle Ali is a/an .... He has many projects and a big company.
   a. photographer b. engineer
   c. businessman d. writer
3. The body needs sleep, ... it ?
   a. isn't b. didn't c. doesn't d. wasn't
4. Amal .... TV, didn't she ?
   a. doesn't watch b. watches
   c. watched d. didn't watch
5. Ghana is an .... country.
   a. Asian b. American c. European d. African
6. If I have enough money, I'll buy a/an .... to live in it.
   a. school b. library c. apartment d. car
7. If I don't work hard, I .... pass my exams.
   a. won't b. will c. would d. could
8. Living in the .... is quieter than living in the city.
   a. countryside b. seaside
   c. capital d. hospital
9. It's important to .... your time well.
   a. explain b. plain c. plan d. plant
10. Scientists always try to find .... for illnesses.
   a. predictions b. changes
   c. cures d. maps

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Where will you lived if you get a good job ?
2. You did your homework last night, don't you ?
3. A businessman is a man which works in an office.
4. If I eat too many sweets, I'm be fat.

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Traditional jobs in Africa"

....

AltFwqk.com موقع التفوق

Answers of Main Book Paragraphs

إجابات الموضوعات في الكتاب المدرسي

Unit 7

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"How was your weekend ?"

My weekend was fantastic. I went to Ahmed's house on Sunday and we played football in the park. It was a lot of fun. We had lunch together. It was delicious. In the afternoon, we went to the sports centre. We played tennis there. There was a really big swimming pool. We swam in it. We had a nice time at the sports centre. In the evening, we went shopping. I bought a T-shirt and shoes for my younger sister. Ahmed is a nice friend. I enjoyed my time with him.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Robinson Crusoe"

Robinson Crusoe" is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. His ship sank because there was a bad storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. He walked along the beach, but he saw nobody and he thought that he was alone. He found a fish and ate it. He looked for a cave to sleep in. He found a coconut on the beach. It was delicious. He wrote a diary of what happened to him.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

" A fantastic day"

Yesterday was a fantastic day for me. I did many interesting things on this day. In the morning, I went to the bowling alley. I went with my cousin. After that, we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with chicken. My cousin had a pizza with olives and pepper. The pizza was delicious. In the evening, we went to visit our grandparents. They were very happy to meet us. We helped our grandpa to fix many things at home. He was proud of us.

Test on unit 7

"A terrible weekend I had"

My weekend was a terrible one. My baby sister woke me up at 5 a.m. I felt so tired. I went to the kitchen, but there was no milk or bread. I went to buy food, but the shops were all closed. I didn't do my homework because my laptop stopped working. I planned to have a barbecue but there was a lot of wind. In the evening, I went to the stadium to watch a football match. My team lost the match. I was very sad.



Unit 8

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Famous places in Egypt"

There are many famous places in Egypt. We are very proud of them. There are some of them in Giza. In Giza, there are the Pyramids and the Sphinx. The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 m tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid which is 105 m tall. The Red Pyramid is further away from the centre of Cairo. In Luxor, there are Luxor Temple and the Temple of Karnak. Last winter, I went to Luxor with my family. We visited many places there. We had a nice time.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"The Tahya Masr Bridge"

The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

In 2019, the Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors. It is further from the city centre than the old museum. But it is two km from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects. More people can see these valuable things. The museum can preserve these objects. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance. The biggest statue in the museum is the statue of Ramses II. It is 12 m high.

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Test on unit 8

"A wonderful holiday"

We had a wonderful holiday in Luxor last week. We visited the most interesting places in Luxor. First, we went to the Valley of Kings. It is one of the most popular places for tourists in Luxor. We went early because that is the quietest time. Secondly, we went to the Karnak Temple. It was more crowded than the valley of the kings. Finally, we went to the best and quietest place for me : Habu Temple.



General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A trip with my friends"

Last year, I went to South Africa with my friends. It was beautiful there. Our first day there was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. When we started trekking, it was sunny. But when we reached the top of the mountain, there were dark clouds. After that, the rain began and there was a storm.
The rocks were wet and Ahmed fell down and hurt himself. The following days, the weather was better. I went zip lining. I was a bit frightened, but I was excited.

Test on unit 9

"An adventure"

There are many kinds of sports. We have water sports and mountain sports,etc. We do many sports in Egypt. Last year, I went diving in the Red Sea. It was amazing. There are many colourful coral reefs there. I wanted to try windsurfing, but there was no time for that. I'm going to try rock climbing next year. I think it's a bit dangerous. My friends like trekking in the mountains. They are going to go to Mount Catherine next week.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Deir el - Medina"

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt. The people in this village worked in the Valley of the Kings. The doors of their houses were made of wood and the walls were made of bricks. The people painted their houses white and the doors red. There was a kitchen and a living room. People slept on the roof because there weren't any bedrooms. It was very hot at night. They got their water from the Nile Valley, because there weren't any taps.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Round houses"

Many houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. This is important when there is an earthquake or a strong wind. A round building means that the building is very strong. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is easier to keep warm or cool. It is quieter inside than a building that is a rectangle or a square. A round house is cheaper because building a round house uses fewer materials.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Planning my future home"

I have many creative ideas for my future house. It will be made of plastic bricks, a lot of glass and metal. It will be a big house. There will be two bedrooms, a kitchen, a bathroom and a living room. The garden will be on the roof. It will be a round building, as a round shape means the building is very strong. It is also cheaper to make and easy to keep warm or cool. There will be a charger next to my house for my electric car.

Test on unit 10

"Houses in the future"

Houses in the future will be different to our houses today. Houses will be made of plastic bricks, a lot of glass and metal. The garden will be on the roof because there won't be much space. There will be chargers for electric cars next to the house as all people will use electric cars in the future. Robots will do all the housework. People will get electricity from solar panels. Drones will bring food and parcels to houses.

Unit 11

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Sea animals"

There are a lot of animals that live in the sea. Some sea animals are dangerous like sharks. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life. A stingray is a big, flat fish. When it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Some sea animals are poisonous and sting when you touch them like jellyfish.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"What we must do to keep animals safe"

We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many animals live here so we must be careful about what we do. We mustn't make a lot of noise. Noise makes animals feel frightened. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve because there are animals and birds living in the plants next to the road. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. We must take all our rubbish with us when we leave.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A story you like"

Santiago was an old fisherman. He didn't catch a fish for a very long time. One day, he found a big fish at the end of the fishing line. The fish was stronger than Santiago. He could pull it to the boat. The sharks came and ate the fish. When Santiago returned to his home on the beach, he found the fish was only a skeleton. The other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave to catch it. They respected Santiago more than ever.

Test on unit 11

"Planting a tree"

We plant trees to keep our environment clean. Trees make the air healthy. There are many steps to plant a tree. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot. Press your finger to make a hole and put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. Water it every day but don't give it too much water.

Unit 12

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My dream job"

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He is an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines and engines. My uncle designs engines for planes. I like his job so much. I'd like to be an engineer one day. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard to achieve my dream. I want to get a good job and do many projects.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"My plan for the future"

I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar. And before I finish my school, I want to design a video game ! In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a businessman. It's an interesting job. A businessman is a person who works in an office and goes to meetings. I want to travel to another country and get married one day. I want to have two children.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Marine biologist"

A marine biologist is a person who studies the plants and animals in the ocean. A marine biologist must be good at science and loves the ocean. The ocean is full of interesting animals and plants. A marine biologist sometimes goes around coral reefs and sometimes tests water from the ocean in the laboratory. This job needs working a lot of time on the computer and writing the results of the tests. His researches help to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.

Test on unit 12

"Traditional jobs in Africa"

Traditional jobs and skills are still important in Africa. People started making pottery thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops and some in their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, a city in Egypt, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults can learn this skill. There is a different skill in Kenya, people make jewellery. You can see colourful jewellery in markets all over the country.


ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

Unit 7

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Dad likes sports. He is very good at swimming. Mum loves cooking. Her salads are delicious. My sister likes making things.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres. It was terrible because there were so many cars.

3 Test on unit (7)

Mum likes playing sports, but she does not like watching sports. Nadia, aged five, is frightened of the dark. Dad likes science. He is always busy.

4 February assessment

I'm Basant. I'm 12 years old. Yesterday was my birthday. My family took me by car to the museum. We saw statues there. In the evening, we went to the funfair.

Unit 8

1 Lessons 3& 4

The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge and it opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

The Valley of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists. We went early because that is the quietest time, but it gets busier later.

3 Test on unit (8)

The British Museum is in London. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.

Unit 9

1 Lessons 1& 2

Eman is in Dahab with her family. This afternoon, they are going to go trekking in the mountains. Eman is going to try rock climbing.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Yesterday, we went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top we saw dark clouds.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

Maher is looking forward to seeing Karim who is coming to Cairo from Alexandria tomorrow. Karim is coming by train.

4 Test on unit (9)

We're enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa. It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do. Yesterday was an adventure. Tomorrow the weather is going to be better.

Unit 10

1 Lessons 1& 2

A car door is made of metal and the windows are made of glass. Expensive car seats are made of leather. Some car seats are made of plastic.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

In the future, robots will do the housework. To build houses, we will use plastic bricks. They will be cheap.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

I learned to ride a bike in 2013. In 2018, we moved house. We live in Cairo now. We went on a holiday to the Red Sea.

4 Test on unit (10)

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. Then, he moved to Switzerland to play for Basel.

5 March assessment

Eman is in Dahab with her family. They're going to go trekking in the mountains. Eman isn't going to try rock climbing as it's too scary.

Unit 11

1 Lessons 3 & 4

We should help save our planet, the Earth. We can plant trees to keep our air healthy. So we can breathe fresh air.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Santiago was an old fisherman. He didn't catch fish for a long time. One day, there was a big fish at the end of his fishing line.

3 Test on unit (11)

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. It uses more than 20.000 teeth in its life.

Unit 12

1 Lessons 1& 2

A marine biologist studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it. The animals in oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

It is an important part of Africa's culture to make baskets. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets to earn money.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

I've got a lot of plans for the future. I want to learn to play the guitar next year. I also want to design a video game!

4 Test on unit (12)

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. He works in a factory. He designs machines and engines.

CamScanner

A Follow-up Card

Sheet 1 On Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)

1. There are a lot of colourful fish in the ......
   a. swimming pool b. sports centre
   c. aquarium d. planetarium
2. The big ...... is one of the fantastic rides in the funfair.
   a. wall b. whale c. wheel d. wing

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. <u>Why</u> old are you ? - 12 years old. ( )
2. Has your brother got a pencil case ? - Yes, he <u>does</u>. ( )

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	planetarium	......	......	مفكرة (يوميات)
	statue	......	......	ينتقل - ينقل
	restaurant	......	......	معرض
B	trumpet	......	......	بمفرده
	interviewer	......	......	ميت
	nearby	......	......	جوز الهند

Sheet 2 On Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)

1. The ...... of Bangkok in Thailand is about 10 million people.
   a. pollution b. population
   c. weather d. transport
2. The market is always ...... at this time.
   a. wide b. busy c. hot d. high

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. One of the <u>more</u> beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance. ( )
2. He is the <u>good</u> friend of mine. ( )

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	crowded	......	......	دولي
	visitors	......	......	برج
	bridge	......	......	يدمن
B	ice skating	......	......	[illegible]
	funny	......	......	غروب الشمس
	popular	......	......	صحي

Sheet 3 On Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)

1. In Dahab, we're going to go ...... in the mountains.
   a. diving b. trekking
   c. windsurfing d. kayaking
2. ...... are people who live in the desert.
   a. Bedouins b. Runners c. Beginners d. Villagers

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. <u>Will</u> you going to visit your grandmother ? (......)
2. Did you write this passage <u>herself</u> ? (......)

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	windsurfing	......	......	أنشطة
	zip lining	......	......	رحلة قصيرة
	scary	......	......	مرشد
B	stormy	......	......	جليدي
	towel	......	......	مرآة
	railway line	......	......	يستمتع

Sheet 4 On Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)

1. The ...... is on the top of a house.
   a. bedroom b. wall c. oven d. roof
2. The ...... is made of plastic and glass.
   a. curtain b. cap c. television d. sofa

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. We won't <u>goes</u> to the moon. ( )
2. Will there <u>been</u> ordinary mobiles in the future ? ( )

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	curtains	......	......	قوالب طوب
	teaspoon	......	......	فارب
	toy	......	......	صوف
B	machine	......	......	صاروخ
	earthquake	......	......	ينتج
	guest	......	......	سيارة بدون سائق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Sheet 5 On Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)

1. Nature .... protect a lot of animals and birds.
   a. preserves b. resorts c. reserves d. deserts
2. Trees help to .... our air healthy.
   a. become b. give c. keep d. take

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. When it is very cold, water **turned** into ice. (..........)
2. We **must** make a lot of noise. (..........)

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A			
coral reefs	....	....	قنديل البحر
planet	....	....	مشكلة
touch	....	....	يختبر / اختبار

B			
hole	....	....	بذرة
project	....	....	يغطي
hide	....	....	عميق

Sheet 6 On Unit 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (2)

1. Making jewellery helps some people in Kenya to .... money.
   a. win b. earn c. gain d. lose
2. "International" is the opposite of " .... ".
   a. global b. local c. manual d. African

2 Read and correct the underlined words : (2)

1. A nurse is a person **when** looks after sick people. (..........)
2. She won't travel abroad, **would** she ? (..........)

Dictation الإملاء (6)

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية

A			
accountant	....	....	مقابلة (شخصية)
voluntary	....	....	هدف
research	....	....	عالم أحياء بحرية

B			
university	....	....	يتدرب / يمارس
pottery	....	....	صلصال / طين الفخار
culture	....	....	مدونة

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم : ١٠٣ - ٩ - ٢ - ٢٩٠



GUIDE

New Hello!

ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors



A WEE[K] IS ENOUGH

كراسة المعاصر
للمراجعة والاختبارات
للصف الأول الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى

1st Prep.
2023
SECOND TERM

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

DAY 1 Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

I Listening ١ نصوص الاستماع

على الطالب أن يستمع إلى نص حوالى (٢٥ - ٣٠) كلمة من الموضوعات الصاحة من الكتاب المدرسى التى تساعد فى التعامل مع السؤال الأول وبعد الاستماع إلى النص يجيب الطالب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد متنوعة بأربع اختيارات لكل سؤال.

السؤال الأول فى ورقة الامتحان

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. In ancient Egypt, there weren't any ....
   a. living rooms b. kitchens c. doors d. bedrooms
2. People in ancient Egypt slept ....
   a. in bedrooms b. in living rooms c. on roofs d. in kitchens
3. Were there any taps in ancient Egypt ?
   a. Yes b. No c. Not in the text d. Maybe
4. In ancient Egypt, people got their water from ....
   a. the Nile Valley b. taps c. bottles d. not in the text

2 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. When Omar was twelve, he learned to play the ....
   a. piano b. trumpet c. guitar d. violin
2. When Omar was fourteen, he learned to play the ....
   a. violin b. piano c. trumpet d. guitar
3. Omar .... music.
   a. hates b. eats c. dislikes d. likes
4. What music does Omar like ?
   a. Jazz music b. Pop music c. Rock music d. Traditional music





II Language Functions ٢. الوظائف اللغوية

عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة وشيقة متنوعة بتدريبات كل وحدة على حدة.

Set Book Questions with suggested answers

أسئلة وردت بالكتاب المدرسى وإجاباتها المقترحة تساعدك على التعامل مع سؤال المحادثة :

Unit 7

Questions [?]	Answers [.]
• Who is Marvin Allstar ? من هو مارفين أولستار ؟	- He is a famous musician. هو موسيقار شهير.
• What does he do ? ماذا يفعل ؟	- He writes songs and plays in a band. هو يكتب أغانٍ ويعزف بفرقة موسيقية.
• What type of music do you like ? ما نوع الموسيقى التى تحبها ؟	- Classical / Jazz / Pop music الموسيقى التقليدية / الجاز / البوب
• When did you learn it ? متى تعلمتها ؟	- When I was 10. عندما كنت فى العاشرة من عمرى.
• How was your weekend ? كيف كانت عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك ؟	- It was terrible / great. كانت سيئة / رائعة.
• What happened ? ماذا حدث ؟	- I dropped my mobile phone. / I went to the stadium. أسقطت هاتفى الجوال / ذهبت إلى الاستاد.

Unit 8

Questions [?]	Answers [.]
• How long is the Cairo - Alexandria Desert Road ? كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى ؟	- It's 220 kilometres long. يبلغ طوله ٢٢٠ كم.
• How many people live in Cairo ? كم عدد السكان الذين يعيشون فى القاهرة ؟	- More than 20 million people. أكثر من ٢٠ مليون شخص.
• How much do you know about the Pyramids ? ما مدى معرفتك بالأهرامات ؟	- The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 metres tall. يبلغ طول الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة ١٤٦ مترًا.
• Have you ever visited / seen it ? هل سبق لك أن قمت بزيارته / رؤيته ؟	- Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.

AlfwoK.com موقع الفوك

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Unit 9

Questions [?]	Answers [.]
- Why don't we go swimming ? لماذا لا نذهب للسباحة ؟	- Great idea. فكرة عظيمة - I'm not very keen on that. لست متحمسًا لذلك.
- How is the weather now ? ما هى حالة الطقس اليوم ؟	- The weather is sunny. الطقس مشمس.
- Shall we go mountain climbing ? ما رأيك بأن نتسلق الجبال ؟	- I'm not sure. That sounds a bit scary. لست متأكدًا. هذا يبدو مخيف قليلًا.

Unit 10

Questions [?]	Answers [.]
• What are you going to do tomorrow ? ماذا ستفعل غدًا ؟	I'm going to visit my uncle. سأقوم بزيارة عمى.
• How do you think people will live in the future ? كيف تعتقد ستعيش الناس فى المستقبل ؟	- I think people will use electric cars. - I think there will be lots of solar panels. - أعتقد سيستخدم الناس سيارات كهربائية. - أعتقد سيكون هناك الكثير من الألواح الشمسية.
• What materials will the houses be made of ? ما المواد الخام التى ستُبنى بها المنازل ؟	They will be made of plastic bricks. ستُصنع من قوالب طوب بلاستيكية.
• Do you think we will live on the moon ? هل تعتقد أننا سنعيش على القمر ؟	I think it's not possible. أعتقد أنه غير ممكن. Oh. It's my dream. اوه. إنه حلمى.



AltFwoK.com موقع التفوق

Unit 11

Questions [?]	Answers [.]
• What should I do to plant a tree ? ماذا يجب أن أفعل لكى أزرع شجرة ؟	- First, find a plastic pot. Second, put some stones at the bottom of it. أولًا : أوجد إناء من البلاستيك. ثانيًا : قم بوضع بعض الأحجار فى القاع.
• What should I do after that ? ماذا يجب أن أفعل بعد ذلك ؟	- The next thing you do is to press your finger into the soil to make a hole. الشيء التالى هو أن تقوم بالضغط بإصبعك على التربة لعمل حفرة.
• How deep must the hole be ? كم العمق يجب أن تكون الحفرة ؟	- It must be 2 centimetres deep. يجب أن يكون عمقها ٢ سم.
• Should I water it every day ? هل يجب أن أقوم بالرى كل يوم ؟	- Yes. But don't give it too much water. نعم ولكن لا تعطيها كثيرًا من الماء.

Unit 12

Questions [?]	Answers [.]
• You visit some interesting places, don't you ? أنت تقوم بزيارة بعض الأماكن الشيقة. أليس كذلك ؟	- Yes. At the moment, I'm working in the Red Sea. Last year, I worked in Australia. نعم. فى الوقت الحالى. أعمل فى البحر الأحمر. العام الماضى. عملت فى أستراليا.
• What different kinds of animals do you study ? ما أنواع الحيوانات المختلفة التى تقوم بدراستها ؟	- I study fish and smaller animals around the coral reefs. أنا أدرس السمك والحيوانات الأصغر حجمًا حول الشعاب المرجانية. 
• It sounds like a dream job to be a marine biologist, doesn't it ? إنه يبدو حلمًا أن تصبح عالم أحياء مائية. أليس كذلك ؟	- Yes, but it is hard work and takes a long time. نعم. ولكن إنه عمل شاق ويستغرق وقتًا طويلًا.
• What advice do you give to become a marine biologist ? ما هى النصيحة التى يمكنك إعطائها حتى تصبح عالم أحياء مائية ؟	- You have to work hard and love science. يجب عليك أن تعمل بجد وأن تحب العلوم.

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

السؤال الثانى في ورقة الامتحان

عبارة عن حوار به خمس فراغات، وعلى الطالب أن يملأ كل فراغ ولذلك يجب على الطالب أن يقرأ الحوار أولًا بطريقة جيدة.

Complete the following dialogue :

1 Ahmed and Samy are talking about types of music.

Ahmed : Hello Samy ! Do you like music ?
Samy : Hi Ahmed ! (1) ....
Ahmed : What kind of music do you like ?
Samy : (2) ....
Ahmed : (3) .... ?
Samy : I like jazz music because it's nice and calm.
Ahmed : Do you like pop music ?
Samy : (4) ....
Ahmed : (5) .... ?
Samy : Marvin Allstar is my favourite musician.

2 Dina asks Asmaa about her weekend.

Dina : Hi Asmaa ! How was your weekend ?
Asmaa : Hi Dina ! (1) ....
Dina : (2) .... ?
Asmaa : I went to the museum.
Dina : Good. Was it quiet ?
Asmaa : (3) ....
Dina : Did you take photos of the museum ?
Asmaa : (4) ....
Dina : (5) .... ?
Asmaa : Great idea ! Let's visit it together.

3 Hany asks Ali about his last holiday.

Hany : What did you do last year on the holiday ?
Ali : (1) ....
Hany : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing, too.
Ali : (2) .... ?
Hany : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous but I like trekking in the mountains .
Ali : Me, too ! (3) ....
Hany : (4) .... ?
Ali : No, I'm not going to try mountain biking. It's very dangerous to ride a bike in the mountains.
Hany : I think you're right. Zip lining looks scary, too.
Ali : (5) .... !

4 Ola and Maha will do some activities on Saturday.

Ola : Good morning, Maha.
Maha : Good morning, Ola. (1) .... ?
Ola : I'm fine.
Maha : What shall we do on Saturday ?
Ola : Let me think. (2) .... ?
Maha : I'm not sure. Rock climbing is quite dangerous. (3) ....
Ola : OK. How about playing basketball ?
Maha : (4) .... I'm not very tall.
Ola : OK, not rock climbing or basketball. I know ! Let's play tennis.
Maha : (5) .... ! I always enjoy playing tennis.

AltFwoK.com موقع الفوك

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

III Reading Comprehension
٣. قطع الفهم

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

وهو عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استفهام وثلاث اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

Read the following, then answer the questions :

Dear Sami

I'm staying with my uncle in London ! I travelled to his house by train. London is very big and the streets are always busy. My uncle says that some people in London are not friendly, but I like the people **here** . Today, we visited a museum. It has big windows, so the rooms are very light. Some people don't like museums, but this museum was very interesting for me.

Yesterday, we walked up a hill in a park. I saw all of London from there. There are some modern skyscrapers in London, but most of the buildings are **low** and not very tall.

Regards,

Ali

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Skyscrapers are very .... buildings.
   a. low b. tall c. small d. tiny
2. The underlined word "**here**" refers to ....
   a. London b. Paris c. Cairo d. Alexandria
3. The opposite of the underlined word "**low**" is ....
   a. small b. tall c. high d. fast

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the email ?

....

5. What do you think of living in London ?

....

6. Where is Ali staying ?

....

I General Revision on Vocabulary

١. مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 7

aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	football stadium	ملعب كرة قدم
sports centre	مركز رياضي	bowling alley	صالة بولينج
funfair	مدينة الملاهي	museum	متحف
planetarium	القبة السماوية	exhibition	معرض
dolphins	دلافين	restaurant	مطعم
shopping	التسوق	nervous	عصبي / متوتر
school canteen	كانتين المدرسة / المقصف	together	معًا
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	opera	أوبرا
pop music	موسيقى البوب	traditional	تقليدي
terrible	فظيع / كريه	coconut	جوز الهند
opinion	رأي	closed	مغلق

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We decided to play basketball at the sports ....
   a. match b. wheel c. funfair d. centre
2. We had lunch together in the school .... (SB page 4)
   a. canteen b. library
   c. laboratory d. music room
3. Yesterday, I went to my new school. I was quite .... because it was my first day. (SB page 4)
   a. expensive b. nervous c. dangerous d. funny

AltFwok.com

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

4. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend. (WB page 70)
a. funfair b. museum c. stadium d. theatre
5. It was great at the .... Egypt won 2-0! (WB page 70)
a. cinema b. jungle c. opera d. stadium
6. My grandfather was a .... and visited countries all over the world. (WB page 73)
a. carpenter b. teacher c. sailor d. vet
7. When you put a stone in water, it .... (WB page 76)
a. thinks b. sinks c. floats d. thanks
8. I didn't like this story. I thought it was really .... (WB page 73)
a. exciting b. amazing c. funny d. terrible
9. People first played .... music a long time ago. (WB page 76)
a. traditional b. modern c. new d. pop
10. .... is a very loud music. (WB page 76)
a. Classic b. Rock c. Pop d. Opera

Unit 8

bridge	كوبري	Russia	دولة روسيا
pyramid	هرم	deep	عميق
tower	برج	million	مليون
tunnel	نفق	the Great Pyramid	الهرم الأكبر
further	أبعد	crowded	مزدحم
worse	أسوأ	suspension bridge	كوبري معلق
beautiful	جميل	dangerous	خطير
sunset	غروب الشمس	narrow	ضيق
achievements	انجازات	famous	مشهور
holiday	أجازة	valuable	ذو قيمة

the Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير	treasures	كنوز
space	فضاء	competition	مسابقة / منافسة
entrance	مدخل	tourists	سياح
fantastic	رائع	columns	أعمدة
expressions	تعبيرات	The Amazon	نهر الأمازون

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo. (WB page 77)
a. Street b. Bridge c. Library d. Dam
2. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt. (WB page 77)
a. Station b. Tower c. Museum d. Citadel
3. The Channel .... goes under the sea between England and France. (WB page 77)
a. Tunnel b. Bridge c. Cave d. Jungle
4. We need to buy some water. This bottle is .... (WB page 78)
a. full b. bright c. empty d. expensive
5. Only people and bikes can go down that road because it's very .... (WB page 78)
a. narrow b. wide c. easy d. big
6. The market is always very busy at this time. Don't go now or it will be very .... (WB page 78)
a. free b. crowded c. empty d. open
7. We can't swim across the river here because it's very .... (WB page 78)
a. old b. short c. wide d. long
8. We want to swim in the river, but how .... is it ? (WB page 83)
a. much b. noisy c. deep d. old
9. The hotel looks very nice, but how .... is it ? (WB page 83)
a. long b. much c. many d. cheap
10. .... is the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day. (WB page 122)
a. Sunset b. Sunrise c. Sunlight d. Sunshine

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Unit 9

diving	رياضة الغطس	dentist	طبيب أسنان
kayaking	رياضة التجديف بالزورق	protect	يحمي
mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات على الجبال	railway line	خط سكة حديد
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج	rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين	sailing	الإبحار
tent	خيمة	trekking	المشي لمسافات طويلة في الجبال
journey	رحلة طويلة	zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبل
negotiate	يتفاوض	Bedouin	بدوي
rainy	ممطر	activity	نشاط
fog	ضباب	argument	جدال
adventure	مغامرة	carefully	بحرص
cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم	keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
stormy	عاصف	challenge	تحدى
weather	طقس	complete	يُكمل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can't go .... today because there's no wind. *(WB page 84)*
   a. climbing b. windsurfing c. biking d. shopping
2. All you need to go .... is a boat. *(WB page 84)*
   a. sailing b. diving c. climbing d. trekking
3. I love .... because I'm good at swimming under the water. *(WB page 84)*
   a. windsurfing b. diving c. sailing d. climbing
4. When you go ...., you start really high, but you finish on the ground. *(WB page 84)*
   a. swimming b. riding c. sailing d. zip lining
5. We sometimes go .... for two days or more across the desert.
   a. diving b. trekking
   c. sailing d. windsurfing *(WB page 84)*

6. We want to have a .... to show us the market, because they know the best places to shop. *(WB page 85)*
   a. sailor b. teacher c. tourist d. guide
7. I love waking up in a .... and hearing the birds sing when I camp.
   a. tent b. hotel c. house d. museum *(WB page 85)*
8. They took two days to cross the desert. It was a difficult .... *(WB page 85)*
   a. voyage b. journey c. flight d. prize
9. I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big .... *(SB page 24)*
   a. term b. party c. adventure d. novel
10. On his way down, Tamer .... over and hurt himself. *(SB page 26)*
   a. took b. fell c. made d. gave

Unit 10

cotton	قطن	wool	صوف
glass	زجاج	pencil case	مقلمة
leather	جلد	skirt	جيبة
metal	معدن	socks	جوارب
plastic	بلاستيك	statue	تمثال
stone	حجر	tablet	جهاز لوحي (تابلت)
wallet	محفظة	teaspoon	ملعقة صغيرة
roof	سطح	bricks	طوب
taps	حنفيات	oven	فرن
kitchen	مطبخ	bedroom	حجرة نوم
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
wind turbines	طواحين الهواء	driverless cars	سيارات بدون سائق
robot	إنسان آلي	culture	ثقافة
earthquake	زلزال	rectangular	على شكل مستطيل
disadvantages	عيوب	warm	دافئ
imagination	خيال	divide	يقسم

موقع التفوق

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A car door is made of .... (WB page 91)
   a. glass b. leather c. wood d. metal
2. Car windows are made of .... (WB page 93)
   a. glass b. cotton c. wool d. leather
3. Expensive car seats are made of .... (WB page 93)
   a. wood b. wool c. leather d. cotton
4. It was hot outside, but it was nice and .... in my bedroom. (WB page 96)
   a. hot b. cold c. rainy d. cool
5. My mother wants to buy a new sofa, but I don't think we have .... for it in our living room. (WB page 96)
   a. money b. space c. free d. cotton
6. My aunt made us some bread and we ate it, it was still .... (WB page 96)
   a. wet b. warm c. cool d. cold
7. .... will do some of the jobs that people do today. (SB page 62)
   a. Animals b. Birds c. Robots d. Rabbits
8. .... is the material from the skins of animals, used to make shoes and bags. (WB page 121)
   a. Leather b. Wood c. Metal d. Wool
9. In the future, the gardens will be on the .... (SB page 38)
   a. room b. tower c. roof d. floor
10. Most windows are made of .... (WB page 117)
   a. wool b. glass c. cotton d. paper

Unit 11

coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	ocean	محيط
octopus	أخطبوط	sting	يلدغ
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	tail	ذيل
stingray	سمكة الراي اللادغة	planet	كوكب
sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	environment	بيئة
whale	حوت	recycle	يعيد تصنيع

موقع التفوق

dirty	قذر	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
view	منظر طبيعي	frighten	يرعب / يخيف
plastic pot	إناء بلاستيك	rules	قواعد
phone call	مكالمة هاتفية	soil	تربة
radio station	محطة إذاعة	local	محلي
gloves	قفازات	clear	واضح / صافٍ

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can .... them. (WB page 101)
   a. recycle b. cook c. cycle d. bake
2. Trees are very good for our .... because they give us clean air. (WB page 101)
   a. excitement b. improvement c. environment d. equipment
3. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the .... (WB page 101)
   a. notebooks b. books c. library d. rubbish
4. A lot of .... catch fish from the Red Sea. (WB page 104)
   a. fishermen b. doctors c. policemen d. soldiers
5. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says. (WB page 104)
   a. cover b. respect c. collect d. recycle
6. Judy felt very .... after she was ill, but she is better now. (WB page 104)
   a. pleased b. weak c. strong d. happy
7. In the museum, we saw a .... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big. (WB page 104)
   a. map b. plant c. skeleton d. line
8. The shark is one of the most dangerous animals in the .... (SB page 45)
   a. pond b. ocean c. lake d. river
9. A .... is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it. (SB page 45)
   a. jellyfish b. shark c. turtle d. whale
10. When a .... is in danger, it goes into its shell. (SB page 45)
   a. seed b. coral reef c. shark d. turtle

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Unit 12

accountant	محاسب	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
architect	مهندس معماري	writer	كاتب
businessman	رجل أعمال	engineer	مهندس
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	machines	آلات
scientist	عالم	meetings	اجتماعات
photographer	مصور	students	طلاب
engines	محركات	design	يصمم
buildings	مباني	laboratory	معمل
sick	مريض	traditional	تقليدى
marine biologist	عالم أحياء مائية	jewellery	مجوهرات
test	اختبار	colourful	ملون
Africa	قارة أفريقيا	basket	سلة
workshops	ورش	Ghana	دولة غانا
Kenya	دولة كينيا	illness	مرض
earn	يكسب (أموال)	cure	علاج
prediction	تنبؤ	exciting	مثير

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I love learning about sea life. I want to be a/an .... *(WB page 108)*
   a. artist   b. marine biologist   c. engineer   d. teacher
2. A/An .... is bigger than a sea. *(WB page 108)*
   a. ocean   b. pond   c. river   d. lake
3. The scientist did a lot of tests in the .... *(WB page 108)*
   a. playground   b. stadium   c. laboratory   d. library
4. The shop had a lot of cups, plates and other .... *(WB page 110)*
   a. pottery   b. leather   c. wood   d. straw

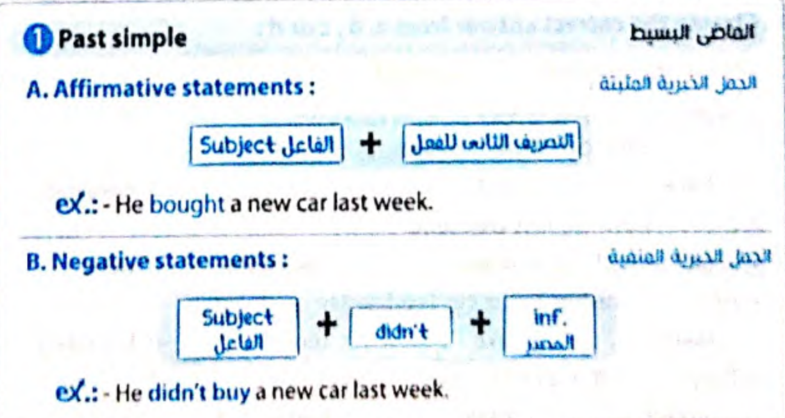
5. My cousin is a/an .... now. She was 18 last week ! *(WB page 110)*
   a. baby   b. child   c. adult   d. kid
6. Doctors can usually .... a lot of money. *(WB page 110)*
   a. score   b. win   c. pay   d. earn
7. Tourists learn a lot about Ancient Egyptian .... when they visit Egypt. *(WB page 110)*
   a. furniture   b. culture   c. future   d. picture
8. My father bought this .... for my mother when they got married. *(WB page 110)*
   a. sandwich   b. meal   c. food   d. jewellery
9. A/An .... is something on your phone that helps you use maps, book tickets, ... etc. *(WB page 111)*
   a. app   b. map   c. tap   d. tape
10. To .... is when you draw something that you plan to build or make. *(WB page 111)*
    a. cycle   b. recycle   c. design   d. build

II Language Review

٢. القواعد اللغوية

(راجع وتدرب فى نفس الوقت) عرض لجميع القواعد الموجودة فى المنهج بطريقة سهلة وتدريبات اختيار من متعدد (Choose) وكذلك تصحيح الأخطاء (Read and correct)

Unit 7



1 Past simple — الماضى البسيط

A. Affirmative statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

ex.: - He bought a new car last week.

B. Negative statements : الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex.: - He didn't buy a new car last week.

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

C. Past time expressions : التعبيرات الزمنية الخاصة بالماضي البسيط

We use past time expressions to say when something happened.
نستخدم التعبيرات الزمنية الخاصة بالماضي البسيط للاخبار عن متى حدث شيء ما

ex.: - I went to the zoo last week / Sunday / month / year.
- I went bowling an hour / four days / five months ago.
- Ali saw his brother Abdullah yesterday.
- In 2013, Salma was born.

2 Asking questions (Yes / No questions / Wh questions)

توجيه الأسئلة (الأسئلة بهل / الأسئلة بأدوات الاستفهام)

1- Yes, No question السؤال بـ(هل)

- Did you go to the park ? — Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.
- Have you got a camera ? — Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
- Can she speak English ? — Yes, she can. / No, she can't.

2- Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام مثل:

ex.:
- What are you doing now ? — I am reading a story.
- When do you go to school ? — At seven o'clock.
- Where did Salma go yesterday ? — To the market.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It was my birthday .... Saturday. (SB page 3)
   a. next b. ago c. last d. in
2. I .... a haircut two weeks ago. (SB page 3)
   a. have b. had c. has d. have had
3. I .... bowling last weekend. (SB page 2)
   a. go b. goes c. have gone d. went
4. He .... the bus to the city last Sunday. (WB page 71)
   a. takes b. take c. took d. has taken
5. They .... the sports centre two weeks ago. (WB page 71)
   a. visited b. visits c. had visited d. visit



6. .... you go to the park ? -Yes, I did. (SB page 7)
   a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Were
7. .... did you go to the museum ? - Four days ago. (SB page 7)
   a. How b. What c. When d. Why
8. .... do you go to school ? -At 7 : 00 a.m. (WB page 72)
   a. Where b. How c. What time d. Why
9. .... go shopping last weekend ? (WB page 72)
   a. Are you b. Do you c. Have you d. Did you

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I **ride** the big wheel last weekend. (SB page 2) (........................)
2. I went to the museum a week **past**. (SB page 3) (........................)
3. Yesterday, it **were** my friend Dalia's birthday. (WB page 71) (........................)
4. **Do** you go to the park yesterday ? (SB page 7) (........................)

Unit 8

(Comparative and superlative adjectives) صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

- الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي
- I live in a big city. — قبل الاسم الموصوف
- My city is big. — v. to be بعد

Comparing adjectives مقارنة الصفات

1 للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم :

adj الصفة القصيرة + er + than

- Cairo is noisier than the countryside.

2 للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم :

more / less + adj (الصفة الطويلة) + than

- The countryside is more relaxing than the city.

AltFwok.com

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

❸ عند المقارنة بين فرد / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم :

the + adj الصفة القصيرة + est

- Cairo is the biggest city in Africa.

❹ عند المقارنة بين فرد / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم :

the most / the least + adj الصفة الطويلة

- The lion is the most dangerous animal.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My friend lives .... to the school than me. (page 15)
   a. nearest b. near c. nearer d. as near
2. Cheese is .... for you than sweets. (page 78)
   a. good b. as good c. better d. best
3. I think the blue dress is .... than the red dress. (page 78)
   a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
4. The museum is usually .... crowded on Saturday than on Sunday. (page 78)
   a. more b. many c. the most d. most
5. My cousins felt .... after they moved to a new flat. (page 78)
   a. happier b. happiest
   c. more happier d. most happiest
6. Mountain climbing is .... dangerous sport of all. (page 17)
   a. the b. the most c. more d. less
7. My sister is the .... in our family. (page 17)
   a. tallest b. tall c. taller d. as tall
8. Some people think that maths is the .... difficult subject. (page 17)
   a. more b. less c. as d. most
9. Vegetables are the .... food. (page 79)
   a. healthy b. healthier
   c. healthiest d. less healthy



Read and correct the underlined words :

1. An elephant is **big** than a camel. (page 78) (..................)
2. Adel is **tall** than Rami. (page 78) (..................)
3. Cairo is **crowded** than Aswan. (page 15) (..................)
4. The local markets are the **noisy** places. (page 79) (..................)
5. I think going to the museum is the **good** place for a holiday. (page 79) (..................)

Unit 9

❶ "be going to + inf." for future plans.

١. استخدام (be going to + inf.) للخطط المستقبلية.

We use (be going to) when we already know our plans for the future.

نستخدم (be going to) عندما نكون على دراية بخطط للمستقبل.

ex.: - I'm going to visit Sinai.
- What are you going to do ?
- Are you going to try rock climbing ?
- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.

❷ Reflexive Pronouns :

٢. الضمائر المنعكسة :

- تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة :

(١) للتأكيد.

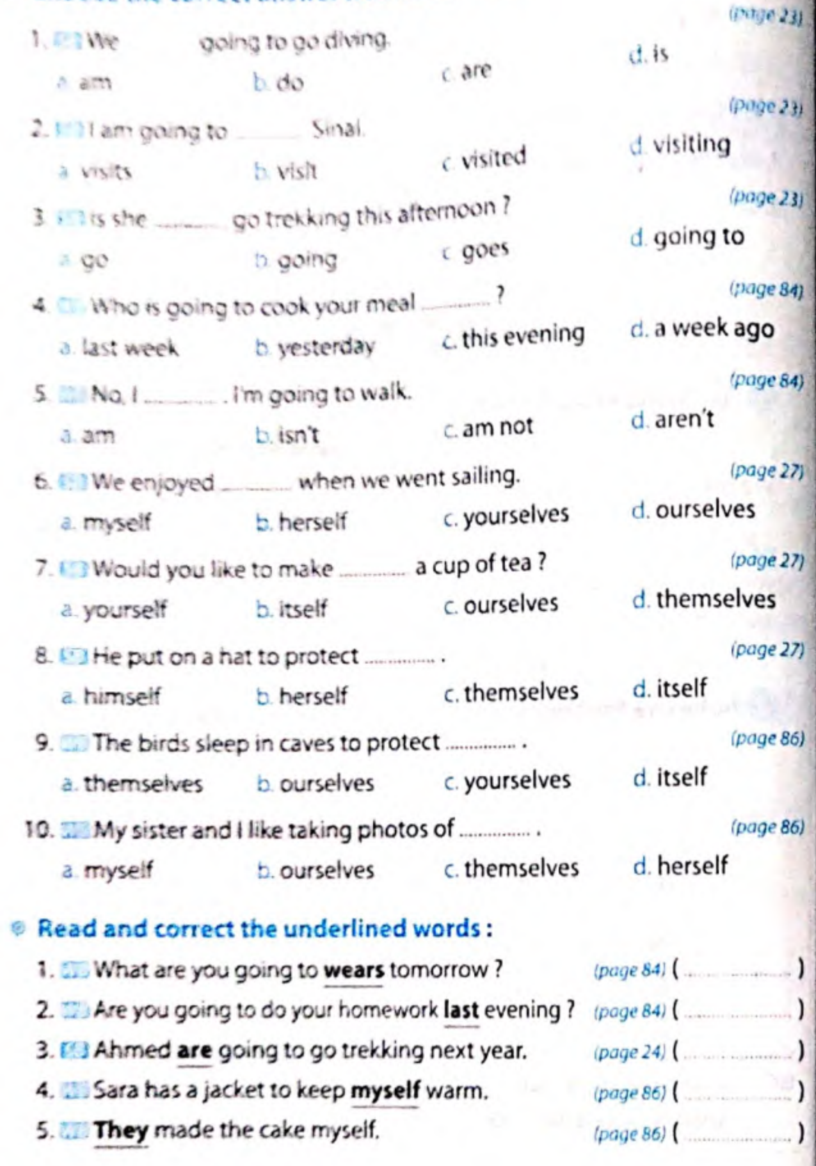
(٢) عندما يكون المفعول هو نفسه فاعل الجملة.

I	→	myself	You	→	yourself / yourselves
He	→	himself	We	→	ourselves
She	→	herself	They	→	themselves
It	→	itself			

ex.: - Soha painted the picture herself.
- Nobody helped me. I did it myself.

AltFwoK.com

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We .... going to go diving. *(page 23)*
   a. am b. do c. are d. is
2. I am going to .... Sinai. *(page 23)*
   a. visits b. visit c. visited d. visiting
3. Is she .... go trekking this afternoon ? *(page 23)*
   a. go b. going c. goes d. going to
4. Who is going to cook your meal .... ? *(page 84)*
   a. last week b. yesterday c. this evening d. a week ago
5. No, I .... I'm going to walk. *(page 84)*
   a. am b. isn't c. am not d. aren't
6. We enjoyed .... when we went sailing. *(page 27)*
   a. myself b. herself c. yourselves d. ourselves
7. Would you like to make .... a cup of tea ? *(page 27)*
   a. yourself b. itself c. ourselves d. themselves
8. He put on a hat to protect .... *(page 27)*
   a. himself b. herself c. themselves d. itself
9. The birds sleep in caves to protect .... *(page 86)*
   a. themselves b. ourselves c. yourselves d. itself
10. My sister and I like taking photos of .... *(page 86)*
    a. myself b. ourselves c. themselves d. herself

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What are you going to **wears** tomorrow ? *(page 84)* (..................)
2. Are you going to do your homework **last** evening ? *(page 84)* (..................)
3. Ahmed **are** going to go trekking next year. *(page 24)* (..................)
4. Sara has a jacket to keep **myself** warm. *(page 86)* (..................)
5. **They** made the cake myself. *(page 86)* (..................)

Unit 10

1 [be made of] to describe the material of an object

١. تستخدم (be made of) لوصف المادة التى تُصنع منها الأشياء.

ex.: - The chair is made of wood.
- The cushions are made of cotton.
- What is the bag made of ?

2 Using "will" and "won't" for future predictions

٢. استخدام (will) و (won't) للتنبؤات المستقبلية :

Usage : الاستخدام

• تستخدم "will" عند التنبؤ بما سيحدث فى المستقبل بدون دليل.

- I will be late for school.

• تستخدم "won't" عند التنبؤ بما لن يحدث فى المستقبل بدون دليل.

- I think we won't live on the moon.

Formation : التكوين

Subject الفاعل + will / won't + inf. مصدر الفعل ....

- I think we will live in space stations in the future.
- Electric cars won't use petrol in the future.

Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام

a. Yes / No question السؤال بـ «هل» ؟

Will + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل .... ?

ex.: - Will we have small electric cars in the future ?
Yes, we will. No, we won't

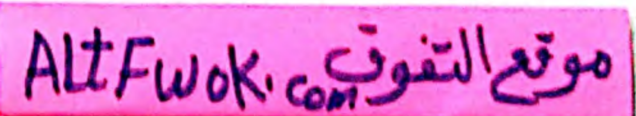
b. Wh / question السؤال بـ «أداة الاستفهام» ؟

Question word + will + subject + inf. .... ?

ex.: - Where will you go at the weekend ?
To the funfair.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The cushions are .... of cotton. *(page 33)*
   a. make b. made c. making d. makes



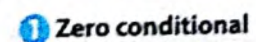
ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2. What .... your bag made of ? *(page 35)*
   a. are b. am c. is d. were
3. The table is made .... wood. *(page 32)*
   a. of b. in c. into d. on
4. A car door .... made of metal. *(page 93)*
   a. is b. were c. are d. did
5. Expensive car seats .... of leather. *(page 93)*
   a. make b. are made c. are making d. made
6. We will .... to the moon in the future. *(page 38)*
   a. go b. going c. gone d. goes
7. .... there be ordinary mobiles in the future ? *(page 38)*
   a. Is b. Have c. Will d. Are
8. What will they .... there ? *(page 95)*
   a. did b. doing c. do d. does
9. Will there be electric cars in the future ? *(page 38)*
   - Yes, there ....
   a. won't b. was c. is d. will

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. There **was** be a swimming pool soon. *(page 38)* (..................)
2. It will **been** made of wood. *(page 38)* (..................)
3. No, we **will**. We will use land telephones. *(page 38)* (..................)
4. What's your pencil case **make** of ? *(page 35)* (..................)
5. They are **making** of stone. *(page 99)* (..................)

Unit 11



1 Zero conditional - الحالة الصفرية.

Usage :

- To talk about facts : • تستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق :
  - If / When you add two and two, you get four.

Formation : التكوين

If / when → Present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , Present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

- If / When I don't know a word, I use my dictionary.

Present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) → If / when → Present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

- The game starts if / when you touch the screen.

Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام

• تستخدم أيضًا (if / when) فى صيغة الاستفهام :

- Do you feel ill if / when you eat too quickly ?
- What do you feel if / when you eat too quickly ?
- What happens if / when you eat too quickly ?

2 must / mustn't + inf مصدر الفعل

• تستخدم must للإلزام والضرورة.

ex.: - We must save our planet.

• تستخدم mustn't للمنع والتحريم للأشياء الغير مصرح بها.

ex.: - We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.

3 "should & shouldn't" for advice :

- إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام "should & shouldn't" بمعنى ينبغى أن / لا ينبغى أن.

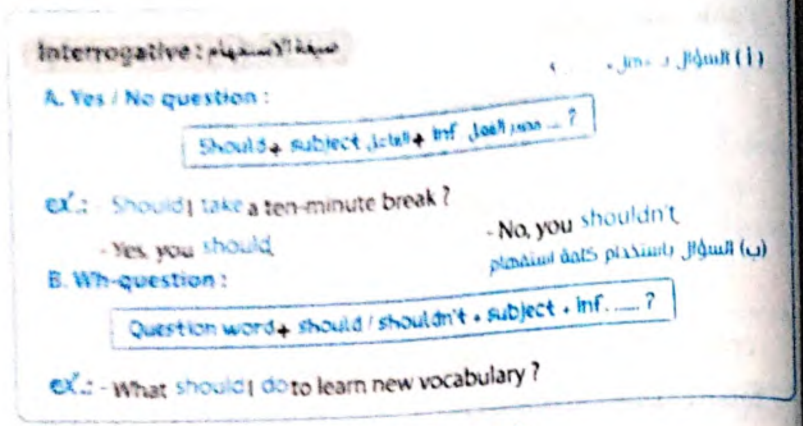
Formation : التكوين

Subject + should / shouldn't + inf.

ex.: - You should study hard.
- You shouldn't waste your time.

AltFlouk.com موقع الفلوك

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام

(أ) السؤال بـ نعم أو لا :

A. Yes / No question :

Should + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر .... ?

ex.: - Should I take a ten-minute break ?

- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

B. Wh-question :

Question word + should / shouldn't + subject + inf. .... ?

ex.: - What should I do to learn new vocabulary ?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you. *(Page 45)*
   a. sting b. stings c. stung d. stinging
2. The octopus swims away fast .... it's in danger. *(Page 45)*
   a. what b. where c. how d. when
3. When I .... ill, I go to bed. *(Page 100)*
   a. feel b. feeling c. feels d. felt
4. If my sister .... a lot of TV, she feels tired. *(Page 100)*
   a. watch b. watches c. watching d. watched
5. If I don't water the plants in our garden, they .... *(Page 100)*
   a. died b. dying c. die d. dies
6. We .... play games on roads. *(Page 47)*
   a. must b. should c. mustn't d. have to
7. You .... share your ideas with others. *(Page 49)*
   a. can't b. should c. shouldn't d. mustn't
8. We .... be angry with people you don't agree with. *(Page 49)*
   a. mustn't b. must c. should d. can
9. When you cross a road, you .... find a safe place to cross. *(Page 101)*
   a. shouldn't b. must c. mustn't d. can't
10. You mustn't run across the road. You .... walk. *(Page 101)*
    a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. can't d. must

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. When it **be** very cold, water turns to ice. *(Page 100)* (.........)
2. When my grandfather is tired, he **went** to bed. *(Page 100)* (.........)
3. We **mustn't** save our planet ! *(Page 46)* (.........)
4. The animals **must** eat plastic. It is very bad for them. *(Page 48)* (.........)
5. We **should** use plastic bags just once. *(Page 47)* (.........)

Unit 12

1 Relative pronoun (Who) ضمير الوصل (who)

- يمكننا الربط بين جملتين عن فاعلهما عاقل باستخدام ضمير الوصل **Who**

ex.: - The teacher is a person. He teaches students.

- The teacher is a person who teaches students.

ex.: - A businessman is someone who works in an office.

2 Question Tag : السؤال المذيل

Formation : التكوين

جملة خبرية مثبتة ⟶ , فعل مساعد منفي + ضمير فاعل ?
جملة خبرية منفية ⟶ , فعل مساعد مثبت + ضمير فاعل ?

- لاحظ : السؤال المذيل يكون بمعنى أليس كذلك.
  لابد أن يكتب بصيغة مختصرة وليست كاملة.

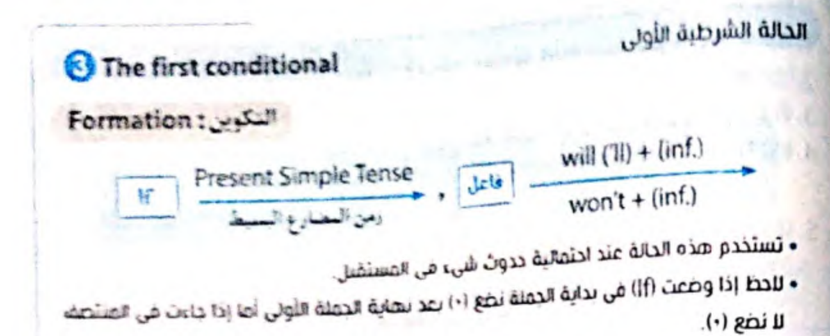
, does not he ? ⟹ , doesn't he ?

- يستخدم السؤال المذيل للتحقق أو التأكد من شئ نعرفه.

- She is clever, isn't she ?
  Yes, she is.
- They aren't lazy, are they ?
  No, they aren't.
- Mona speaks English, doesn't she ?
- Hala wrote the lesson, didn't she ?
- He has a black car, doesn't he ?
- He has written the lesson, hasn't he ?
- She never plays tennis, does she ?

- لاحظ إذا كانت (has / have) أفعال أساسية يكون السؤال المذيل لها باستخدام "does / do".
- لاحظ الجملة المثبتة يجاب عنها بـ "Yes" والجملة المنفية يجاب عنها بـ "No".

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



3 The first conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Formation : التكوين

If + Present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , فاعل + will ('ll) + (inf.) / won't + (inf.)

- تستخدم هذه الحالة عند احتمالية حدوث شيء في المستقبل.
- لاحظ إذا وضعت (If) في بداية الجملة نضع (،) بعد نهاية الجملة الأولى أما إذا جاءت في المنتصف لا نضع (،).

- If Adel studies hard, he will pass the test.
- If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.
- You won't pass the exam if you don't study hard.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A pilot is a person .... flies a plane. *(Page 55)*
   a. who b. where c. when d. which
2. A photographer is a person .... takes photos. *(Page 55)*
   a. which b. whose c. when d. who
3. A teacher is a person .... teaches students. *(Page 55)*
   a. which b. whose c. who d. when
4. Hany is the boy .... lives next door to me. *(Page 107)*
   a. which b. where c. who d. when
5. My best friend is a person .... is very good at sport. *(Page 107)*
   a. where b. which c. when d. who
6. She wants to be a marine biologist, ... she ? *(Page 108)*
   a. does b. isn't c. don't d. doesn't
7. Your name is Nawal, ... it ? *(Page 108)*
   a. aren't b. isn't c. can't d. is
8. There weren't many people at the match, ... there ? *(Page 108)*
   a. weren't b. aren't c. were d. is

9. You don't like fish, ... you ? *(Page 57)*
   a. don't b. does c. have d. do
10. You won't forget to phone me, ... you ? *(Page 57)*
   a. will b. are c. can d. do

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Mohamed Salah is a footballer **when** scores a lot of goals. *(Page 107)* (........)
2. Mr Gamal is the teacher **where** teaches us maths. *(Page 107)* (........)
3. It is cold in England, **is** it ? *(Page 108)* (........)
4. Your grandfather lived in a big city, **doesn't** he ? *(Page 108)* (........)
5. She never speaks French, **doesn't** she ? *(Page 108)* (........)

General Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ali had lunch with his sister Sara ....
   a. tomorrow b. next week c. yesterday d. now
2. Did you watch the match yesterday ? - Yes, I ....
   a. was b. did c. do d. have
3. Akram is going .... Cairo tomorrow.
   a. visit b. visited c. to visit d. visiting
4. The queen .... welcomed us.
   a. himself b. themselves c. itself d. herself
5. If you .... your lessons well, you will get high marks.
   a. studied b. studies c. study d. studying
6. Mrs Hala thanked all the teachers, ... she ?
   a. did b. doesn't c. didn't d. isn't
7. Alexandria is the .... beautiful city in Egypt.
   a. more b. more than c. most d. less

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

8. If you boil water, it .... into steam.
a. turn b. turns c. turning d. will turn

9. .... got the gold medal ? - Hassan.
a. When b. Whose c. Where d. Who

10. Be careful ! You are going to cut ....
a. himself b. yourself c. themselves d. itself

11. Tomorrow, they're .... to send the e-mails to us.
a. going b. went c. go d. gone

12. How was your weekend ? - It .... great.
a. are b. was c. were d. is

13. We .... help old people.
a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. don't have to

14. Chairs .... made of wood.
a. am b. is c. are d. was

15. There .... be electric cars in the future.
a. will b. have c. has d. had

16. A doctor is a person .... looks after sick people.
a. who b. when c. where d. whose

17. Ali has a car, ... he ?
a. does b. doesn't c. hasn't d. has

18. What's your shirt made .... ?
a. on b. of c. up d. into

19. Tamer has got .... orange juice in class.
a. less b. least c. the least d. little

20. English is .... than Arabic.
a. difficult b. most difficult
c. the most difficult d. more difficult

21. Ibrahim is .... than Retaj.
a. tall b. taller c. tallest d. the tallest

22. You .... make noise in hospitals.
a. mustn't b. must c. have to d. should

23. I .... something to drink when I'm thirsty.
a. have b. has c. hasn't d. had

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Mr Khalid is a person **where** teaches us social studies. (....................)
2. Judy will visit the Pyramids tomorrow, **will** she ? (....................)
3. I think she won't **had** a mobile. (....................)
4. The blue car is the **more** modern of all. (....................)
5. Mona is more beautiful **then** Salma. (....................)
6. Pupils must **studies** their lessons. (....................)
7. Lama is going to **visiting** the park. (....................)
8. When are you **go** to visit the zoo ? (....................)
9. Salma and Sama are twins, **don't** they ? (....................)
10. I think it will **rains** tomorrow. (....................)
11. What will **happens** if you run fast ? (....................)
12. Mr Khalid visited his daughter 3 days **tomorrow**. (....................)
13. **Where** does the match start ? - At five o'clock. (....................)
14. The bag was **cheapest** than the desk. (....................)
15. The traffic is **most** crowded today than yesterday. (....................)
16. You **mustn't** be quiet in the library. (....................)
17. Did you go to the zoo ? - No, I **can't**. (....................)
18. She can ride her bike **himself** . (....................)
19. The dog can see **themselves** in water. (....................)
20. What should you **did** if it is cold ? (....................)
21. What are the shirts **make** of ? (....................)
22. The ground **became** wet if it rains. (....................)
23. The door **are** made of wood. (....................)
24. I **have** a haircut two weeks ago. (....................)

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

٣. اهم الفقرات الانشائية

III Important Paragraphs

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

يكتب الطالب موضوعًا إنشائيًا من ثمانين كلمة ويعتبر هذا السؤال من الأسئلة التى تحتاج الى مزيد من التدريب ولذلك نقدم لك موضوعات إنشائية هامة لكل وحدة كما يمكنك مراجعة موضوعات أخرى بإجاباتها النموذجية فى نهاية كتاب الشرح.

Unit 7

1 "A new house"

Last month our family moved to a new house in Cairo. The house is big and has a nice garden. I liked it very much. My family planted some trees and flowers in the garden. I went to buy a new school uniform for my new school. People there were nice and kind. I made many new friends in the school. My best friend is called Ahmed. He was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen. I was very happy.

2 "Your last weekend"

My last weekend was fantastic. I went to Ahmed 's house on Sunday and we played football in the park. It was a lot of fun. We had lunch together. It was delicious. In the afternoon, we went to the sports centre. We played tennis. There was a really big swimming pool. We swam in it. We had a nice time at the sports centre. In the evening, we went shopping. I bought a T-shirt and shoes for my young sister.

3 "Music"

Music is very nice. I like music very much. There are many kinds of music like jazz, pop, rock and traditional. I like jazz music. I play the trumpet in a jazz band. When I was seven, I learned to play the piano. I like it too much. When I was ten, I learned the trumpet. I like the sound of the trumpet. I don't like pop or rock music. They are very loud. I want to be a musician one day. My favourite musician is Marvin Allstar.

4 "Your day"

Yesterday was a terrible day for me. My baby sister woke me up at 5 a.m. I felt so tired. I went to the kitchen, but there was no milk or bread. I went to buy food, but the shops were all closed. I didn't do my homework because my laptop stopped working. I planned to have a barbecue but there was a lot of wind. In the evening, I went to the stadium to watch a football match. My team lost the match. I was very sad.

Unit 8

5 "The Tahya Masr Bridge"

Tahya Masr Bridge is the world 's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. More than 4.000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile 's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

6 "The Egyptian Museum"

The Egyptian Museum is the oldest museum in Cairo. It opened in 1835. There were more than 16,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. So we needed a new bigger museum. In 2019, the Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors. It is further from the city centre than the old museum. But it is two km from the Pyramids at Giza. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance.

7 "A wonderful holiday"

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. We visited the Valley of the Kings in Luxor. It is one of the most popular places for tourists. We saw many of them there. The place is quiet in the early morning but it gets busier later

AltFwok.com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

during the day. The biggest place there is the Karnak Temple. There 's a nice and quiet place called Habu Temple. It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but it is less crowded. I liked it most.

Unit 9

8

"A future plan for holiday"

Next year, I am going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a great adventure. I'm going to go with my friends. We are going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families. We are going to have a guide to help us find the way and a camel to carry food and water. We are going to climb Mount Catherine. The journey is going to take me around forty five days.

9

"An adventure sport"

Last year, I went to South Africa with my family. It was beautiful there. Our first day was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. When we started, it was sunny. But when we reached the top of the mountain, there were dark clouds. After that, the rain began and there was a storm. The rocks were wet and my brother fell down and hurt himself. The following days, the weather was better. I went zip lining. I was a bit frightened, but I was excited.

Unit 10

10

"Deir el-Medina"

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt. The people in this village worked in the Valley of the Kings. The doors of their houses were made of wood and the walls were made of bricks. The people painted their houses white and the doors red. The houses had a kitchen and a living room. People slept on the roof because there weren't any bedrooms. It was very hot at night. They got their water from the Nile valley because there weren't any taps.

11

"Technology in the future"

In the future, we will go to the moon for our holiday instead of the beach. There will be rockets that leave Earth every day. The rockets will be very fast, so the journey will take only around twelve hours. There will be also driverless cars. People will not drive a car. It will be safer. People will read a book or watch TV when the computer in the car drives it. There will be drones to bring food and parcels to the houses.

Unit 11

12

"Sea animals"

There are a lot of animals that live in the sea. Some sea animals are dangerous like sharks. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life. A stingray is a big, flat fish. When it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Some sea animals are poisonous and sting you when you touch them like the jellyfish.

13

"Plastic"

Plastic is important ! We use it for many things. We must put the plastic in the trash bin. We mustn't throw plastic on the beaches. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. More than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. We must use other materials like paper and glass. Paper and glass are easier to recycle. We must do our best to save our planet.

14

"Planting a tree"

We plant trees to keep our environment clean. Trees make the air healthy. There are many steps to plant a tree. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot. Press your finger to make a hole and put the seed in the hole and cover it with

AltFwok.com

CamScanner ـب ةحوسمم ًايئوض

soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. Water it every day but don't give it too much water.

15 **"Nature reserve"**

We have nature reserves to protect our birds, plants and animals. Many animals live here so we must be careful about what we do. We mustn't make a lot of noise. Noise makes animals feel frightened. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve because there are animals and birds that live in the plants next to the road. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. We must take all our rubbish with us when we leave.

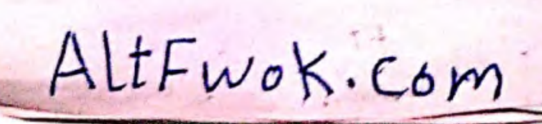
Unit 12

16 **"My dream job"**

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He is an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines and engines. My uncle designs engines for planes. I like his job so much. I'd like to be an engineer one day. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard to achieve my dream. I want to get a good job and do many projects.

17 **"A marine biologist's job"**

A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it. He is good at science and he loves the ocean. The ocean has many animals that are really beautiful and interesting. So the marine biologist does many researches to help protect the plants and animals in the ocean. In his job, every day is different ! Some days, he goes diving around coral reefs. On other days, he tests water from the ocean in the laboratory.



DAY 4 General Exercises collected from SB & WB

تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

Unit 7

Exercise Based on Vocabulary — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I saw a / an .... about dolphins in the aquarium. (SB page 2)
   a. funfair b. exhibition c. sports centre d. match
2. It .... three hours to move from our house in Cairo to Alexandria.
   a. made b. took c. gave d. lost (SB page 4)
3. We had lunch together in the school .... (SB page 4)
   a. laboratory b. library c. canteen d. uniform
4. What .... of music do you like ? - Jazz. (SB page 6)
   a. colour b. type c. subject d. age
5. One day a ship .... because there was a really terrible storm.
   a. thanked b. sank c. thought d. passed (SB page 8)
6. We learnt a lot about the Earth and the moon at the ....
   a. funfair b. aquarium
   c. bowling alley d. planetarium (WB page 70)
7. The balls are very heavy at the .... alley. (WB page 70)
   a. aquarium b. planetarium c. bowling d. stadium
8. What activities should they .... for Ismail's birthday ? (WB page 71)
   a. make b. do c. take d. give
9. I like .... , but it is difficult to open them ! (WB page 73)
   a. bananas b. apples c. coconuts d. oranges
10. A / An .... is the person who travels on ships or boats for a job.
    a. vet b. sailor c. nurse d. engineer (WB page 76)

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Exercises Based on Structures
Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Hassan moved to Cairo in 2009. That was thirteen years .... (WB page 70)
   a. tomorrow b. next week c. ago d. since
2. Did you go to the park ? Yes, I .... (SB page 7)
   a. do b. did c. am d. does
3. I watched a film .... It was interesting. (WB page 74)
   a. next week b. tomorrow c. now d. last night
4. .... type of music does he like ? He likes pop music. (SB page 7)
   a. When b. What c. Whose d. Where
5. .... you got a new school bag ? No, I haven't. (WB page 76)
   a. Did b. Do c. Have d. Has

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Who did Adam **did** these things with ? (SB page 5) (..........)
2. What year **is** it four years ago ? (WB page 70) (..........)
3. It **is** terrible because my team lost 5 - 2. (SB page 9) (..........)
4. You went to the beach **next** week. (WB page 74) (..........)

Unit 8

Exercise Based on Vocabulary
Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How .... is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia ? - It's 601 m. (SB page 13)
   a. deep b. long c. high d. many
2. My friend lives .... to school than me. He goes to school on foot. (SB page 15)
   a. heavier b. further c. nearer d. longer

3. The best time to cross the Tahya Masr Bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful .... of the city. (SB page 16)
   a. space b. point c. sign d. view
4. It's important to be polite when you .... your opinion. (SB page 18)
   a. make b. take c. give d. ask
5. There were more than 160.000 of Egypt's most valuable .... on display. (SB page 19)
   a. pleasures b. treasures c. measures d. pressures
6. The 6th October Bridge .... the two Nile banks. (WB page 77)
   a. cuts b. takes c. links d. opens
7. I think .... climbing is the most dangerous sport. (WB page 79)
   a. tree b. mountain c. wall d. cave
8. I .... two hours in Al-Azhar Park. (WB page 82)
   a. spent b. saved c. gave d. did
9. What's your opinion of .... a sport every week ? (WB page 80)
   a. making b. doing c. eating d. giving

Exercises Based on Structures
Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Cairo is .... than Aswan . (SB page 15)
   a. crowded b. most crowded c. more crowded d. the most crowded
2. Mountain climbing is .... sport of all. (SB page 17)
   a. dangerous b. more dangerous c. most dangerous d. the most dangerous
3. A lion is .... than a horse. (WB page 82)
   a. stronger b. strongest c. strong d. the strongest
4. The Nile is .... river in the world. (SB page 21)
   a. long b. the longest c. longer d. longest

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What is the **better** book you can think of ? (SB page 18) (..........)

AltFwok.com

CamScanner ضوئيا بـ

2. Adel is tall, but Rami is **tallest**. (WB page 78) (............)

3. Ice skating is **safest** than skiing. (SB page 17) (............)

4. The **bigger** place we went to was the Karnak Temple. (SB page 20) (............)

Unit 9

Exercise Based on Vocabulary — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. On his way down, Tamer .... over and hurt himself. (SB page 26)
   a. took b. fell c. made d. gave
2. It's .... to respect older people. (WB page 115)
   a. difficult b. important
   c. ugly d. unimportant
3. Imad .... diving last year. (SB page 23)
   a. made b. went c. gave d. took
4. " .... " is a sport or a hobby where one or two people travel in a narrow boat. (WB page 120)
   a. Diving b. Kayaking c. Trekking d. Swimming
5. You start really high, but you finish on the ground very fast in ....
   a. swimming b. driving c. trekking d. zip lining (WB page 84)

Exercise Based on Structures — Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Is Reem going to .... trekking this afternoon ? (SB page 23)
   a. going b. goes c. went d. go
2. The birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles. (WB page 86)
   a. myself b. ourselves c. themselves d. yourselves
3. We enjoyed .... when we went sailing. (SB page 27)
   a. himself b. themselves c. ourselves d. myself

4. I'd prefer .... tennis. (WB page 88)
   a. playing b. play c. plays d. to play
5. I'd rather .... chess.
   a. playing b. play c. plays d. to play

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Whose** about going to the park ? (SB page 29) (............)
2. What **is** you going to wear tomorrow ? (WB page 84) (............)
3. Mona drew **himself** a picture. (SB page 31) (............)
4. We're really enjoying **herself** on our holiday. (WB page 25) (............)

Unit 10

Exercise Based on Vocabulary — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The .... is made of glass and plastic. (SB page 35)
   a. curtain b. cup c. television d. sofa
2. The .... are made of cotton. (SB page 33)
   a. televisions b. tables c. cushions d. lamps
3. .... design new buildings. (SB page 38)
   a. Teachers b. Doctors c. Carpenters d. Architects
4. What will your future house .... like ? (SB page 42)
   a. put b. take c. look d. make
5. The .... is made of metal. (WB page 93)
   a. shoe b. dress c. jumper d. knife
6. " .... " are used to cook food or bread. (WB page 94)
   a. Fridges b. Ovens c. Taps d. TVs
7. Some houses fell to the ground after the .... (WB page 96)
   a. achievement b. earthquake c. space d. description

CamScanner حة ضوئيا بـ

Exercise Based on Structures

Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What .... the things in the photos made of ? (SB page 34)
   a. am b. is c. are d. was
2. I think we will .... under the sea.
   a. lived b. live c. living d. lives
3. Will she .... a garden on the roof ? (WB page 95)
   a. has b. had c. having d. have
4. Will there .... ordinary mobiles in the future ? (SB page 38)
   a. is b. are c. be d. were
5. In 2080, you .... go to the beach for your holiday. (SB page 39)
   a. won't b. won't be c. won't have d. will have

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The wall **are** made of stone. (SB page 35) (..................)
2. What will holidays **been** like in the future ? (WB page 98) (..................)
3. The journey will **took** only 12 hours. (SB page 39) (..................)
4. My bed is made **up** wood. (WB page 93) (..................)

Unit 11

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The .... is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.
   a. dolphin b. turtle c. shark d. lizard (SB page 45)
2. The .... has got eight legs to help it swim fast. (SB page 45)
   a. turtle b. octopus c. jellyfish d. whale
3. When a turtle is in danger, it .... into its shell. (SB page 45)
   a. climbs b. goes c. takes d. makes
4. The .... has a hard shell to protect it. (WB page 100)
   a. snake b. jellyfish c. fly d. turtle

5. Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun. (WB page 101)
   a. plants b. planes c. planets d. plans

Exercises Based on Structures

Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We .... water if it rains. (SB page 45)
   a. get b. got c. getting d. gets
2. When it is very cold, water .... into ice. (WB page 100)
   a. turning b. turns c. turned d. turn
3. We must .... our planet. (SB page 46)
   a. saved b. save c. saves d. saving
4. You .... share your ideas with others. (WB page 102)
   a. should b. shouldn't
   c. mustn't d. don't have to
5. What should I .... first ? (SB page 50)
   a. did b. done c. do d. doing

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. When I'm hungry, I **had** something to eat. (SB page 45) (..................)
2. Leila feels ill if she **travel** on a boat. (WB page 106) (..................)
3. Why must we **cleaned** the beaches ? (SB page 52) (..................)
4. You **mustn't** listen to other students' ideas. (WB page 102) (..................)

Unit 12

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. An engineer is a person who .... machines and engines. (SB page 55)
   a. plays b. acts c. designs d. cooks
2. It's not nice to go out in a boat for a .... when there's a storm.
   a. diver b. driver c. ride d. dive (SB page 56)

AltFwok.com

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

3. You should ______ hard to pass your exams. (SB page 59)
   a. do   b. make   c. work   d. give
4. It's important to ______ your time well. (SB page 61)
   a. play   b. plain   c. plan   d. plant
5. The ______'s job is to look after people's teeth. (WB page 107)
   a. vet   b. scientist   c. engineer   d. dentist
6. Mariam got the ______ of her test. She did very well ! (WB page 108)
   a. desert   b. dessert   c. result   d. visit

Exercises Based on Structures — Student's Book & Workbook

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A businessman is a man ______ works in an office and goes to meetings. (SB page 55)
   a. whose   b. who   c. which   d. when
2. Sara wants to be a marine biologist, ______ she ? (WB page 108)
   a. isn't   b. doesn't   c. does   d. didn't
3. If I don't work hard, I ______ pass my exams. (SB page 59)
   a. won't   b. will   c. would   d. could
4. Where will you live if you ______ a good job ? (WB page 109)
   a. get   b. got   c. gets   d. getting
5. You like your job, ______ you ? (SB page 57)
   a. doesn't   b. do   c. don't   d. didn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. A nurse is a person **when** looks after sick people. (SB page 55) (______)
2. Your grandfather **doesn't** live in a big city, did he ? (WB page 108) (______)
3. It isn't hot today, **doesn't** it ? (SB page 57) (______)
4. Where **would** you go if you take a holiday ? (WB page 113) (______)

DAYS 5, 6 & 7

1. End of Term Practice

١ تدريبات من كتاب التدريبات

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. What does the woman want to buy ?
   a. A newspaper   b. A new bag
   c. A new phone   d. Some photographs
2. The thing she decides to buy is ______ .
   a. large and expensive   b. small and expensive
   c. small and cheap   d. large and cheap
3. What does the assistant ask the woman about ?
   a. Her name   b. Her job   c. Her hobbies   d. The price
4. The woman is a ______ .
   a. photographer   b. painter
   c. journalist   d. doctor

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tarek : You're going to go to university in September, aren't you ?

Ali : Yes, but (1) ______ I go to university, I want to improve my English.

Tarek : How are you going to do that ?

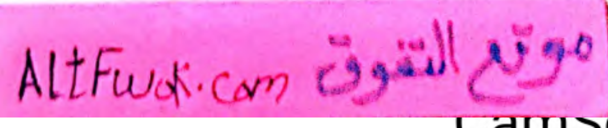
Ali : (2) ______ , I'm going to travel to England in the summer holidays. Then, I'm going to a language school.

Tarek : Why don't you go to the USA to learn English ? In my (3) ______ , American English is easier.

Ali : I'm not (4) ______ . It's expensive to go there. I'd rather go to London.

Tarek : You went there before, didn't you ? (5) ______ was it there ?

Ali : It was great. It was really interesting.



حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

DAYS 5, 6 & 7

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. **It** is not made of bricks like most mosques. It is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often find at the bottom of a river. It is very soft in water. If you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is usually very strong, but there is a problem. People must put new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will **collapse** when it rains! There are always enough people to do this because the people who help get respect for their work.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When it is dry, mud becomes ....
   a. soft b. hard and strong
   c. difficult to use d. very old
2. What do you think the word «**collapse**» means ?
   a. fall down b. get bigger
   c. disappear d. turn to water
3. The underlined word **"It"** refers to ....
   a. mud b. Africa
   c. Mali d. The Great Mosque in Mali

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

5. Do you think we should keep ancient buildings ? Why ? Why not ?

....

6. What is unusual about the Great Mosque in Mali ?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Most windows are made of ....
   a. wool b. glass c. cotton d. paper
2. You can usually .... paper, so don't throw it away.
   a. recycle b. cycle c. heat d. hit

3. We are going to go .... across Sinai.
   a. trekking b. tricking c. fishing d. swimming
4. We decided to play basketball at the sports ....
   a. match b. wheel c. funfair d. centre
5. The teacher asked the students to work in pairs and .... a quiz.
   a. throw b. do c. make d. let
6. The story is interesting, ... it ?
   a. does b. doesn't c. isn't d. is
7. I hope we .... to the moon in the future.
   a. will go b. are going to go c. went d. going
8. The old car is .... than the new car.
   a. noise b. more noise c. noisier d. noisiest
9. Children usually enjoy .... when they play on the beach.
   a. themselves b. herself c. ourselves d. himself
10. Khalid went to the park ten minutes ....
   a. since b. then c. ago d. next

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

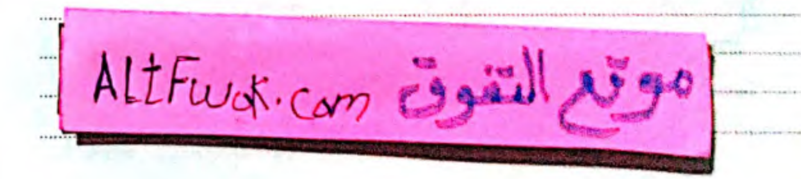
1. If I feel tired, I usually **will go** to bed. (................)
2. My uncle is a **seller** ; he works on a big ship. (................)
3. A doctor is someone **which** looks after sick people. (................)
4. Which animals have a **shall** or a tail ? (................)

6 Write a paragraph of Eighty (80) words on .

"How to keep a beach clean"

- Start with a topic sentence.
- Write details on how to keep a beach clean.
- Write a short conclusion.

....



....

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

DAYS 5,6&7

2. Governorates Exams

٢. امتحانات من المحافظات المختارة

1 Cairo Governorate — El Basateen Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى محادثة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Lina talks about her ....
   a. birthday b. holiday c. weekend d. vacation
2. Lina's team .... the match.
   a. won b. lost c. got d. arrived
3. Lina watched a .... match.
   a. football b. basketball c. volleyball d. tennis
4. Lina watched the match ....
   a. on TV b. at school c. at the stadium d. at the park

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer asks his friend Tarek about his favourite hobby.

Tamer : What's your favourite hobby ?

Tarek : (1) ....

Tamer : When did you start playing music ?

Tarek : (2) ....

Tamer : (3) .... ?

Tarek : I like playing the trumpet.

Tamer : Why do you like it ?

Tarek : (4) ....

Tamer : (5) .... ?

Tarek : My uncle taught me to play the trumpet. He is a famous musician.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. **It** is not made of bricks like most mosques. It is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often find at the bottom of a river. It is very soft in water. If you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is usually very strong, but there is a problem. People must put new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will **collapse** when it rains ! There are always enough people to do this because the people who help get respect for their work.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When it is dry, mud becomes ....
   a. soft b. hard and strong c. difficult to use d. very old
2. What does the word **"collapse"** mean ?
   a. fall down b. get bigger c. disappear d. turn to water
3. The underlined pronoun **"It"** refers to ....
   a. the Great Pyramid b. the Great Mosque c. Luxor Temple d. The Egyptian Museum

b. Answer the following questions :

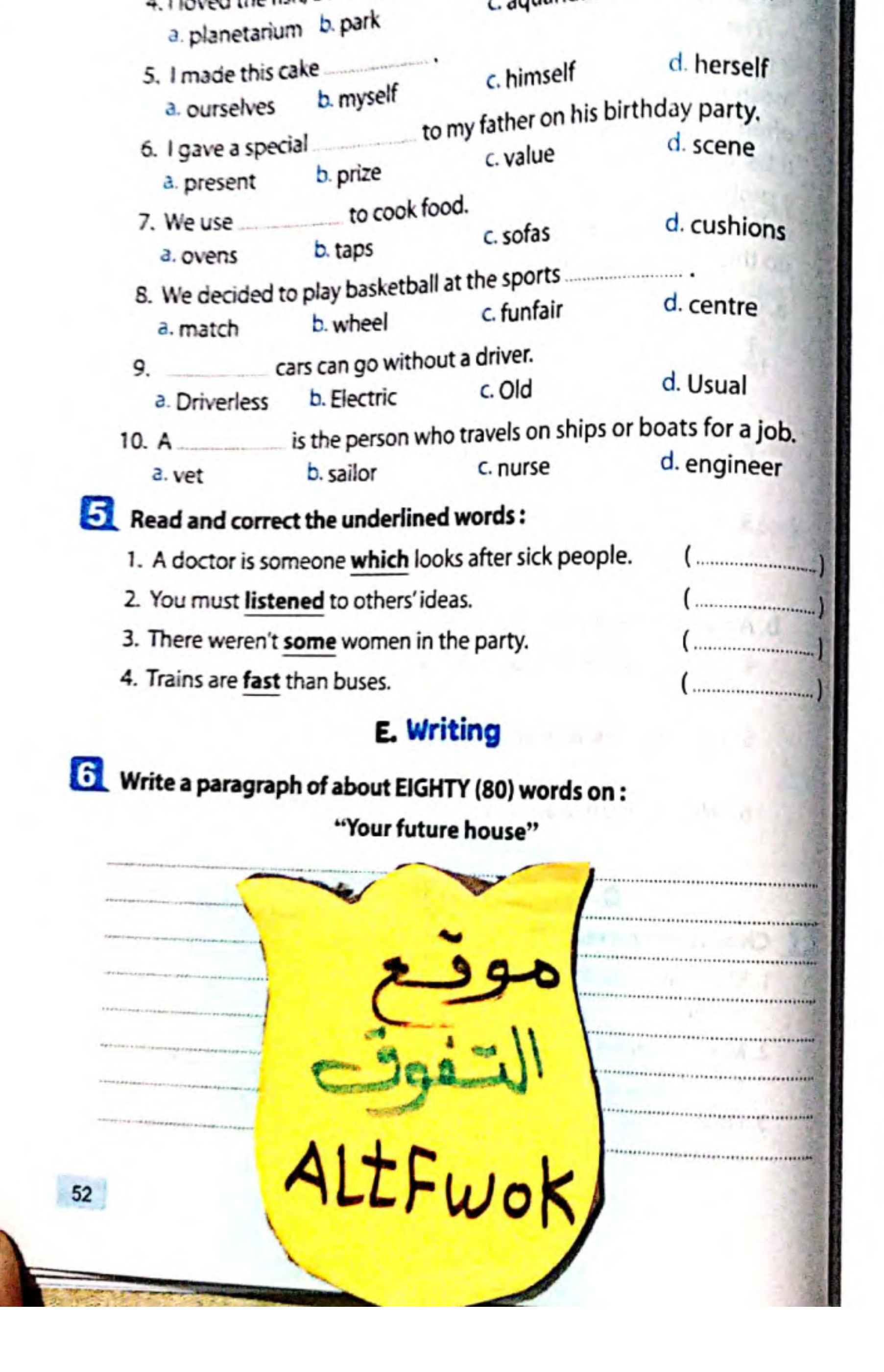
4. What is the main idea of the passage?
   ....
5. Do you think we should keep ancient buildings ? Why ? Why not ?
   ....
6. What is unusual about the Great Mosque in Mali ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Khalid went to the park ten minutes ....
   a. since b. then c. ago d. next
2. Most windows are made of ....
   a. wool b. glass c. cotton d. paper
3. How .... your day ?
   a. were b. was c. be d. being

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



4. I loved the fish, but I didn't see any whales at the ....
   a. planetarium b. park c. aquarium d. garden
5. I made this cake ....
   a. ourselves b. myself c. himself d. herself
6. I gave a special .... to my father on his birthday party.
   a. present b. prize c. value d. scene
7. We use .... to cook food.
   a. ovens b. taps c. sofas d. cushions
8. We decided to play basketball at the sports ....
   a. match b. wheel c. funfair d. centre
9. .... cars can go without a driver.
   a. Driverless b. Electric c. Old d. Usual
10. A .... is the person who travels on ships or boats for a job.
   a. vet b. sailor c. nurse d. engineer

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. A doctor is someone **which** looks after sick people. (........................)
2. You must **listened** to others' ideas. (........................)
3. There weren't **some** women in the party. (........................)
4. Trains are **fast** than buses. (........................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your future house"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

موقع التفوق
AltFwok

2 Giza Governorate — Zayed Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Yesterday was ....
   a. an adventure b. foggy c. terrible d. sunny
2. Is there a lot to do ?
   a. Yes, there's. b. No, there isn't. c. Not in the text. d. I don't know.
3. They're on holiday in ....
   a. Africa b. South Africa c. North Africa d. India
4. The weather is going to be better ....
   a. tomorrow b. today c. next week d. before morning

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Dina are talking about music.

Mona : Do you like classical music, Dina ?
Dina : (1) ....
Mona : (2) .... ?
Dina : I will go to a concert next week.
Mona : (3) .... ?
Dina : Yes, I have the tickets.
Mona : Can I come with you ?
Dina : (4) ....
Mona : Thanks, Dina.
Dina : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects.

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

About six million visitors go **there** every year. The museum has the largest collection of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian **hieroglyphics** for the first time.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **"Hieroglyphics"** is a ....
   a. statue   b. language   c. temple   d. museum
2. The underlined word **"there"** refers to ....
   a. visitors   b. Italy   c. Egypt   d. the British Museum
3. London is a famous .... in Europe.
   a. museum   b. city   c. country   d. statue

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of this passage ?
....
5. Do you think museums are wonderful ? Why ?
....
6. When did the Rosetta Stone arrive at the British Museum ?
....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. On Sunday, we went to the planetarium but it was ....
   a. closed   b. moved   c. opened   d. arrived
2. Coconuts are large brown ....
   a. nuts   b. glasses   c. cells   d. pots
3. Children usually enjoy .... when they play on the beach.
   a. themselves   b. herself   c. himself   d. ourselves

4. We decided to play basketball at the sports ....
   a. wheel   b. funfair   c. centre   d. match
5. We need to buy some more water, this bottle is ....
   a. noisy   b. important   c. small   d. crowded
6. My friend lives .... to the school than me.
   a. near   b. nearest   c. nearer   d. the nearest
7. Who .... cook your meal this evening ?
   a. will go   b. would go   c. is going to   d. going to
8. I was born .... 2010.
   a. at   b. on   c. in   d. by
9. Enjoy your time and have ....
   a. fan   b. fun   c. fine   d. final
10. A/An .... has eight legs and it can swim fast.
   a. whale   b. jelly fish   c. octopus   d. shark

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday **this morning**. (............)
2. An elephant is **big** than a camel. (............)
3. A doctor is someone **which** looks after sick people. (............)
4. When I'm tired, **I'm going** to bed. (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"An adventure with your friends"

....
....
....

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

3 Alexandria Governorate — Al Gomrok Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Amira goes to Dahab ....
   a. alone b. with her friends
   c. with her family d. by bus
2. Amira likes to go ....
   a. fishing b. diving c. trekking d. shopping
3. Amira loves the ....
   a. ocean b. aquarium c. planetarium d. museum
4. In the evening, Amira likes going to the ....
   a. farm b. sports centre c. swimming pool d. funfair

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Karim and Ali are talking about their plans for the future.

Karim: Hello Ali. How are you ?

Ali : (1) ....

Karim: (2) .... ?

Ali : I want to be a TV interviewer.

Karim: A TV interviewer ! Wow ! That's interesting. But why ?

Ali : (3) .... , (4) .... ?

Karim: I want to be a musician.

Ali : Really ! Do you enjoy playing music ?

Karim: (5) ....

Ali : Well, good luck.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Egypt is a great country for tourists. It has a lot of historic places. When tourists **arrive** in Cairo, they like to see the Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. Besides, they visit the Egyptian Museum. **There**, they can see many old statues. They can also spend a great time shopping and buying souvenirs at Khan El Khalily. When they go to Luxor and Aswan, they enjoy visiting the Pharaohs' ancient temples. Some tourists like to go to Sharm El Sheikh to enjoy diving and doing water sports. Indeed, Egypt is a very rich country. It has a long history and great people. We should do all we can to make it the best country in the world.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is ....
   a. Egypt is a tourist country b. The Pyramids
   c. The temples of Luxor d. Souvenirs
2. The underlined pronoun "**There**" refers to ....
   a. Cairo b. the Pyramids
   c. the Sphinx area d. the Egyptian Museum
3. The opposite of the word "**arrive**" is ....
   a. leave b. come c. stay d. spend

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Why do tourists like to visit Egypt ?
   ....
5. Sea-loving tourists also enjoy visiting Egypt. How ?
   ....
6. Why do you think we should all be proud of Egypt ?
   ....



D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. On Fridays, I do Karate at a sports ....
   a. funfair b. centre c. museum d. theatre
2. They took two weeks to cross the desert. It was a very difficult ....
   a. earthquake b. journey c. storm d. exhibition

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3. .... make streets less crowded.
a. Towers b. Forests c. Fountains d. Bridges

4. Whales are .... animals in the world.
a. bigger b. the biggest c. big d. biggest

5. Rock climbing is a sport full of ....
a. tents b. guides c. Bedouins d. adventure

6. I received a friend's .... on my smart phone this morning.
a. letter b. email c. magazine d. equipment

7. In winter, people take hot drinks to keep .... warm.
a. himself b. herself c. ourselves d. themselves

8. .... are used for making bread and baking cakes.
a. Bricks b. Ovens c. Wallets d. Walls

9. Yesterday, I needed some tea but there .... any sugar in the house.
a. weren't b. aren't c. wasn't d. isn't

10. To .... means to use things again.
a. sting b. throw away c. touch d. recycle

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. What are we **go** to do next Friday ? (..................)
2. This shirt is **make** of cotton. It is very expensive. (..................)
3. **Do** you close the window, please ? (..................)
4. If the weather becomes so cold, water **turned** into ice. (..................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Why I like my home"

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

4 Qalyoubia Governorate

Benha Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where was the lighthouse ?
a. In Aswan b. In Luxor c. In Siwa d. In Alex

2. What were in the sea at that time ?
a. Few boats b. Lots of boats c. Few rocks d. Lots of rocks

3. Why was the lighthouse important at that time ? - Because it was ....
a. warning boats b. sailing boats
c. diving boats d. floating boats

4. How was the sea at that time ?
a. Safe b. Dangerous c. Good d. Sunny

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Mazen and Zeyad are talking about their favourite sport.

Mazen : What's your favourite sport ?
Zeyad : (1) ....
Mazen : (2) .... ?
Zeyad : My favourite player is Mohamed Salah.
Mazen : (3) .... ?
Zeyad : He was born in Gharbia in 1992.
Mazen : Which team did he start to play for ?
Zeyad : (4) ....
Mazen : Is he popular in England ?
Zeyad : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

About 70% of the world is covered by water, and 97% of this water lies in the oceans and seas. There are four oceans; the Pacific, Atlantic,

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

Indian and Arctic. Fish are found both in fresh river water and in salty sea water. Small plants grow in **shallow** waters. Small organisms feed on these plants and in turn become food for small fish. The Smaller fish are eaten by the larger ones. Warm waters are covered with coral reefs. There are areas in the seas which are very deep, so sunlight does not reach these areas. Ocean animals come in almost every shape and size. Sharks are actually fish ! **They** do not have bones. They have sharp teeth. They have an excellent sense of smell, which helps them find food. Many sharks eat near the surface of the water, but will also dive down deeper in search of food. There are over 350 kinds of sharks, but only about 25 of those attack people.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....
   a. turtles b. sharks c. fish d. whales
2. The underlined word "**shallow**" means not ....
   a. deep b. long c. short d. low
3. Sharks have a strong sense of ....
   a. taste b. sight c. touch d. smell

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea in this passage ?

....

5. How many oceans are there on the earth ?

....

6. What do you think about shark ? Why ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Most windows are made of ....
   a. wood b. glass c. cotton d. paper
2. You can usually .... paper, so don't throw it away.
   a. recycle b. cycle c. heat d. hit
3. The teacher asked the students to work in pairs and .... a quiz.
   a. throw b. do c. make d. let

4. The story is interesting, ... it ?
   a. does b. doesn't c. isn't d. is
5. Khalid went to the park ten minutes ....
   a. since b. then c. ago d. next
6. The old car is .... than the new car.
   a. noise b. more noise c. noisier d. noisiest
7. The .... is one of the most dangerous animals in the ocean.
   a. duck b. donkey c. monkey d. shark
8. We sometimes go .... for two days or more, usually across the desert.
   a. diving b. windsurfing c. trekking d. kayaking
9. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo.
   a. Pyramid b. Tunnel c. Tower d. Bridge
10. A/An .... designs machines and engines.
   a. teacher b. accountant c. engineer d. sailor

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My computer often stops and turns off by **himself**. (..................)
2. We **mustn't** be quiet in the classroom. (..................)
3. We went to the museum and **see** some old statues. (..................)
4. I think we **would** live on the moon; it is my dream. (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A sport you like"

....

....

موقع التفوق

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

5 Sharkia Governorate — East Zagazig Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Dad likes ....
   a. films b. sports c. books d. plays
2. Dad is very good at ....
   a. football b. cooking c. running d. swimming
3. Mum loves ....
   a. swimming b. running c. football d. cooking
4. My brother doesn't like the ....
   a. countryside b. city c. school d. cinema

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sameh is talking to Tamer about a party.

Sameh : Why didn't you come to the party yesterday ?
Tamer : (1) ....
Sameh : (2) .... ?
Tamer : Yes, I went to the doctor.
Sameh : (3) .... ?
Tamer : He gave me some medicine.
Sameh : Will you go to school tomorrow ?
Tamer : (4) ....
Sameh : I hope you get well soon.
Tamer : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

It was Mother's Day. My sister and I went to buy presents for our mother. I bought her a dress and my sister bought her a pair of shoes.

At home, we made a party. We invited our three cousins and many of our friends. The girls sang **beautiful** songs. We gave the presents to our mother who thanked us. All the guests ate cakes and drank tea. My mother was happy because all people loved her. At ten p.m, our guests left our house. **They** were very happy.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to the ....
   a. girls b. cousins c. guests d. daughters
2. The guests left the house ....
   a. in the morning b. in the afternoon
   c. in the evening d. at 10 o'clock
3. The opposite of the underlined word "**beautiful**" is ....
   a. surprising b. nice c. terrible d. friendly

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ....
5. What did the writer buy for his/her mother ?
   ....
6. What do you think about the writer ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Red Sea is famous for its colourful coral ....
   a. camels b. reefs c. trees d. stars
2. **A :** Were you in Giza yesterday ? **B :** Yes, I ....
   a. am b. was c. have d. had
3. They were really sad because they got some .... news.
   a. happy b. terrible c. amazing d. good
4. It's .... for a little girl to walk alone at night.
   a. nice b. wide c. safe d. dangerous

AltFwoK.Com

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

5. Habiba is a girl .... always gets high marks.
   a. who b. where c. when d. whose
6. My family usually goes .... holiday in Alexandria.
   a. at b. in c. on d. for
7. How .... is your room ?
   a. wide b. loud c. heavy d. often
8. Because of the ...., we drove very slowly on the road.
   a. cloud b. earth c. fog d. air
9. You must .... hard to get high marks.
   a. study b. studying c. studies d. to study
10. .... is a hard material used for making cars.
   a. Wool b. Metal c. Cotton d. Leather

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Habiba has a beautiful house, **does** she ? (..................)
2. If I **went** to university, I'll study science. (..................)
3. You **shouldn't** visit your relatives regularly. (..................)
4. My brother is **old** than my friend. (..................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"A fantastic day"

AltFwok.com



6 Menoufia Governorate

Sadat Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Eman is in ....
   a. Hurghada b. Dahab c. Siwa d. Ras Shetan
2. She is with her ....
   a. teachers b. friends c. family d. cousins
3. They are going to go .... in the mountains.
   a. travelling b. trekking c. rock climbing d. zip lining
4. Rock climbing is .... for Eman.
   a. interesting b. exciting c. boring d. scary

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Ahmed is at a hotel to book a room.

Ahmed : Excuse me, can you help me?
Assistant : Yes. (1) .... ?
Ahmed : I'd like to book a room, please.
Assistant : Do you want a single or a double room?
Ahmed : (2) .... I am alone.
Assistant : (3) .... ?
Ahmed : I am going to stay here for a week.
Assistant : OK sir. You have booked the room now.
Ahmed : How much does it cost ?
Assistant : (4) ....
Ahmed : Thank you.
Assistant : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

The world's widest suspension bridge (Tahya Masr Bridge) opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 m long.

More than 4000 people helped to build **it**. They **started** building it in 2016. They finally finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet ! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. Cairo b. Warraq Island
   c. Tahya Masr Bridge d. The Nile
2. The bridge has a .... floor.
   a. metal b. glass c. paper d. wool
3. The underlined word "**started**" means ....
   a. began b. stopped c. ended d. finished

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What's the main idea of the passage ?
....
5. What does the bridge cross ?
....
6. What do you think of Tahya Masr Bridge ?
....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Car windows are made of ....
   a. stone b. wool c. glass d. cotton
2. A .... shape is a shape like a circle.
   a. square b. triangle c. round d. rectangular
3. It's important to .... your skin from the sun.
   a. agree b. stop c. protect d. refuse
4. .... there any guides in the museum ?
   a. Was b. Are c. Do d. Is

5. The Red Sea is famous for its .... reef.
   a. moral b. coral c. flat d. corn
6. There were .... animals in the park yesterday.
   a. any b. some c. lots d. an
7. Naglaa is much .... than I'm.
   a. taller b. tallest c. as tall d. the tallest
8. Metal is a hard ....
   a. material b. subject c. time d. work
9. .... in the desert is tiring but enjoyable.
   a. Driving b. Trekking c. Windsurfing d. Swimming
10. You can see planets and stars at the ....
   a. museum b. planetarium c. aquarium d. funfair

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They **get** home very late last night. (..................)
2. My bag is **heaviest** than yours. (..................)
3. We **would** travel in rockets in the future. (..................)
4. What **do** chairs made of ? (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your last weekend"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

AltFwok.com

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

7 Gharbia Governorate — East Tanta Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where was Mohamed Salah born ?
   a. Alexandria b. Fayoum c. Cairo d. Gharbia
2. Which team did Mohamed Salah start playing football for ?
   a. Zamalek b. Ahly c. Masry d. Mokawloon
3. When did Salah win the African player of the year ?
   a. 2019 b. 2017 c. 1992 d. 2010
4. What's Mohamed Salah's job ?
   a. A footballer b. An engineer c. A teacher d. A farmer

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman is asking Ashraf about his last weekend.

Ayman : What did you do last weekend ?
Ashraf : (1) ....
Ayman : The funfair ! That's fantastic. Which ride did you love most ?
Ashraf : (2) ....
Ayman : (3) .... ?
Ashraf : The big wheel ticket was 20 pounds.
Ayman : Fantastic ! (4) .... ?
Ashraf : (5) ....
Ayman : I love popcorn. It's my favourite, too.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

One day, Ahmed was on the third floor of his house, mending a broken door. He had nearly finished, and he was pleased with his work.



Suddenly, he heard a voice below call "Hello !" When he looked down, Ahmed saw an old man in dirty clothes standing below. "What do you want ?" asked Ahmed.

"Come down and I'll tell you," said the man. Ahmed was angry, but he was a polite man, so he put down his tools. Carefully, **he** climbed all the way down to the ground. "What do you want ?" he asked, when he reached the ground. "Could you **spare** a little money for an old beggar ?" asked the old man. Ahmed thought for a minute. Then he said, "Come with me." He began climbing the ladder again. The old man followed him all the way to the top, when they were both sitting on the third floor; Ahmed turned to the beggar and said "No".

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed was .... with his work.
   a. unhappy b. sad c. angry d. pleased
2. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to ....
   a. the beggar b. neighbour c. Ahmed d. no one
3. The underlined word "**spare**" means ....
   a. take b. give c. express d. borrow

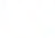
b. Answer the following questions:

4. What was Ahmed doing when he heard a voice below ?
   ....
5. Do you think Ahmed behaved well with the old man ?
   ....
6. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I watched a wonderful play for Adel Emam in the ....
   a. museum b. cinema c. theatre d. funfair
2. The homework was very difficult, so I .... nervous.
   a. failed b. fell c. felt d. filled
3. There is a science .... at school. I think Hany will win.
   a. column b. expression c. competition d. collection



ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

4. The Great Pyramid of Giza is crowded .... visitors.
a. of b. for c. at d. with

5. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend !
a. funfair b. aquarium c. museum d. stadium

6. When you go mountain climbing, you should check your ....
a. information b. argument c. machines d. equipment

7. We wear sunglasses to .... our eyes from the sun.
a. stay b. protect c. check d. dry

8. .... going to travel home by bus after school ?
a. You are b. Do you c. Are you d. You have

9. Samy's wearing his .... suit today.
a. more new b. newer than c. the newest d. newest

10. .... your friends ready for the exam last week ?
a. Was b. Did c. Were d. Do

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. The ten o'clock bus left ten minutes **past**. (............)
2. Chocolate is **bad** for you than fruit. (............)
3. I'm going **try** rock climbing next weekend. (............)
4. You don't drive this car. It drives **herself**. (............)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"What kind of weather do you like best ? Why ?"

....

....

....

AltFwsk.com موقع التفوق



8 Dakahlia Governorate
East Mansoura Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى محادثة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (موجود النص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did they go to the Grand Egyptian Museum ? - On ....
a. Saturday b. Sunday c. Friday d. Monday

2. When did the GEM welcome its first visitors ? - In ....
a. 2000 b. 2010 c. 2015 d. 2019

3. What's the most beautiful part of the museum ?
a. The hall b. The tomb c. The entrance d. The gate

4. How long is the distance between the GEM and the Pyramids ?
- It's ....
a. ten kilometres b. two kilometres
c. twenty kilometres d. four kilometres

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Logy and Sama are talking about what Sama did yesterday.

Logy : Hi, Sama. How are you ?
Sama : Hi, Logy. (1) ....
Logy : (2) .... ?
Sama : (3) ....
Logy : Great. (4) .... ?
Sama : I rode on the big wheel.
Logy : Were you frightened of it ?
Sama : (5) ....
Logy : I know you are brave.
Sama : Thank you, Logy.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

One day, my wife saw a mouse running across her kitchen floor. She was **afraid** of mice, so she ran out of the house, got on a bus and went

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

down to the shops. She bought a mouse-trap. The shopkeeper said to her, "Put some cheese in it and you will soon catch that mouse". She went home. She looked at the fridge, but she couldn't find any cheese in **it**. She cut a picture of some cheese out of a magazine and put that in the trap. The picture of the cheese was successful !

When she came down to the kitchen the next morning, there was a picture of a mouse in the trap beside the picture of the cheese !

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mice like eating ....
   a. picture b. magazines c. traps d. cheese
2. The lady .... the mouse.
   a. caught b. didn't catch c. killed d. ate
3. The underlined word "**afraid**" means ....
   a. famous b. quiet c. frightened d. friendly

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What do you think about the story ?
....
5. Give a suitable title for this passage.
....
6. What does the underlined word "**it**" refer to ?
....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I went .... across the desert.
   a. sailing b. diving c. swimming d. trekking
2. I made .... a cup of tea.
   a. itself b. herself c. myself d. himself
3. Paper and glass are .... to recycle.
   a. hard b. difficult c. harder d. easier
4. Tourists go to Hurghada to see coral ....
   a. roofs b. reefs c. leaves d. beliefs

5. The boy was strong, ... he couldn't carry the bag.
   a. but b. because c. so d. when
6. How .... is the Cairo-Alexandria Desert Road ? – 220 km.
   a. old b. long c. tall d. high
7. .... panels produce electricity using the sun.
   a. Moon b. Wind c. Sky d. Solar
8. I'd like to see this film again. It's very ....
   a. excited b. interested c. bored d. interesting
9. She always comes early, ... she ?
   a. isn't b. doesn't c. does d. hasn't
10. Munir Knows which job he wants to ....
   a. make b. play c. take d. do

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

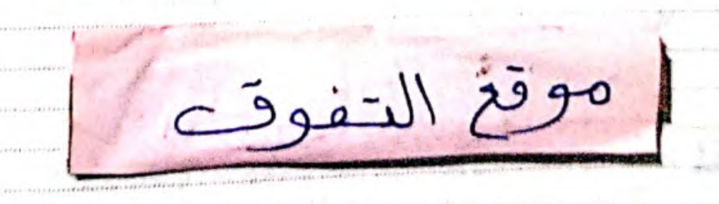
1. There **aren't** any phones in ancient Egypt. (...............)
2. Ayman is **good** than Heba. (...............)
3. This city is crowded **by** people. (...............)
4. **Did** there be electric cars in the future ? (...............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your dream job"

....
....
....



CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

9 Beheira Governorate — El Rahmaneya Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى محادثة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (النص الصوتي للاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. A : When did the Grand Egyptian Museum open ?
   B : In
   a. 2000 b. 2009 c. 2019 d. 2002
2. How far is the museum from the Pyramids at Giza ?
   a. 2 kilometres b. 10 kilometres c. 20 kilometres d. 12 kilometres
3. What is the most beautiful part of the museum ?
   a. The hall b. The main room
   c. The entrance d. The second floor
4. How big is the statue of Ramsis II ?
   a. 2 metres b. 12 metres c. 20 metres d. 22 metres

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mazen is asking Zeyad about the article he is reading.

Mazen : What are you reading, Zeyad ?
Zeyad : (1) ....
Mazen : Oh yes ! Last year, I went diving in the Red Sea.
Zeyad : I'd love to do that. (2) .... ?
Mazen : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous.
Zeyad : I like trekking in the mountains. (3) .... ?
Mazen : I like the mountains. I want to visit Sinai with my family next holiday.
Zeyad : Are you going to try mountain biking, Mazen ?
Mazen : (4) ....
Zeyad : (5) .... ! I'm going to try it one day.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There are lots of jobs in our life. There are farmers who work in fields.

There are carpenters who work in workshops. There are mechanics who work in garages. Among all of these jobs, the doctor's work is the most difficult and is more important than other jobs, because **it** is concerned with people's lives. There are many kinds of doctors who deal with different kinds of **patients**. The children's doctor deals with children who are ill. The eye's doctor deals with people whose eyes are ill, etc. In many times, the doctor doesn't sleep at night if someone calls him to see a patient. We should respect all doctors.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the .... work.
   a. carpenter's b. mechanic's c. farmer's d. doctor's
2. The underlined word "**patients**" means .... people.
   a. old b. healthy c. sick d. strong
3. We must .... our doctors.
   a. sink b. respect c. hate d. prevent

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Where does a carpenter work ?
   ....
5. Why do you think a doctor can't sleep at night ?
   ....
6. What's the main idea of the passage ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She is a .... She had piano lessons when she was eight.
   a. waiter b. musician c. sailor d. worker
2. We always .... what to do at the weekend.
   a. travel b. make c. plan d. climb
3. Planting trees is very good for our .... because they give us clean air.
   a. house b. street c. space d. environment

AltFuok.com موقع الفوك

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

4. To be .... means not to be dangerous.
a. deep b. safe c. cheap d. near

5. I love learning about sea life. I want to be a marine ....
a. architect b. biologist c. engineer d. teacher

6. I .... my lunch with my friend because he was hungry.
a. agreed b. shared c. took d. filled

7. People put .... on windows to protect them from the sun.
a. lamps b. cushions c. scarfs d. curtains

8. We all looked at .... in the school photo.
a. themselves b. yourself c. ourselves d. herself

9. You .... take water when you go to the desert.
a. mustn't b. must c. has d. have

10. A scientist is a person .... studies science.
a. where b. which c. who d. what

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. It **is** hot today, is it ? (..................)
2. **Next** year, I spent my holiday in Paris. (..................)
3. Sweets are **bad** for you than fruit. (..................)
4. If you **doesn't** run, you won't catch the bus. (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your last weekend"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate
El-Hamoul Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. I am going to travel with my ....
a. family b. teachers c. friends d. uncles

2. We are going to travel from .... to Luxor.
a. Assuit b. Aswan c. Cairo d. Giza

3. We are going to leave Aswan in ....
a. November b. December c. September d. April

4. We are going to .... in Luxor in January.
a. leave b. live c. arrive d. stay

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Yara asks Tasneem about her weekend in Alexandria.

Yara : Good morning.
Tasneem : (1) ....
Yara : (2) .... ?
Tasneem : I spent it in Alexandria.
Yara : How was the weather like there ?
Tasneem : (3) ....
Yara : Fantastic ! (4) .... ?
Tasneem : I ate fish.
Yara : What else did you do there ?
Tasneem : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this ? There are lots of reasons. A round

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or a square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. **It** also has more space inside. How fantastic!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to the ....
   a. roof   b. round house   c. rain   d. snow
2. It is .... inside a round house.
   a. noisy   b. quiet   c. bad   d. very cold
3. It's important for houses to be strong when there is ....
   a. wind   b. rain   c. an earthquake   d. a, b and c

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What's the best title for this passage?
   ....
5. What's your opinion about round houses?
   ....
6. Find a word in the passage which means "not old".
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We went to the .... to enjoy seeing planets and stars.
   a. planetarium   b. sports centre   c. funfair   d. aquarium
2. I write what happens to me every day in a ....
   a. photo   b. diary   c. dairy   d. search
3. There will be a .... over the river.
   a. line   b. road   c. tunnel   d. bridge
4. We must protect our ....
   a. environment   b. smoke   c. fire   d. dust

5. Tourists usually have a .... to show them where to go.
   a. passenger   b. manager   c. traveller   d. guide
6. I bought a/an .... to cook food inside.
   a. top   b. spoon   c. oven   d. kitchen
7. .... are machines which can do many things for us.
   a. Solar panels   b. Turbines   c. Robots   d. Rabbits
8. What must you .... before exams?
   a. do   b. to do   c. doing   d. to doing
9. She made a very nice cake, ... she?
   a. did   b. didn't   c. does   d. don't
10. I like playing football, ... I don't like playing tennis.
   a. and   b. but   c. because   d. so

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There weren't **some** women in the party. (............)
2. My uncle is **oldest** than my father. (............)
3. You **must** write on the walls of the class. (............)
4. He read English books a lot, **did** he? (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your plans for your summer holiday"

....
....
....

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

11 Damietta Governorate — El-Senw Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Many .... enjoy walking across the Tahya Masr Bridge.
   a. animals b. birds c. people d. buses
2. It has a/an .... floor.
   a. wood b. glass c. iron d. rubber
3. You can see the .... under your feet!
   a. river b. sea c. lake d. cars
4. The best time to cross the bridge is at ....
   a. sunset b. night c. afternoon d. morning

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Dalia and Mai are talking about the weekend.

Dalia : How did you spend your weekend ?
Mai : I went to the funfair.
Dalia : (1) .... ?
Mai : I went with my family. (2) .... ?
Dalia : I stayed at home to watch a football match.
Mai : What about going to the stadium together next weekend ?
Dalia : (3) .... !
Mai : (4) ....
Dalia : Ok. 7 o'clock is a good time. Where can we meet ?
Mai : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Every summer, Nada goes to the countryside for a month. She stays at her uncle's farm and helps him. She works very <u>hard</u> but she likes it.

She loves to spend time with her cousins. Every morning, she wakes up at six o'clock. First, she collects the eggs and feeds the chickens, then she has breakfast at 6:30. After breakfast, she helps her uncle's wife with the housework. Nada and her cousins always spend a great time together. They climb trees and pick fruits and flowers. <u>**They**</u> are always very tired at the end of the day. Nada and her cousins always watch TV before they go to bed.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nada stays at her uncle's farm for .... days.
   a. 15 b. 7 c. 60 d. 30
2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....
   a. Nada and her father b. Nada and her cousins
   c. Nada and her friends d. Nada and her classmates
3. The opposite of the underlined word "**hard**" is ....
   a. easy b. carefully c. carelessly d. locally

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Why do you think Nada likes to go to her uncle's farm ?
   ....
5. What do Nada and her cousins do before they go to bed ?
   ....
6. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... cars don't need a driver; they can drive themselves.
   a. Driverless b. Drone c. Boat d. Motorbike
2. You .... listen to your parents' advice.
   a. mustn't b. must c. can d. can't
3. A .... is a tall narrow building.
   a. tour b. pyramid c. bridge d. tower
4. A cake is made from ....
   a. plastic b. flour c. flower d. floor

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

5. A .... can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot.
a. dream b. drone c. racket d. car

6. Cairo is a very big ....
a. town b. village c. country d. city

7. My house is .... than yours.
a. big b. bigger c. the biggest d. biggest

8. I asked for help .... I was lost.
a. so b. because c. but d. and

9. Are you .... to go to Ras El Bar next summer ?
a. go b. going c. going to d. will

10. We use .... to get water.
a. balls b. tops c. taps d. ovens

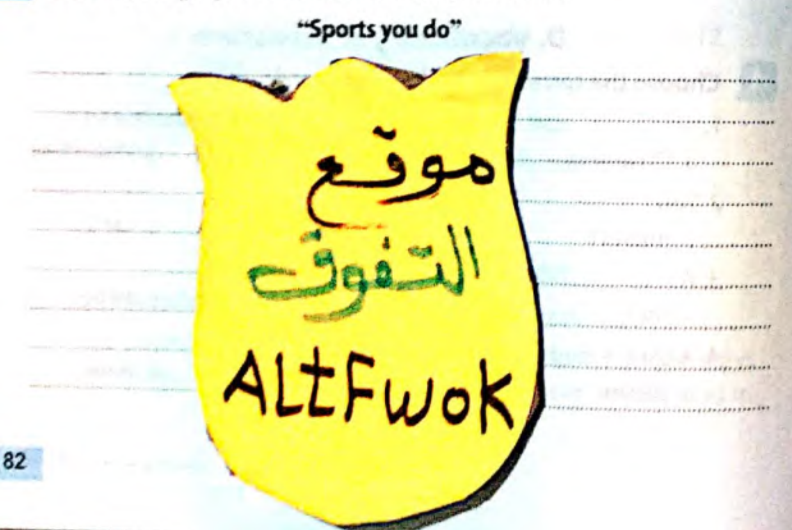
5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. **Are** there any food in the fridge ? (..............)
2. Where did he **went** yesterday ? (..............)
3. Alaa is **good** than her sister. (..............)
4. You should **are** helpful. (..............)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Sports you do"





12 Ismailia Governorate

Ismailia Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. My birthday was last ....
a. Sunday b. Monday c. Tuesday d. Saturday

2. On my birthday, I went to the ....
a. zoo b. museum c. tower d. pyramids

3. I went to the museum with my ....
a. mum b. sister c. father d. uncle

4. My brother took us to his favourite ....
a. library b. restaurant c. school d. club

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Sara and Mona are talking about materials.

Sara : Hello Mona. Are you good at science ?
Mona : Hi Sara. (1) ....
Sara : (2) .... ?
Mona : Cars are made of metal .
Sara : Good. (3) .... ?
Mona : Chairs are made of glass.
Sara : No, (4) ....
Mona : You're right. I'm sorry.
Sara : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

There are many kinds of houses. Most people in the United States live in houses made of wood or bricks. In Eritrea, the nomadic people build their houses of straw. The homes are small and cool. **They** can move their houses when they want to move. They take their animals to new places in order to find food. People who belong to Peru build their houses

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

of trees. They also live on islands that are made of trees! Their boats are made of trees too ! About 2.000 people live on these man-made islands. They **started** to build their own islands about 500 years ago.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People in Peru build their house of ....
   a. wood b. bricks c. straw d. glass
2. The underlined word "**started**" has the same meaning of ....
   a. began b. finished c. stopped d. included
3. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. homes b. nomads c. Americans d. bricks

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ....
5. Why do the nomads take their animals to new places ?
   ....
6. What kind of houses do you prefer to live in ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A .... is a hole inside a mountain.
   a. road b. valley c. hill d. cave
2. My grandfather made lots of great .... during his life.
   a. environments b. achievements c. measurements d. nouns
3. The piano is a musical ....
   a. concert b. machine c. instrument d. equipment
4. It .... ten minutes to walk to school.
   a. goes b. takes c. spends d. plays
5. At the start of the trip, the weather was .... and hot.
   a. stormy b. foggy c. sunny d. snowy

6. You should .... other people's opinion.
   a. respected b. respecting c. respect d. respects
7. Some houses fell to the ground after the ....
   a. earthquake b. achievement c. space d. description
8. Trees are very good for our .... because they give us clean air.
   a. environment b. house c. space d. spring
9. There were .... boys playing in the street.
   a. a b. an c. any d. no
10. Mountain climbing is .... dangerous than swimming.
   a. the most b. the more c. most d. more

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Ghada drew **himself** a picture. (............)
2. Dalia is the **older** in her family. (............)
3. Books are **making** of paper. (............)
4. Last weekend, we **go** to the club. (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your future job"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

موقع التفوق AltFwoK

تم المسح ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

13 Port Said Governorate — South Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع الى محادثة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. What does the woman want to buy ?
   a. A newspaper b. A new bag
   c. A new phone d. Some photographs
2. The thing she decides to buy is ....
   a. large and expensive b. small and expensive
   c. small and cheap d. large and cheap
3. What does the assistant ask the woman about ?
   a. Her name b. Her job c. Her hobbies d. The price
4. The woman is a ....
   a. photographer b. painter c. journalist d. doctor

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Manar asks Samya about her visit to Dalia last Friday.

Manar : Where were you last Friday ?
Samya : (1) ....
Manar : (2) .... ?
Samya : It was her birthday.
Manar : Who was at Dalia's house ?
Samya : (3) ....
Manar : (4) .... ?
Samya : She's 12.
Manar : Did you give her a present ?
Samya : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

New techology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages.

Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our **facial** expressions before **they** send a message !

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. messages b. phones c. people d. scientists
2. Phones are able to understand people .... now.
   a. shapes b. forms c. voices d. messages
3. The underlined word "**facial**" means for the ....
   a. brain b. arm c. hand d. face

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the best title for the passage ?
   ....
5. How did people use to send messages on a phone ?
   ....
6. Do you think that phones will know what we think in the future ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I saw a/an .... about dolphins in the aquarium.
   a. funfair b. exhibition c. sports centre d. match
2. My friend lives .... to school than me. He goes to school on foot.
   a. heavier b. further c. nearer d. longer
3. We must put trash in the ....
   a. bin b. pin c. ban d. pan

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

4. " .... " is a sport or a hobby where one or two people travel in a narrow boat.
   a. Diving b. Kayaking c. Trekking d. Swimming
5. What .... the things in the photos made of ?
   a. am b. is c. are d. was
6. When a turtle is in danger, it .... into its shell.
   a. climbs b. goes c. takes d. makes
7. " .... " are used to cook food or bread.
   a. Ovens b. Fridges c. Taps d. TVs
8. I'd rather .... chess.
   a. to play b. playing c. play d. plays
9. She made a very nice cake, ... she ?
   a. didn't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. can't
10. The balls are very heavy at the .... alley.
   a. aquarium b. planetarium c. bowling d. stadium

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Who did Adam **did** these things with ? (..................)
2. Adel is tall, but Rami is **tallest**. (..................)
3. A nurse is a person **when** looks after sick people. (..................)
4. Where **would** you go if you take a holiday ? (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"The most important inventions in our life"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

14 Beni Suef Governorate

Ihnasia Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Basel was born in ....
   a. 2007 b. 2012 c. 2000 d. 2016
2. Basel is talking about the important .... in his life.
   a. accidents b. months c. events d. times
3. Basel was born in ....
   a. Luxor b. Cairo c. Alexandria d. Aswan
4. Basel .... school in 2012.
   a. started b. finished c. ended d. built

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Asem and Nabil are talking about last weekend.

Asem : Did you enjoy your last weekend ?
Nabil : (1) ....
Asem : (2) .... ?
Nabil : In a sports centre.
Asem : (3) .... ?
Nabil : With my friends.
Asem : What did you enjoy doing there ?
Nabil : (4) ....
Asem : Is there a swimming pool ?
Nabil : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but education is very important. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to

AltFawk.com موقع التفوق
CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study math. **It's** my best subject. I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an **apartment** near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have ? I don't know !

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After finishing .... school, you can go to university.
   a. primary b. preparatory c. secondary d. nursery
2. The underlined word "**apartment**" means a ....
   a. flat b. park c. garden d. beach
3. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. maths b. subject c. university d. work

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

5. What will he do if he has enough money ?

....

6. Why do you think the writer wants to teach maths ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like mountain .... very much although it's difficult.
   a. driving b. climbing c. diving d. riding
2. Buses, cars and trains are means of ....
   a. railways b. stations c. transport d. machines
3. I gave a special .... to my father on his birthday party.
   a. present b. prize c. value d. scene
4. The view from the top of the tower is very .... I like it.
   a. dangerous b. fantastic c. terrible d. tiring
5. My teacher was angry because I .... a lot of mistakes.
   a. gave b. made c. did d. took

6. The .... is at the top of a house or a building.
   a. ground b. wall c. roof d. floor
7. .... cars won't need drivers.
   a. Electric b. Driverless c. Traditional d. Modern
8. If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you.
   a. sting b. stings c. stung d. would sting
9. It isn't hot today, ... ?
   a. is it b. isn't it c. it isn't d. it is
10. When did they .... building it ?
   a. start b. started c. to start d. starting

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The children made these toys **itself**. (..................)
2. Trains are **fast** than buses. (..................)
3. I'm going **visit** Sinai. (..................)
4. Let's **eating** some apples. (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sport"

....

....

....



CamScanner ـب ضوئيا ةح

15 Fayoum Governorate — Fayoum Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. How long did it take to finish the bridge?
   a. 32 months b. 23 months c. 13 months d. 50 months
2. How long is it ?
   a. 630 m b. 455 m c. 540 m d. 513 m
3. In which city did they open it ?
   a. London b. Cairo c. Paris d. Tokyo
4. How many people helped to build it ? - More than ....
   a. 5.000 b. 2.000 c. 6.000 d. 4.000

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rami is asking Ali if he went to Siwa.

Rami : Did you go to Siwa ?
Ali : (1) ....
Rami : When did you go there ?
Ali : (2) ....
Rami : (3) .... ?
Ali : I swam in the lake.
Rami : (4) .... ?
Ali : I slept in a tent in the desert.
Rami : What was your favourite food there ?
Ali : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can **recycle** some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic

is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100.000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Dolphins and sea birds also swim into plastic fishing lines.

We must try to use other materials such as paper and glass, for example, because **these** are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we should try to use it more than once. We mustn't throw away these bags.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "**these**" refers to ....
   a. dolphins b. paper and glass c. fishing lines d. animals
2. The word "**recycle**" means ....
   a. use again b. wash c. stay d. find out
3. It's better to use paper than ....
   a. glass b. bags c. fishing d. plastic

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ....
5. What do you think about plastic ?
   ....
6. Why is plastic dangerous for animals and birds ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles.
   a. yourselves b. themselves c. itself d. ourselves
2. We can't go .... because there is no wind.
   a. trekking b. diving c. biking d. windsurfing
3. Do you like to work with other people, or do you prefer working .... ?
   a. alike b. lonely c. alone d. along

AltFuuk.com موقع الفقوف

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

4. Let's go on a big wheel at the .... this weekend.
   a. stadium b. museum c. funfair d. aquarium
5. How .... your weekend ?
   a. did b. do c. does d. was
6. Earth is one of eight .... that go round the sun.
   a. plants b. plans c. planes d. planets
7. We .... things by using the metre or kilometre.
   a. measure b. guess c. count d. weigh
8. A/An .... has eight legs.
   a. jelly fish b. snake c. octopus d. turtle
9. A .... can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot.
   a. car b. plane c. drone d. metro
10. People .... drive a car in 2080.
   a. wouldn't b. won't c. don't d. didn't

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Will** you going to visit your friends ? (..................)
2. The six o'clock train left ten minutes **past**. (..................)
3. He was the **better** player in the team. (..................)
4. You must **to take** turns to do the exercise. (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"My last weekend"

....

....

....

AltFwk.com موقع التفوق

16 Minia Governorate

Minia Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Noha is a/an .... teacher.
   a. math b. French c. English d. science
2. She teaches .... school students.
   a. secondary b. primary c. preparatory d. high
3. She helps her students .... their lessons.
   a. understand b. break c. damage d. forget
4. A : What does Miss Noha do when her students do well ?
   B : She .... them.
   a. punishes b. visits c. rewards d. hits

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Marwa and Jana are talking about Tahya Masr Bridge.

Marwa : Hi Jana.
Jana : Hi Marwa. (1) .... ?
Marwa : I went to enjoy the view across Tahya Masr Bridge.
Jana : Oh really. (2) .... ?
Marwa : It took 32 months to finish.
Jana : Do you know that it's the world's widest suspension bridge ?
Marwa : (3) ....
Jana : What is the best time to cross the bridge ?
Marwa : (4) ....
Jana : Do you like to go there together ?
Marwa : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ann is from England. She is now in Egypt on holiday. She has spent two days in Aswan. She enjoys seeings the High Dam. She thinks that

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

people of Aswan are so friendly. She still has five more days in her holiday. Her friend, Salma invited her to visit **her** village. Ann is going there tomorrow morning. She has decided to spend two days with her friend and her family. Salma will show her how Egyptian **villagers** live and spend their day. Then, she will go to Alexandria for a day. She intends to visit the place where the lighthouse was one day. She is going to stay the rest of her holiday in Cairo. She wants to visit the Egyptian Museum. She'd like to visit the Pyramids of Giza.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ....
   a. Ann b. Salma c. people d. holiday
2. The underlined word "**villagers**" can have the same meaning as ....
   a. engineers b. carpenters c. farmers d. teachers
3. Ann is going to visit the place of the Lighthouse in ....
   a. Aswan b. Cairo c. Giza d. Alexandria

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
....
5. How long is Ann going to spend in Cairo ?
....
6. Why do you think Ann enjoyed her visit to Aswan ?
....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A teacher is a person .... teaches students.
   a. when b. where c. who d. whose
2. There is no water in the glass. The glass is ....
   a. narrow b. wide c. empty d. crowded
3. "Ancient" is the opposite of ....
   a. expensive b. beautiful c. dangerous d. modern
4. Maha likes the .... of Ramses out of the museum.
   a. statue b. bed c. room d. entrance

5. People have different .... about music.
   a. opinions b. classes c. rocks d. mountains
6. We went .... in the mountains.
   a. diving b. snorkelling c. windsurfing d. trekking
7. Robinson Crusoe is a/an .... story by Daniel Defoe.
   a. historical b. scientific c. adventure d. geographical
8. Reem is .... than Rana.
   a. older b. old c. oldest d. the oldest
9. Cars are made of ....
   a. cotton b. paper c. metal d. leather
10. It's cloudy, it .... rain.
   a. going to b. will c. won't d. is going to

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

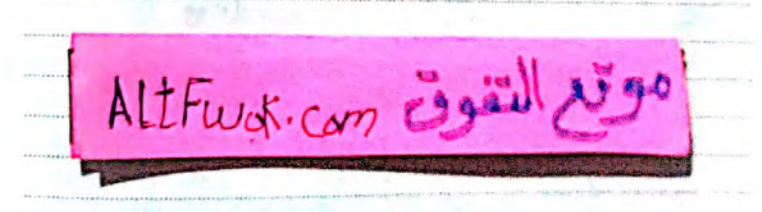
1. The cat is cleaning **myself**. (............)
2. Adel didn't **bought** a car last week. (............)
3. **Is** there any friends in Soha's party ? (............)
4. He is going to travel **in** bus. (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A new house"

....
....



....

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

17 Assiut Governorate — Abnoub Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. What's your uncle's job ?
   a. a teacher b. an engineer c. a doctor d. a businessman
2. What kind of engines does your uncle design ? - B : Engines for ....
   a. ships b. buses c. cars d. planes
3. Your aunt's job is ....
   a. a nurse b. a pilot
   c. a doctor d. a businesswoman
4. Where does your aunt work ? - She works in a/an ....
   a. school b. hospital c. office d. bank

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

A teacher is talking to a student who is late for his class.

Teacher : Why are you late, Salem ?

Salem : Sorry, Sir. There were too many cars in the road.

Teacher : (1) .... ?

Salem : I came on foot.

Teacher : (2) .... ?

Salem : (3) .... It is my second time.

Teacher : Second time ! (4) ....

Salem : I'm so sorry Sir, but we have a test today.

Teacher : Ok. Come in, but you must leave home earlier next time.

Salem : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

My name is Amir. I am twelve years old. We have a small toy shop. Fridays are the busiest days in our shop. So, my mom takes me there to help dad. That's why I like Fridays. We let children play with the toys in the **store**. My dad says I should watch the toys and make sure nothing is broken. Many children from my school come to the shop and look at our new toys. It is always noisy there because there are a lot of babies and small children. Little girls like to come to see dolls while boys come for cars. Some children just want to play with toys, but some others want to buy **them**. It's a bit tiring for me, but I like going to the shop and helping my father.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....
   a. boys b. girls c. toys d. parents
2. The word "**store**" means a ....
   a. house b. shop c. town d. school
3. Amir is .... years old.
   a. 7 b. 20 c. 8 d. 12

b. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the passage about ?
   ....
5. What do the girls like to do at the shop ?
   ....
6. Why do you think Amir loves Fridays ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My work is .... my home. So, I walk to work every day.
   a. far b. near c. empty d. big
2. We went to the .... to look at the stars.
   a. stadium b. museum c. aquarium d. planetarium

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

3. We can get electricity from ....
   a. signs b. rockets c. solar panels d. drones
4. Who is .... Ali or his sister ?
   a. tall b. taller c. more tall d. tallest
5. Children usually enjoy .... when they play on the beach.
   a. ourselves b. herself c. himself d. themselves
6. We should .... old things to save our environment.
   a. plant b. recycle c. send d. drink
7. We are going to go .... across Sinai.
   a. trekking b. tricking c. fishing d. swimming
8. A jelly fish .... you when you touch it.
   a. stings b. hides c. covers d. protects
9. .... is your birthday ? - It's in May.
   a. Whose b. When c. Who d. Where
10. The teacher asked the students to work in pairs and .... a quiz.
   a. throw b. make c. do d. let

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

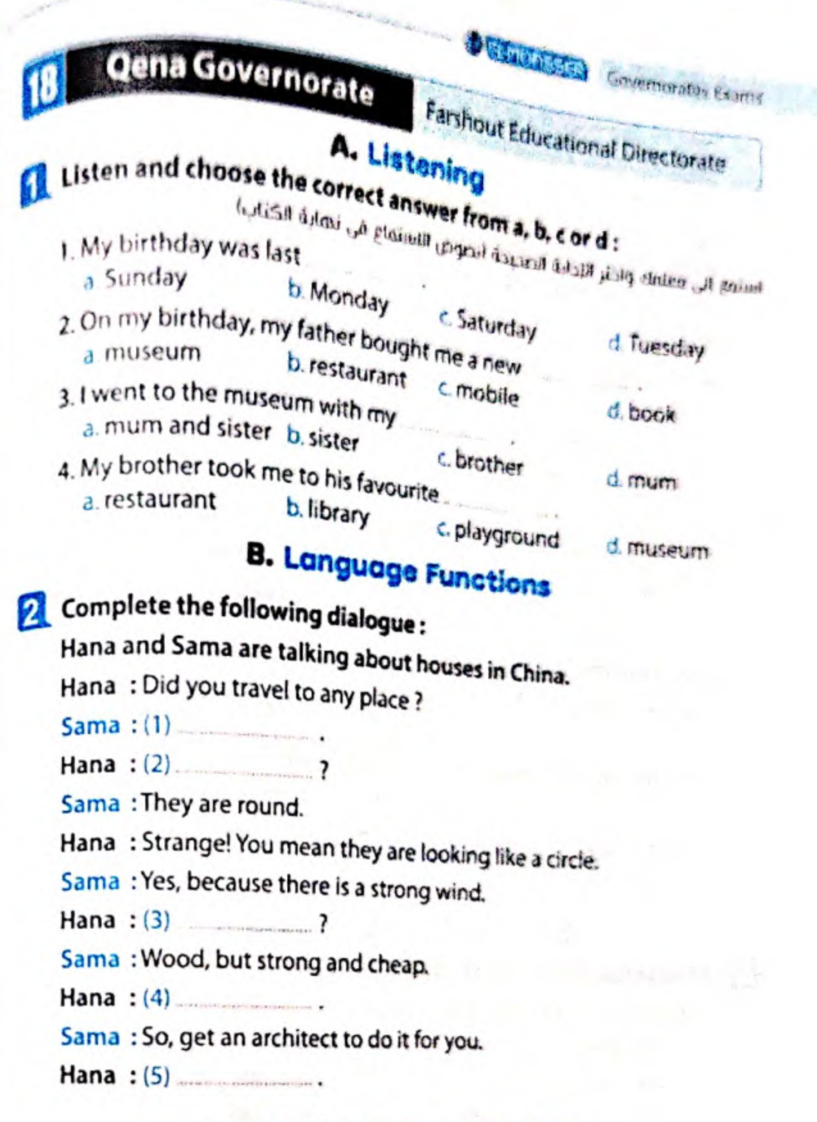
1. There **were** any boys at school yesterday. (..................)
2. My father bought a new car **on** 2021. (..................)
3. When we freeze water, it **turned** into ice. (..................)
4. What **do** you do last weekend ? (..................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"An adventure sport"

AltFawk.com موقع التفوق



18 Qena Governorate

Farshout Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى نصها واختر الإجابة الصحيحة لجمل الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. My birthday was last ....
   a. Sunday b. Monday c. Saturday d. Tuesday
2. On my birthday, my father bought me a new ....
   a. museum b. restaurant c. mobile d. book
3. I went to the museum with my ....
   a. mum and sister b. sister c. brother d. mum
4. My brother took me to his favourite ....
   a. restaurant b. library c. playground d. museum

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Hana and Sama are talking about houses in China.

Hana : Did you travel to any place ?
Sama : (1) ....
Hana : (2) .... ?
Sama : They are round.
Hana : Strange! You mean they are looking like a circle.
Sama : Yes, because there is a strong wind.
Hana : (3) .... ?
Sama : Wood, but strong and cheap.
Hana : (4) ....
Sama : So, get an architect to do it for you.
Hana : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions :**

In **ancient** Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. The people from that village worked in the Valley of the Kings. **There** were 68

ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

houses. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night. There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps. People got their water from the Nile Valley, about two kilometres away.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Taps are used to ....
   a. get water b. bake bread c. sleep on d. buy bread
2. People in Deir el-Medina used to sleep ....
   a. in tents b. on the roofs c. in the bedrooms d. in the kitchens
3. The underlined word "**ancient**" is the opposite of ....
   a. colourful b. dangerous c. modern d. further

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.
....
5. What do you think about life in that village ?
....
6. What does the underlined word "**There**" refer to ?
....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We had lunch together in the school ....
   a. laboratory b. library c. canteen d. uniform
2. Salma is going to the .... She loves riding the big wheel.
   a. funfair b. museum c. planetarium d. aquarium
3. I think mountain .... is the most dangerous sport.
   a. diving b. climbing c. building d. skiing
4. It's important to be polite when you .... your opinion.
   a. make b. take c. give d. invite

5. "........... " is a sport when we travel on a narrow boat.
   a. Diving b. Trekking c. Swimming d. Kayaking
6. A/An .... shows places to tourists.
   a. trainer b. guide c. driver d. adventurer
7. The .... is one of the most dangerous sea animals.
   a. jellyfish b. turtle c. shark d. octopus
8. Did he .... the match yesterday ?
   a. watch b. watches c. watched d. watching
9. Tamer has got .... orange juice in class.
   a. the fewest b. the least c. less than d. more than
10. Sahar bought the fruit by ....
   a. himself b. itself c. myself d. herself

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My bed is made <u>up</u> wood. (...........)
2. The journey will <u>took</u> only 12 hours. (...........)
3. When I'm hungry, I <u>had</u> something to eat. (...........)
4. Salma and Sama are twins, <u>don't</u> they ? (...........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"My favourite job"

....
....



....
....

19 Sohag Governorate — Sohag Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة لنصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Robison Crusoe was a/an ....
   a. fireman b. sailor c. pilot d. engineer
2. Robison Crusoe's ship sank because there was a/an ....
   a. water b. storm c. earthquake d. boat
3. Robison Crusoe swam to a nearby ....
   a. island b. city c. town d. bridge
4. Crusoe found .... other people on the island.
   a. one b. two c. three d. no

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mustafa and Ahmed are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Mustafa: Do you know Mohamed Salah ?
Ahmed : (1) ....
Mustafa: (2) .... ?
Ahmed : He was born in 1992.
Mustafa: Where does he play now ?
Ahmed : (3) ....
Mustafa: (4) .... ?
Ahmed : He won the European Champions League in 2019.
Mustafa: Is he kind and helpful ?
Ahmed : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

My name is Mustafa and I love playing games. Every weekend my family has a free day. We chat and play music but we also play a game

together. We have got lots of games like chess, dominos and some other video games. Last year, I learnt to play chess at school. I often play with my granddad. He is really good but I'm getting better. My younger sister, Mona cries because she can't play chess. Playing games is good because **they** are fun and sociable. I love winning and I hate losing. But I know that I can't always **win**. The most important thing about games is to enjoy playing them with your friends or family.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mustafa often plays chess with ....
   a. his sister b. his granddad c. his father d. his friend
2. The underlined word "**win**" can be the opposite of ....
   a. learn b. leave c. lose d. like
3. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. games b. family c. cousins d. sisters

b. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ....
5. What is the most important thing about games ?
   ....
6. Why do you think Mona cries ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I .... swimming last weekend.
   a. went b. played c. did d. had
2. His ship sank .... there was a terrible storm.
   a. but b. because c. so d. and
3. How .... is the Sohag-Assiut Desert Road ?
   a. deep b. high c. long d. many

حة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

4. This is the .... popular book in the library.
a. more b. most c. little d. less

5. A .... is a person who shows a place to tourists.
a. visitor b. guide c. pilot d. nurse

6. Retal taught .... to speak French.
a. herself b. himself c. themselves d. ourselves

7. Some houses fell to the ground after the ....
a. earthquake b. cloud c. fog d. igloo

8. Earth is one of the .... that go around the sun.
a. planets b. plans c. plants d. planes

9. A/An .... is someone who designs machines for us.
a. accountant b. engineer c. sailor d. teacher

10. The teacher was angry because all the students were very ....
a. low b. noisy c. narrow d. wide

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. It is cold in England in winter, <u>does</u> it ? (............)
2. The Nile is <u>longest</u> than the Amazon. (............)
3. What are you <u>go to</u> do next Friday ? (............)
4. You mustn't <u>throwing</u> rubbish in the park. (............)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"A fantastic day you had"

....

....

AltFwak.com موقع التفوق

20 Aswan Governorate

Aswan Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Basant is .... years old.
a. two b. twenty c. twelve d. ten

2. They went to the museum by ....
a. car b. train c. plane d. bus

3. They saw the statues in the ....
a. funfair b. cinema c. class d. museum

4. They went to the funfair in the ....
a. morning b. night c. afternoon d. evening

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Heba and Hala are talking about music.

Heba : I like music very much, And you ?
Hala : (1) ....
Heba : (2) .... ?
Hala : I prefer jazz.
Heba : (3) .... ?
Hala : Hakim is my favourite singer.
Heba : Do you want to play music in a band ?
Hala : A band ! (4) ....
Heba : I will help you.
Hala : Really ! (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Doctors are important because they care for people. Doctors are people who take care of others and help them get well when they are

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

sick. Doctors find out what is wrong with people when they are sick. Doctors help **sick** people get better by giving them the right medicine. **They** work in hospitals and doctor's offices. They are caring people. To be a doctor, you will have to go to college. You should like working with people and helping out others. You should be kind and helpful. If you are not kind, patients will not love you.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "They" refers to ....
   a. doctors b. patients c. nurses d. colleges
2. If you are not a kind doctor, people will .... you.
   a. love b. like c. admire d. dislike
3. .... means the same as the underlined word "sick".
   a. Tall b. Happy c. Ill d. Thick

a. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
....
5. What do doctors give to the sick people ?
....
6. What do you think of the doctor's job ?
....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The .... of Cairo is more than 10 million. It is crowded.
   a. pollution b. schools c. towers d. population
2. Read my .... to know how my weekend was.
   a. diary b. dairy c. name d. photo
3. How .... do you watch films ? - Twice a week.
   a. old b. many c. often d. long
4. We saw the stars and planets when we visited the ....
   a. funfair b. platform c. temple d. planetarium
5. We went .... to buy a new school uniform.
   a. shopping b. diving c. sailing d. trekking

6. Hamdy is the .... player in the team.
   a. better b. good c. bad d. best
7. The .... was full of people watching the final match.
   a. cafes b. theatre c. stadium d. planetarium
8. I have lost my mobile. It is a .... day.
   a. funny b. nice c. useful d. terrible
9. Which is .... the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid ?
   a. taller b. tall c. tallest d. the tallest
10. .... to do your homework.
   a. Remind b. Remember c. Forget d. Don't remember

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. How **many** information do you have ? (............)
2. Have you **get** a car ? (............)
3. The film is the **less** interesting. (............)
4. There **didn't** any cars in ancient Egypt. (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A visit to Cairo"

....

موقع التفوق AltFwok

CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

DAYS 5,6&7

3. Governorates Exams for Al-Azhar students

٣. نماذج امتحانات خاصة لطلاب الأزهر

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Qalyubia Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. .... can swim fast and it has got eight legs.
   a. A shark b. A turtle c. A jellyfish d. An octopus
2. A sea turtle has a hard .... to protect it.
   a. back b. shell c. cover d. leather

2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues :

1. Teacher : What are lamps made of ?
   Student : ....
2. Ali : .... ?
   Ahmed : I think Maths is the most difficult of all.

B. Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People first played this type of music a long time ....
   a. later b. last c. ago d. now
2. We learnt a lot about the earth and the moon at the ....
   a. aquarium b. planetarium c. museum d. stadium
3. I got up at 6 o'clock and .... breakfast with my family.
   a. have b. has c. had d. having
4. I made .... a cup of tea.
   a. myself b. himself c. itself d. yourself
5. You .... play games in the road.
   a. must b. mustn't c. will d. won't
6. Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun.
   a. planes b. plans c. plants d. planets

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage , then answer the questions :

Last week I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author is Daniel Defoe. He wrote about a sailor who spent four years alone on this island. Defoe wrote this story after hearing about this man. The weather was hot on the island. Today about 800 people live on the island. Life is easier now on the island.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Who was the story Robinson Crusoe written by ?
   ....
2. How was life on the island in the past ?
   ....
3. Did Defoe meet the sailor ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

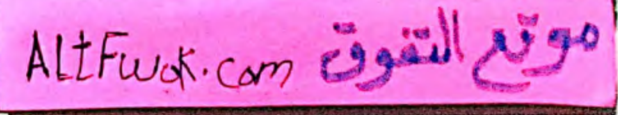
4. Crusoe spent .... years on the island.
   a. 3 b. 4 c. 5 d. 6
5. It was a .... programme.
   a. TV b. radio c. magazine d. newspaper

D. Writing

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on :

"Holiday plans"

....
....
....



CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif
Sharkia Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة لنصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. The bridge in the text is in ....
   a. England b. India c. China d. Egypt
2. The bridge has a .... floor.
   a. plastic b. glass c. cotton d. concrete

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

1. **Ahmed :** What's the best book you like ?
   Aly : ....
2. **Samia :** .... ?
   Mona : My clock is made of metal and plastic.

B. Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt.
   a. City b. Tunnel c. Tower d. Bridge
2. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is ....
   a. low b. narrow c. crowded d. empty
3. It is usually very .... in August.
   a. cloudy b. fog c. windy d. sunny
4. If Dad .... a new job, we will move to Cairo.
   a. will get b. get c. gets d. got
5. I'm .... than my brother.
   a. short b. shorter c. the shortest d. long
6. I made .... some salad for my lunch.
   a. herself b. myself c. himself d. ourselves

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about "Robinson Crusoe Island". The author of Robinson Crusoe Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor called Alexander Selkirk spent four years alone here. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. Crusoe spent on the island twenty eight years. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe's Island. Life is easier now. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. **Those** are things that Crusoe did not have.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. How long did Selkirk spend on the island ?
   ....
2. How do we know that life on Robinson Crusoe's Island is easy today ?
   ....
3. What does the underlined word "**Those**" refer to ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Alexander Selkirk was a ....
   a. pilot b. teacher c. sailor d. tailor
5. Crusoe spent on the island .... years.
   a. 82 b. 28 c. 18 d. 8

D. Writing

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on :

"Description of things in your home"

....



ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Alexandria Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Listen and complete the following dialogue :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة لنصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Doctor : What's wrong with you ?
Doaa : I (1) .... a headache.
Doctor : (2) .... did it start ?
Doaa : Yesterday.
Doctor : (3) .... you take aspirin ?
Doaa : Yes I do.
Doctor : You should take this medicine twice a day.
Doaa : When can I come back ?
Doctor : (4) .... week.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues :

1. Ahmed : How do you go to school ?
   Sami : ....
2. Heba : .... ?
   Soha : I live in Alexandria.

B. Usage and Writing

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I met my friend, Ahmed 3 days ....
   a. next b. ago c. last d. fast
2. Cairo streets are always .... with people.
   a. empty b. crowded c. long d. narrow
3. I saw myself in the ....
   a. mirror b. pan c. pot d. pen
4. Car windows are made of ....
   a. glass b. stone c. glasses d. wool
5. The Nile River is .... river in the world.
   a. long b. longer c. the longest d. longest

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ahmed is thirteen years old. He was born in Dar El Salam. He goes to a preparatory school. He has got school from Saturday to Thursday. He speaks Arabic and English. He goes to school at seven and comes back home at two. His father is thirty seven. He is a teacher in a big school. His mother is a doctor.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. How old is Ahmed ?
   ....
2. What time does he go to school ?
   ....
3. How many days does he go to school ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Ahmed's mother works in a ....
   a. school b. hospital c. shop d. villa
5. Ahmed can speak .... languages.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four
6. Ahmed's father is a ....
   a. teacher b. doctor c. student d. vet

D. Writing

5 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences about :

"Your dream job"

....
....
....



CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Menoufia Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Listen to the text and choose the correct answer :

استمع إلى مكالمة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. We have English (once - twice - three times - four times) a week.
2. I watch TV (after - before - when - with) doing the homework.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following mini-dialogues :

1. Sama : .... ?
   Shahd : My weekend was great.
2. Hana : What are your socks made of ?
   Safa : ....

B. Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My grandfather likes .... music. He usually listens to old songs.
   a. pop b. jazz c. traditional d. rock
2. I think mountain climbing is .... sport.
   a. the most dangerous b. more dangerous than
   c. less dangerous than d. as dangerous as
3. Yesterday was an adventure. We went .... in the mountains.
   a. climbing b. flying
   c. shopping d. trekking
4. I think we .... more robots in our schools in 2050.
   a. have b. will have c. had d. has
5. Children .... play with knives.
   a. mustn't b. can c. should d. can't
6. My mother works in a bank. She is a/an ....
   a. architect b. teacher c. accountant d. dentist

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Samir was walking beside the river one day. It was early in the morning. Most of people were still asleep. Suddenly he heard a cry for help. He turned round, but he could not see any body. Again he heard someone in the river. He ran towards the water. He saw a small boy holding to a piece of wood and floating on the water, but he could not swim. Samir jumped into the river, swam and saved the boy. The boy thanked Samir for saving him. Samir carried the boy to the police station to return him to his family.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What did Samir hear ?
   ....
2. Where did Samir take the boy to ?
   ....
3. What did Samir see in the river ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Samir jumped into the river to ....
   a. save the boy b. talk to the boy
   c. listen to the boy d. play with the boy
5. The police will try to ....
   a. float in the water b. find the boy's parents
   c. catch the boy d. save Samir

D. Writing

5 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"Your last weekend"

....



ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

5 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Minia Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did he walk on the beach ? (Today - Yesterday - Tomorrow)
2. What did he see ? (Someone - No one - A person)

2 Supply the missing parts of the two mini-dialogues :

1. A : How about going to the park ?
   B : (1) ....
2. A : (2) .... ?
   B : The sofa was made of leather.

B. Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If it rains, we .... wet.
   a. will get b. gets c. would get d. got
2. I didn't see any whales at the ....
   a. aquarium b. funfair c. planetarium d. restaurant
3. She speaks English well .... she ?
   a. is b. isn't c. doesn't d. does
4. You .... run across the road.
   a. should b. must c. mustn't d. may
5. Most windows are made .... glass.
   a. in b. on c. of d. off
6. You can usually .... paper.
   a. recycle b. cycle c. heat d. hit

AltFwok.com موقع التفوق

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People started making pottery thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops or their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults can learn this skill.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. When did people start making pottery ?
   ....
2. Where did they make pottery ?
   ....
3. Who can learn this skill ?
   ....

b. choose the correct answer :

4. They make pottery in workshops and (schools - markets - houses).
5. Children and (boys - girls - grown-up) can learn this skill.

D. Writing

5 Write a paragraph of five sentences on :

"How to save our planet !"

....

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

DAYS

5, 6 & 7

٤. خاص بطلاب الدمج

1 Luxor Governorate

El Baydia Directorate

A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. Ali : You meet your friend at school.
   Ramy : ....
   a. Good night   b. How are you ?   c. Happy birthday
2. Mona : Is your mobile new ?
   Salma : ....
   a. Yes, it is   b. No, it was   c. I can
3. Ola : When do you go to school ?
   Hend : ....
   a. On Friday   b. In the morning   c. By bus

B. Vocabulary and structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This car is made .... metal.
   a. in   b. from   c. by   d. of
2. The computer is .... than the laptop.
   a. bigger   b. smaller   c. light   d. small
3. How .... sisters have you got ?
   a. many   b. long   c. often   d. much
4. The .... works in the science lab.
   a. baker   b. engineer   c. scientist   d. mechanic
5. My friends .... very clever.
   a. am   b. has   c. are   d. is
6. We need .... to live.
   a. oil   b. metal   c. tea   d. water

AltFwuk.com موقع التفوق

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the sentences under each picture and put (✓) or (✗):



1. These are flowers. ( )



2. He is eating an orange. ( )



3. He is playing football. ( )

4 Finish the sentences from the list:

(eat – of – tired – shopping – laptop – football)

1. I like playing .... in my free time.
2. My father bought a new ....
3. My mother is going ....
4. I'm very ...., so I'll go to bed early.
5. My bag is made .... leather.
6. We should .... oranges.

5 Rearrange the words to make meaningful sentences:

1. he – stories – **Does** – read ?
   ....
2. is – **The internet** – very – important.
   ....
3. like – and – **I** – fruit – eating – vegetables.
   ....

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate — East Kafr El-Sheikh Directorate

A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. Where did you go last weekend ?
   a. I like pop music.
   b. I went to the museum.
   c. I'm swimming.
2. What's your favourite sport ?
   a. I like fish. b. I like tennis. c. I like art.
3. What are books made of ?
   a. Paper. b. Plastic. c. Cotton.

B. Vocabulary and structures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. .... is a kind of music.
   a. Rock b. Football c. Meat
2. How .... is the Cairo Tower ?
   a. fast b. tall c. heavy
3. I'm going to .... Aswan.
   a. visited b. visit c. visiting
4. A/An .... is a sea animal which has eight legs.
   a. octopus b. shark c. whale
5. .... was your weekend ? - It was great.
   a. When b. What c. How
6. .... work on ships and travel to many countries.
   a. Sailors b. Pilots c. Teachers

AltFwk.Com موقع التفوق

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the sentence under each picture and put (✓) or (✗) :



1. I like playing basketball. ( )



2. A T-shirt is made of cotton. ( )



3. He is a pilot. ( )

4 Finish the sentences with words from the list :

(cave – Did – go – faster – technology – aquarium)

1. Trains are .... than cars.
2. A/An .... is a hole in the mountains.
3. Let's .... to the zoo on Friday.
4. Modern .... improves our life.
5. .... you go to the park yesterday ?
6. I saw some colourful fish in the ....

5 Rearrange the words to make meaningful sentences :

1. live – **We** – on – Earth.
....
2. you – like – Egypt – **Do** ?
....
3. in – swam – **He** – the sea.
....

CamScanner ـب ضوئيا حة

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

Listening (Day 1)

1. In ancient Egypt, there weren't any bedrooms. People slept on roofs. There weren't also any taps. So people got their water from the Nile Valley.
2. Omar likes music. When Omar was 12, he learned the piano. When he was 14, he learned to play the trumpet. Omar likes jazz music.

End of term practice

Woman : Hello. I'd like to buy a new phone.

Assistant : Certainly. Which phone would you like ?

Woman : I like this one. It's small enough to go in my bag, too. I hope it's not too expensive!

Assistant : No, it is a good price. Excuse me, could you tell me what job you do ?

Woman : Well. I'm a person who takes photographs for a newspaper.

Assistant : Ah, you're a photographer, aren't you ?

Woman : That's right !

Listening Texts of Governorate Exams

1 Cairo Governorate
El Basateen Educational Directorate

Lina had a wonderful weekend. She was at the stadium. She watched a football match for her favourite team. Lina's team won the match.

2 Giza Governorate
Zayed Educational Directorate

Yesterday was really terrible. There wasn't a lot to do. We were on holiday in India and the weather was stormy and rainy. The weather is going to be better next week.

3 Alexandria Governorate
Al Gomrok Educational Directorate

Amira goes to Dahab with her family every year. Amira likes to go trekking in the desert. She loves the aquarium. In the evening, she likes to go to the sports centre.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate
Benha Educational Directorate

In the past, the sea was dangerous. They built a lighthouse in Alexandria. There were lots of rocks in the sea, so the lighthouse was important at that time. It was warning boats.

5 Sharkia Governorate
East Zagazig Educational Directorate

Dad likes sports. He is very good at football. Mum loves swimming. My brother doesn't like the countryside.

6 Menoufia Governorate
Sadat Educational Directorate

Eman is in Dahab. She is with her family. They are going to go trekking in the mountains. Rock climbing is exciting for Eman.

7 Gharbia Governorate
East Tanta Educational Directorate

Mohamed Salah is a great Egyptian footballer. He was born in Gharbia. He started playing football for Mokawloon team. He won the African player of the year in 2019.

8 Dakahlia Governorate
East Mansoura Educational Directorate

Our school went on a trip to the Grand Egyptian Museum last Friday. The GEM welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is only two kilometres from the Pyramids of Giza. The most beautiful part of the museum is the entrance.

9 Beheira Governorate
El Rahmaneya Educational Directorate

The Grand Egyptian Museum opened in 2019. The GEM is farther from the city centre than the old Museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids of Giza. The most beautiful part of the museum is the entrance. The statue of Ramsis II is 12 metres high.

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate
El Hamoul Educational Directorate

I am going to travel with family from Aswan to Luxor. We are going to leave Aswan in December. we are going to arrive in Luxor in January.

11 Damietta Governorate
El-Serw Educational Directorate

Many people enjoy walking across the Tahya Masr Bridge. The bridge has a glass floor. You can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

CamScanner ممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



12 Ismailia Governorate
Ismailia Educational Directorate

My birthday was last Monday. On my birthday, I went to the museum. I went to the museum with my mum. My brother took us to his favourite restaurant.

13 Port Said Governorate
South Educational Directorate

The woman wants to buy a new bag. It is small and cheap. The assistant asks the woman about her job. The woman is a journalist.

14 Beni Suef Governorate
Ihnasia Educational Directorate

Basel was born in 2007. Basel was born in Cairo. Basel started school in 2012. Basel is talking about the important events in his life.

15 Fayoum Governorate
Fayoum Educational Directorate

Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo. It is 540 m long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. It took 32 months to finish the bridge.



16 Minia Governorate
Minia Educational Directorate

Noha is an English teacher. She teaches primary school students. She helps her students understand their lessons. Miss Noha rewards her students when they do well.

17 Assiut Governorate
Abnoub Educational Directorate

My uncle's job is an engineer. He designs engines for cars. My aunt is a nurse. She works in a hospital.

18 Qena Governorate
Farshout Educational Directorate

My birthday was last Monday. On my birthday, my father bought me a new mobile. I went to the museum with my mum and sister. My brother took me to his favourite restaurant.

19 Sohag Governorate
Sohag Educational Directorate

Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. Robinson Crusoe's ship sank because there was a storm. Robinson Crusoe swam to a nearby island. Crusoe found no other people on the island.

20 Aswan Governorate
Aswan Educational Directorate

Basant is twelve years old. For her birthday, her friends went to the museum by bus. They saw the statues in the museum. They went to the funfair in the evening.

Listening Texts of Al - Azhar Exams

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif
Qalyubia Zone

An octopus can swim fast and it has got eight legs. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it.

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif
Sharkia Zone

The Tahya Masr Bridge is in Egypt. It has a glass floor.

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif
Alexandria Zone

Doctor : What's wrong with you ?
Doaa : I have a headache.
Doctor : When did it start ?
Doaa : Yesterday.
Doctor : Do you take aspirin ?
Doaa : Yes, I do.
Doctor : You should take this medicine twice a day.
Doaa : When can I come back ?
Doctor : Next week.

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif
Menoufia Zone

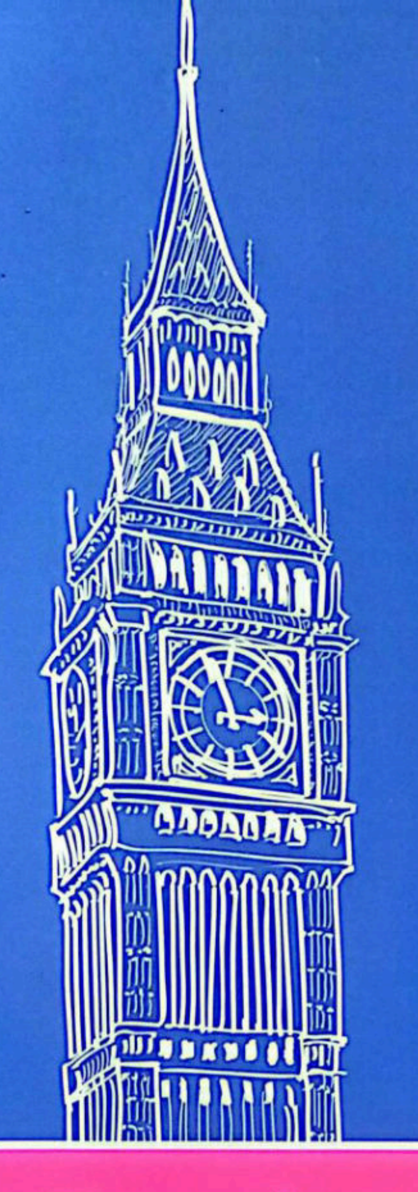
We have English four times a week. I watch TV before doing the homework.

5 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif
Minia Zone

Crusoe walked on the beach yesterday. He saw no one.



CamScanner تم المسح ضوئيا بـ





New Hello!

By a group of supervisors

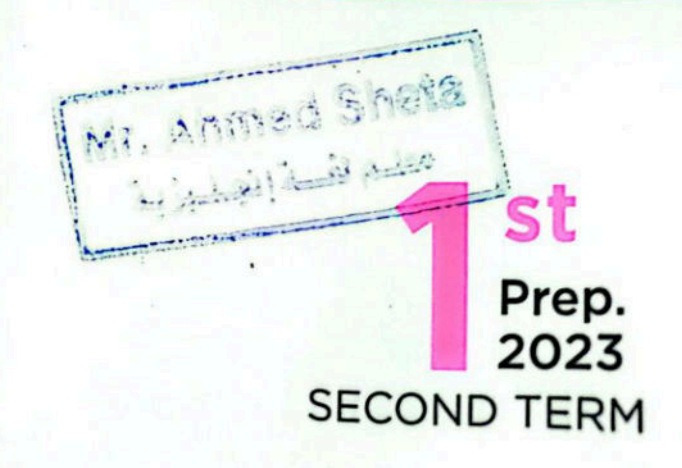


دليلك لاستخدام كتاب المعاصر
لتدريس فعال و مبدع

اهــداء من ...
سلسلة كتب المعاصر

Teacher's ORGANIZER

Your Guide To Creative and Effective Teaching



اهــداء من ...
سلسلة كتب المعاصر

1st Prep.
2023
SECOND TERM

SECTION 2

Answers of The Main Book (1st Prep)

إجابات كتاب الشرح المعاصر للصف الأول الإعدادى

Unit (7)

lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. exhibition
2. a. funfair
3. c. Museum
4. b. nervous
5. c. haircut
6. a. closed
7. c. planetarium
8. b. diary
9. c. solution
10. d. canteen
11. d. uniform
12. b. aquarium
13. d. stadium
14. c. aged
15. c. went

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. moved
2. c. feel
3. c. ago
4. b. Did
5. c. had
6. c. was
7. b. watched
8. c. visited
9. b. was
10. d. see
11. d. bought

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. sit (sat)
2. go (went)
3. did (was)
4. went (go)
5. today (yesterday)
6. did (do)
7. don't (wasn't)
8. didn't (weren't)
9. took (take)
10. last (ago)
11. do (did)
12. see (saw)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. sports
2. c. salads
3. c. sister
4. a. swimming

2. Complete the following dialogue :

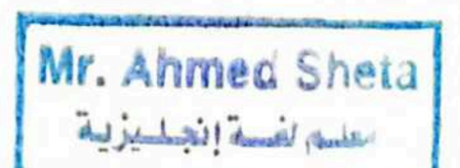
1. Yes. I did.
2. I spent it in a sports centre.
3. Who did you go with ?
4. I enjoyed swimming.
5. Is there a swimming pool ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. friendly
2. c. statues
3. d. funfair
4. b. stadium
5. c. make
6. b. canteen
7. d. planetarium
8. b. took
9. b. swam
10. d. eat

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. hurts (hurt)
2. is (was)
3. next (last)
4. have (had)



Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers.

lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. sailor
2. c. storm
3. b. jungle
4. d. opinion
5. c. adventure
6. a. sinks
7. b. terrible
8. c. voice
9. c. type
10. c. share
11. c. bad
12. b. island
13. c. interviewer
14. a. through
15. b. diary

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. does
2. b. go
3. d. Did you
4. c. haven't
5. d. Why
6. a. often
7. a. Is
8. d. Which
9. a. Has
10. c. Whose

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. we (she)
2. Where (How)
3. likes (like)
4. am (am not)
5. haven't (have)
6. Does (Do)
7. Why (How)
8. Who's (Whose)
9. many (much)
10. How (What)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I like pop music.
2. No, I don't.
3. Do you like listening to songs ?
4. I like to play the piano.
5. Who taught you to play the piano ?

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. adventure
2. a. music
3. c. rocks
4. c. nuts
5. b. write
6. b. opinion
7. d. musician
8. c. What
9. b. Who
10. c. Are

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. play (to play)
2. Do (Can)
3. studied (study)
4. does (has)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers.

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. peppers
2. b. hotel

3. a. thoughts
4. c. Olive
5. d. theatre
6. d. woke
7. c. writer
8. a. kind
9. d. terrible
10. a. includes
11. b. tired
12. c. windy
13. c. on
14. b. working
15. b. have
16. d. for

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. My father
2. c. Saturday
3. d. an hour
4. c. terrible

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Yes, I do.
2. What type of music do you like ?
3. Can you play musical instruments ?
4. I play the piano.
5. My father.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Olive
2. b. hope
3. b. windy
4. d. kind
5. c. concert
6. b. stayed
7. b. remind
8. a. although
9. b. was
10. b. took

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. is	(was)
2. get	(got)
3. Tomorrow	(Yesterday)
4. go	(went)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 7

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. watching sports
2. b. science
3. c. 5
4. d. busy

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Me, too.
2. What kind of music do you prefer ?
3. Who is your favourite singer ?
4. Yes, I do.
5. It's kind of you. / Thank you.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. wife
2. a. Stop
3. c. the new wife

b. Answer the following questions :

4. The story of Cinderella.
5. No, because the woman was so wicked and cruel.
6. By the help of a magician woman.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. sinks
2. a. take
3. a. terrible
4. b. Traditional
5. b. decisions
6. b. Museum
7. d. rode
8. b. watched
9. a. did
10. b. because

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم اللغة الإنجليزية

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. is	(was)
2. go	(went)
3. and	(but)
4. don't	(haven't)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

February assessment

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. car 2. c. twelve
3. b. statues 4. c. funfair

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I went to Al Azhar Park.
2. Who did you go with ?
3. What did you see there ?
4. Yes, I did.
5. Yes. We had a nice time.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. doctors 2. b. hate
3. c. worse

b. Answer the following questions :

4. I should be good at science.
5. Because they care about people.
6. Doctor's job.

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. planetarium 2. d. crowded
3. b. more 4. b. subject
5. a. shark 6. c. sailors
7. b. Were 8. c. richest
9. d. competition 10. d. of

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. arrived	(arrive)
2. best	(better)
3. less	(least)
4. didn't	(aren't)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Students' own answer.

Unit (8)

lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. Road 2. b. crowded
3. b. country 4. a. population
5. d. Bridge 6. a. empty
7. d. capital 8. a. ancient
9. a. tourists 10. a. visitors
11. c. links 12. b. Depth
13. d. tunnel 14. c. give
15. b. for

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. more crowded 2. c. longer
3. d. higher 4. c. better
5. c. noisier 6. a. than
7. b. more useful 8. d. colder than
9. b. warmer 10. c. than
11. d. nearer

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. easy	(easier)
2. longest	(longer)
3. tallest	(taller)
4. good	(better)
5. strong	(stronger)
6. nicest	(nicer)
7. most	(more)
8. far	(further / farther)
9. most	(more)
10. then	(than)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Yes, of course.
2. How high is the Great Pyramid ?
3. How many people live in Tokyo ?
4. The Nile.
5. Thank you.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. the highest 2. b. Tower
3. a. worse 4. b. taller
5. a. traffic 6. d. describe
7. b. many 8. c. tourists
9. b. crowded 10. c. longer

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. empty	(emptier)
2. hot	(hotter)
3. tall	(taller)
4. beautiful	(more beautiful)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. achievements 2. b. climbing
3. c. view 4. b. suspension
5. d. polite 6. b. floor
7. c. insect 8. b. expensive
9. a. wide 10. b. sunset
11. a. Dangerous 12. b. Ugly
13. b. across 14. d. with
15. d. of

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. widest 2. c. the biggest
3. d. the most difficult
4. d. the most expensive
5. c. largest 6. b. than
7. b. tallest
8. d. the most boring
9. d. the most exciting
10. b. best

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم اللغة الإنجليزية

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. busiest	(the busiest)
2. least	(less)
3. better	(best)
4. more	(most)
5. tall	(the tallest)
6. fast	(faster)
7. shorter	(shortest)
8. most	(the most)
9. further	(furthest)
10. young	(youngest)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. widest 2. a. May
3. c. wide 4. c. Island

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. dangerous 2. c. give
3. b. agree 4. b. biggest
5. c. more 6. c. floor
7. c. to 8. a. like
9. c. opinion 10. c. protect

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. more	(most)
2. much	(many)
3. more	(most)
4. good	(better)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. treasures 2. d. public
3. b. guidebook 4. c. display
5. d. welcomed 6. d. statue
7. b. space 8. c. fountain
9. c. reviews 10. c. unknown
11. c. entrance 12. b. museum
13. b. reason 14. a. to
15. a. why

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Kings 2. a. tourists
3. b. quietest 4. c. later

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. Hieroglyphics 2. b. objects
3. a. competition 4. a. guidebook
5. c. motorbike 6. c. oldest
7. b. valuable
8. b. most difficult 9. a. easiest
10. b. the highest

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. most	(more)
2. fast	(faster)
3. better	(best)
4. quieter	(quietest)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 8

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. 1759 2. d. 6,000,000
3. a. London 4. b. 13 million

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I went to Tahya Masr Bridge.
2. It is in Cairo.
3. Is it old ?
4. When did it open ?
5. It's made of glass.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. the bridge 2. d. glass
3. b. Warraq

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Tahya Masr Bridge.
5. At sunset.
6. Because we have a lot of great projects and achievements.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. Bridge 2. c. crowded
3. d. ugly 4. b. Quiet
5. c. space 6. d. treasures
7. c. columns 8. b. quieter
9. d. the nicest
10. d. easier than

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. high (higher)
2. long (the longest)
3. older (oldest)
4. tallest (taller)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Unit (9)

lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. tent 2. a. windsurfing
3. c. Rock climbing
4. b. trekking 5. a. sailing
6. b. diving 7. b. adventure
8. b. scary 9. b. plans
10. a. Bedouins 11. a. guide
12. c. wind 13. b. went
14. b. try 15. b. On

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. are going to 2. b. going
3. c. are 4. d. go
5. b. is going to 6. c. going to
7. c. is going to rain
8. b. are going to go
9. c. is going to 10. b. am

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. sleeping (sleep)
2. go (going)
3. yesterday (tomorrow)
4. has (is)
5. trying (to try)
6. bought (buy)

7. visit (to visit)
8. don't (am not)
9. Will (Are)
10. going (am going)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. In Dahab.
2. c. With her family.
3. b. Rock climbing.
4. a. This afternoon.

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I am going to the desert.
2. Why are you going to the desert ?
3. Do you think trekking is tiring ?
4. I'll take a bag, some foods and drinks.
5. I am going to try diving.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. trekking
2. b. Sailing
3. c. exciting
4. b. zip lining
5. b. Bedouin
6. c. windsurfing
7. b. journey
8. a. 'm going to travel
9. d. are not going
10. b. Are

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. last (next)
2. sleeping (to sleep)
3. from (of)
4. go (going)

lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. railway
2. a. weather
3. a. article
4. a. fire
5. b. challenge
6. d. snow
7. b. mirror
8. c. wind
9. c. foggy
10. c. made
11. c. keep
12. b. sunny
13. c. came
14. b. put
15. c. sounds

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. ourselves
2. d. themselves
3. d. myself
4. c. herself
5. a. yourself
6. a. himself
7. b. herself
8. c. yourselves
9. b. themselves
10. b. herself
11. a. yourself
12. a. myself

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. yourself (ourselves)
2. on (by)
3. themselves (herself)
4. myself (itself)
5. herself (yourself)
6. itself (themselves)
7. himself (herself)
8. with (by)
9. himself (yourself)
10. themselves (myself)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Yesterday
2. c. Sunny
3. a. Yes, we did.
4. c. Dark clouds.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. myself
2. b. yourself
3. b. herself
4. b. made
5. c. snow
6. b. wet
7. b. made
8. c. hurt
9. a. challenge
10. b. article

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. itself (himself)
2. herself (yourself)
3. herself (itself)
4. themselves (ourselves)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. magazines
2. b. station
3. b. album
4. a. special
5. b. mistakes
6. b. visit
7. c. respect
8. c. sounds
9. b. Dear
10. a. forms
11. a. advantages
12. b. do
13. c. made
14. c. to play
15. c. looking

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Maher
2. b. Alexandria
3. c. Tomorrow
4. a. train

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Let's play basketball.
2. Yes, I am.
3. Yes, I do.
4. Where do you practise it ?
5. How often do you practise it ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. Emails
2. a. station
3. d. introduction
4. a. made
5. a. excited
6. b. forms
7. c. do
8. b. go
9. c. How about
10. d. themselves

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. see (seeing)
2. playing (to play)
3. in (at)
4. spending (spend)

Test on Unit 9

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. South Africa
2. a. tomorrow
3. a. Yes, there's.
4. b. an adventure

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm going to travel.
2. To Paris.

3. Are you going to travel alone ?
4. How long will you stay there ?
5. Thank you.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. hope 2. c. grandad
3. d. a, b & c

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Karim's visit to his friend Maher.
5. Maher's new home is by the beach.
6. Yes, I think so as the album has many photos of the family.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. guide 2. b. adventure
3. c. zip 4. c. trekking
5. b. skill 6. a. equipment
7. d. towel
8. d. myself
9. d. 'm going to
10. d. is she going to

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. doing (do)
2. go (going)
3. me (myself)
4. flying (fly)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.



Unit (10)

lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. bricks 2. c. ovens
3. b. tap 4. a. stone
5. b. wallet 6. d. paint
7. c. seats 8. a. Leather
9. b. Cushions 10. b. glass
11. b. Wool 12. d. roof
13. c. plastic 14. d. metal
15. b. away

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. is 2. d. wasn't
3. b. weren't 4. b. was
5. a. made 6. c. weren't
7. c. are 8. c. were
9. d. it's 10. a. weren't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. were (was)
2. make (made)
3. were (weren't)
4. When (What)
5. aren't (weren't)
6. Is (Are)
7. some (any)
8. is (are)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. metal 2. c. windows
3. a. seats 4. a. plastic

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Metal 2. b. wood
3. c. ancient 4. d. Age
5. a. oven 6. b. village
7. a. leather 8. c. were
9. c. any 10. c. of

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. by (of)
2. is (are)
3. was (were)
4. were (weren't)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Solar panels 2. b. electric
3. b. Driverless 4. d. accidents
5. a. drone 6. d. warm
7. c. materials 8. a. architect
9. c. teachers 10. c. special
11. c. cool 12. a. earthquake
13. b. igloo 14. b. keep
15. d. make

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. use 2. c. bring
3. c. will 4. b. get
5. c. be 6. b. won't
7. d. will 8. c. will
9. d. have 10. a. will
11. b. will 12. d. won't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. being (be)
2. goes (go)
3. took (take)
4. been (be)
5. having (have)
6. Last (Next)
7. call (will call)
8. Do (Will)
9. happens (happen)
10. to build (build)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. in the future
2. c. Robots 3. b. plastic
4. c. cheap

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I am an architect.
2. What does an architect do ?
3. I'm designing a new house.
4. It will be on the roof.
5. Why ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Yurt 2. a. electricity
3. b. sun 4. d. Rockets
5. b. earthquake 6. c. drone
7. a. chargers 8. c. will have
9. c. be 10. b. go

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. would (will)
2. have ('ll have)
3. goes (go)
4. to have (have)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. timeline 2. d. amazing
3. c. technology 4. a. explain
5. a. won 6. c. Compare
7. d. shapes 8. c. tasks
9. c. country 10. a. creative
11. a. born 12. c. Imagination
13. b. Round 14. b. detail
15. b. moved

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. 2018 2. b. the Red Sea
3. a. Cairo 4. c. ride

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. imagination 2. a. plan
3. b. decided 4. a. fun
5. b. climb 6. b. creative
7. a. in
8. c. will you have
9. c. will be
10. b. look

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. is (was)
2. had (have)
3. on (in)
4. on (down)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 10

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Cairo
2. a. El Mokawloon
3. c. 1992
4. a. Basel

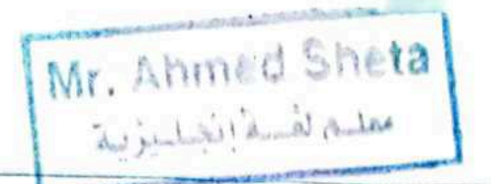
2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. They are made of leather.
2. When did you buy them ?
3. My mother.
4. Why ?
5. Sure.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. at the top 2. a. round
3. b. shapes



b. Answer the following questions :

4. Round houses around the world.
5. Yes, I think so as we use few materials to build them.
6. Heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. panels	2. a. amazing
3. c. modern	4. b. painted
5. c. work	6. d. Valley
7. a. oven	8. c. will
9. a. any	10. d. travel

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. used	(use)
2. some	(any)
3. is	(are)
4. been	(be)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

March assessment

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Dahab	2. c. family
3. b. trekking	4. d. scary

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Yes, I do.
2. Where was he born ?
3. What team does he play for ?
4. Yes, he is.
5. I think he is kind.

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. Marwan	2. d. angry
3. c. clever	

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Because he woke up late.
5. What happened to Marwan last Sunday ?
6. Because she knew that Marwan is a good student.

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. trekking	2. b. sank
3. d. Are	4. c. any
5. b. Drones	6. b. yourself
7. c. make	8. b. mirror
9. c. ovens	10. a. respect

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. been	(be)
2. himself	(themselves)
3. spent	(spend)
4. make	(made)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

Students' own answer.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

Unit (11)

lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. environment
2. b. whale
3. c. poisonous
4. d. jellyfish
5. c. turtle
6. d. tails
7. c. shark
8. c. rubbish
9. d. teeth
10. c. sting
11. a. planets
12. c. throw away
13. b. octopus
14. b. from
15. d. in

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. go
2. c. touch
3. c. have
4. c. watches
5. b. When
6. b. becomes
7. c. see
8. c. if
9. a. melts
10. b. happens

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. died (die)
2. Where (When)
3. turned (turns)
4. falling (falls)
5. boil (boils)
6. going (go)
7. eats (eat)
8. where (when)
9. be (is)
10. made (make)

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. mustn't
2. a. do
3. d. do
4. a. be
5. d. mustn't
6. a. put
7. c. should
8. a. mustn't
9. b. must
10. a. must

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. made (make)
2. must (mustn't)
3. came (come)
4. plays (play)
5. must (mustn't)
6. mustn't (must)
7. cleaned (clean)
8. mustn't (must)
9. used (use)
10. shouldn't (should)
11. tidies (tidy)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I think it is the shark.
2. Where do sharks live ?
3. What is a turtle ?
4. Because it protects the turtles from danger .
5. No, it doesn't.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. planet
2. c. use something again
3. a. stings
4. a. octopus

5. b. environment
6. d. teeth
7. c. turtles
8. a. should
9. c. save
10. d. rains

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. felt (feel)
2. mustn't (must)
3. shouted (shout)
4. cleaned (clean)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. seed
2. b. hole
3. b. frighten
4. a. soil
5. c. reserves
6. d. pay
7. c. knives
8. d. wash
9. c. phone call
10. d. healthy
11. c. warm
12. d. ground
13. c. Fishing line
14. b. Making
15. c. with

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. save
2. b. planet
3. a. Trees
4. b. air

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I went to a nature reserve.
2. I went by car.
3. What did you see there ?
4. No, I didn't.
5. Why is this place important ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. soil
2. b. reserves
3. a. healthy
4. c. empty
5. b. hole
6. c. seed
7. d. Cover
8. a. listen
9. c. mustn't
10. a. must

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. found (find)
2. sharing (share)
3. watered (water)
4. must (mustn't)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. writer
2. d. snack
3. a. headphones
4. c. respect
5. b. folded
6. d. suggested
7. b. brave
8. a. role
9. a. weak
10. d. teach
11. a. summarise
12. d. skeleton
13. a. fisherman
14. c. to pull
15. b. up

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. fisherman
2. c. catch
3. c. One day
4. a. at the end of

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm reading a story.
2. What is it about ?
3. It tells us about a brave fisherman.
4. Yes, he did.
5. Could he sell the fish at the market ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. comments
2. b. Respect
3. d. Brave
4. c. tiny
5. a. weak
6. c. gloves
7. d. real
8. b. must
9. d. mustn't
10. a. clean

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. mustn't	(must)
2. doing	(to do)
3. study	(to study)
4. threw	(throw)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 11

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. The shark
2. b. The shark
3. b. A new one grows
4. c. 20,000

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. What was it about ?
2. I learnt about sharks.
3. Are they dangerous ?
4. At the bottom of the sea.
5. You're right.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. paper and glass
2. a. reuse
3. d. plastic

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Recycling plastic.
5. Because they are easier to recycle.
6. Because plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. skeleton
2. d. Throw away
3. d. planet
4. b. environment
5. a. centre
6. c. character
7. c. nature
8. b. goes
9. c. mustn't
10. b. should I do

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. tidies	(tidy)
2. must	(mustn't)
3. we should	(should we)
4. rained	(rains)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Unit (12)

lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. architect
2. c. businessman
3. a. writer
4. c. designs
5. b. laboratory
6. c. computer programmer
7. d. reefs
8. b. volunteered
9. b. accountant
10. d. photographer
11. d. engine
12. d. scientist
13. b. a marine biologist
14. b. look
15. b. advised

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. who
2. a. speaks
3. d. won't
4. a. who
5. d. aren't you
6. a. doesn't she
7. d. who
8. c. don't
9. c. didn't
10. b. can't you
11. d. aren't they
12. c. aren't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. don't (didn't)
2. doesn't (don't)
3. don't (won't)
4. whose (who)
5. doesn't (is)
6. did (didn't)
7. is (isn't)
8. does (doesn't)
9. when (who)
10. this (who)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. marine biologist
2. a. the ocean
3. b. animals
4. c. ocean

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Fine, thanks.
2. Good idea.
3. What are your favourite subjects ?
4. What do you want to be ?
5. I want to be an engineer.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. test
2. b. scores
3. a. advice
4. c. photographer
5. b. Nurses
6. b. terrible
7. d. results
8. a. who
9. b. doesn't he
10. d. isn't he

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. whose (who)
2. isn't she (aren't they)
3. isn't (wasn't)
4. do (don't)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. earn
2. d. workshop
3. b. Education
4. d. university
5. c. apartment
6. b. skills
7. c. pass
8. c. get
9. b. local
10. b. Making
11. b. workshop
12. c. Culture
13. a. Basket
14. b. catch
15. b. have

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. see
2. a. take
3. c. have
4. d. If
5. a. stays
6. b. will punish
7. a. get
8. c. will
9. a. be
10. b. have
11. b. will you feel

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. lived (live)
2. swam (swim)
3. buys (buy)
4. ate (eat)
5. speak (will speak)
6. send (will send)
7. gets (get)
8. being (be)
9. would (will)
10. didn't (don't)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. baskets
2. a. earn
3. b. Ghana
4. b. women

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. got
2. c. drive
3. b. pass
4. a. modern
5. b. adult
6. a. repairing
7. a. jewellery
8. d. 'll study
9. a. visit
10. a. don't have

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Would (Will)
2. do (will)
3. 'm ('ll)
4. will be (is)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. technology
2. b. injury
3. b. illnesses
4. b. exciting
5. c. disappear
6. c. engineering
7. c. hopeful
8. c. introduce
9. d. description
10. d. personal information
11. a. countryside
12. b. cure
13. c. app
14. b. make
15. a. In

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. plans 2. a. guitar
3. c. design 4. c. Next year

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Technology 2. a. practise
3. c. make 4. a. Electric
5. b. hopeful 6. b. revise
7. c. countryside 8. a. does she
9. d. who 10. b. won't catch

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. going (go)
2. drives (drove)
3. is (isn't)
4. got (gets)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Test on Unit 12

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. An engineer
2. c. In a factory
3. d. b & c 4. a. Yes, it is.

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm a marine biologist.
2. A marine biologist usually studies the ocean.
3. What do you do ?
4. To study them.
5. Do you like diving ?

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. secondary.
2. a. flat
3. b. science

b. Answer the following questions :

4. The importance of education.
5. I think he is still a student.
6. A science teacher.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. diving
2. a. apartment
3. c. traditional
4. b. earn
5. b. pass
6. a. cures
7. c. accountant
8. d. doesn't she
9. d. will they
10. c. drives



5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. 'd ('ll)
2. got (gets)
3. isn't (doesn't)
4. which (who)

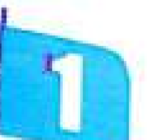
6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answer.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test



A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. In 2080, people will have .... cars.
   a. electric b. small c. driverless d. electronic
2. Driverless cars will be ....
   a. safer b. cleaner c. more dangerous d. faster
3. In 2080, there won't be .... car accidents.
   a. any b. many c. some d. no
4. A .... drives a driverless car.
   a. driver b. computer c. laptop d. mobile

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Ahmed is at a hotel to book a room.

Ahmed : Excuse me, can you help me?
Assistant : Yes , (1) ....[of course]....
Ahmed : I'd (2) ....[Like].... to book a room, please.
Assistant : Do you want a single or (3) ....[double].... room?
Ahmed : A single room , please. I am alone.
Assistant : How long will you stay?
Ahmed : I am going to stay here for a (4) ....[Week].... .
Assistant : OK sir. You have booked the room now.
Ahmed : How (5) ....[much].... does it cost ?
Assistant : A week here costs you 900 pounds.

darsenglizy.com

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Ann is from England. She is now in Egypt on holiday. She has spent two days in Aswan. She enjoys seeing the High Dam. She thinks the people of Aswan are so friendly. She still has five more days in her holiday. Her friend, Rahma, invited her to visit **her** village. Ann is going there tomorrow morning. She has decided to spend two days with her friend and her family. Rahma will show her how Egyptian villagers live and spend their day. Then, she will go to Alexandria for a day. She **intends to visit** the place where the Lighthouse was one day. She is going to stay the rest of her holiday in Cairo. She wants to visit the Egyptian Museum. Also, she 'd like to visit the Pyramids of Giza.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

   A visit to Egypt.

2. How long is Ann going to spend in Cairo?

   One day.

3. What do you think of Rahma ?

   I think She is Friendly.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ....
   a. Ann b. Rahma c. Rahma's mum d. holiday

5. The phrase "**intends to visit**" means ....
   a. is going to visit b. visited
   c. didn't visit d. is not going to visit

6. Ann wants to see the .... at Giza.
   a. High Dam b. Pyramids c. Cairo Tower d. villagers

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The car can't go into this street. It's very ....
   a. wide b. narrow c. deep d. low

darsenglizy.com

2. We went .... in the mountains.
   a. diving   b. snorkelling   c. windsurfing   d. trekking
3. I can't see while driving in a .... morning.
   a. hot   b. sunny   c. foggy   d. snowy
4. In the past, people usually slept on the .... to enjoy the cool weather at night.
   a. beds   b. roof   c. floor   d. attics
5. I write what happens to me every day in a ....
   a. photo   b. diary   c. dairy   d. search
6. A .... has three sides.
   a. square   b. triangle   c. circle   d. cube
7. My teacher was angry as I .... a lot of mistakes in the classroom.
   a. gave   b. made   c. did   d. took
8. If you touch a stingray, it .... you.
   a. stung   b. 'd sting   c. sting   d. stings
9. There .... a lot of traditional houses in the past.
   a. is   b. are   c. were   d. was
10. I can see .... in the mirror.
   a. me   b. myself   c. mine   d. I

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Hala didn't pass her exams, **does** she? (....did she....)
2. You **must** play with a knife. (....mustn't....)
3. What **does** Janna going to do on her weekend? (....is....)
4. Yesterday, I **draw** a nice picture. (....drew....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"An adventure sport"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 2

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. My birthday was last ....
   a. Sunday b. Monday c. Saturday d. Tuesday
2. On my birthday, I went to the ....
   a. museum b. Pyramids c. zoo d. tower
3. I went to the museum with my ....
   a. mum b. sister
   c. mum and sister d. father
4. In the evening, my brother took us to his favourite ....
   a. restaurant b. library c. playground d. museum

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nour asks his friend Ahmed about what he is doing.

Nour : Hi, Ahmed.

Ahmed : Hello, Nour.

Nour : What are you drawing ?

Ahmed : I'm drawing the (1) ...map... of Egypt.

Nour : What (2) ...Colour... will you use ?

Ahmed : Blue, (3) ...white... and green.

Nour : (4) ...Who... asked you to draw it ?

Ahmed : My geography teacher.

Nour : Why did he ask you to draw it ?

Ahmed : (5) Because he will teach us a lesson about Egypt tomorrow.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

The world's widest suspension bridge (Tahya Masr Bridge) opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 m long. More than 4,000 people helped to build **it**. They **started** building it in 2016. They finally finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
Tahya Masr Bridge.
2. What does the bridge cross ?
The Niles Alwarraq island.
3. What do you think of Tahya Masr Bridge ?
It's a greet bridge.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
a. Cairo b. Warraq Island
c. Tahya Masr Bridge d. The Nile
5. The bridge has a .... floor.
a. metal b. glass c. paper d. wool
6. The underlined word "**started**" means ....
a. began b. stopped c. ended d. finished

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Robinson Crusoe is a / an .... story by Daniel Defoe.
a. historical b. scientific c. adventure d. geographical
2. He used a .... to write down what happened to him.
a. dairy b. diary c. dialogue d. diagram

darsenglizy.com

3. We couldn't come on time because the streets were very ....
   a. quiet b. crowded c. modern d. wide
4. I am .... of my country. I like it very much.
   a. proud b. worried c. pleased d. frightened
5. When we go camping in the desert, we sleep in a ....
   a. tin b. tent c. team d. train
6. The lamp is made of ....
   a. stone b. leather c. glass d. metal
7. When a turtle is in danger, it .... into a shell.
   a. will go b. went c. go d. goes
8. A / An .... helps tourists to find new and exciting places.
   a. teacher b. cook c. engineer d. guide
9. A dentist is someone .... looks after your teeth.
   a. what b. which c. where d. who
10. Cairo is .... than Assuit.
   a. big b. biggest c. the biggest d. bigger

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You must **washing** your hands before eating food. (wash)
2. Adel didn't **bought** a car last week. (buy)
3. I'm 12 years old, **am not** I ? (aren't)
4. There **isn't** a school here two years ago. (wasn't)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your future house"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

Mr. Am... لغة إنجليزية

Sample Test 3

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. I am going to travel with my ....
   a. family b. teachers c. friends d. uncles
2. We are going to travel from .... to Luxor.
   a. Assuit b. Aswan c. Cairo d. Giza
3. We are going to leave Aswan in ....
   a. November b. December c. September d. April
4. We are going to .... in Luxor in January.
   a. leave b. live c. arrive d. stay

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Naglaa suggests doing some activities with her friend Mona.

Naglaa : Are you free today, Mona ?

Mona : Yes, I am.

Naglaa : So what (1) ...about... going swimming ?

Mona : I am sorry. I (2) ...don't... know how to swim.

Naglaa : OK. (3) ...why... don't we go to the park ?

Mona : To the park ? What will we do there ?

Naglaa : We can sit by the fountain, there.

Mona : I (4) ...don't... like this. How about going to the club ?

Naglaa : Great (5) ...idea... .

Mona : OK. Let's go then.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author of Robinson Crusoe, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor called Alexander Selkirk spent four years

darsenglizy.com

alone there. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe **spent** much longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was much hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe's Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after themselves. The nearest land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and a hospital on the island. **Those** are things that Crusoe did not have!

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

Robinson Crusoe.

2. How do we know that life on Robinson Crusoe Island is hard today ?

It's hot and far from land.

3. What does the underlined word "**Those**" refer to ?

Things that crusoe didn't have

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The nearest land, Chile, is 24 .... away by boat.
   a. days b. weeks c. months d. hours
5. They are going to .... a school and a hospital on the island.
   a. hit down b. break up c. damage d. build
6. The underlined word "**spent**" means ....
   a. stayed b. went c. travelled d. came back

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **A :** What do you .... about my new phone ?
   B : It's fantastic.
   a. agree b. dislike c. think d. disagree
2. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is ....
   a. empty b. low c. noisy d. crowded
3. To .... means to get money by working.
   a. fly b. grow c. feed d. earn

darsenglizy.com

4. I like the coral .... in the Red Sea.
a. fish b. plastic c. lines d. reefs

5. The circle has a .... shape.
a. square b. triangular c. rectangular d. round

6. Houses and buildings are made of ....
a. stone b. leather c. glass d. metal

7. I'll be happy if he .... me.
a. help b. will help c. helps d. helped

8. I .... a fantastic weekend last week.
a. has b. have c. am having d. had

9. How .... is the road ? - 12 m wide.
a. wide b. widest c. wider d. width

10. .... can do many things for us. Some of them can talk.
a. Robots b. Rabbits c. Rules d. Rockets

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Don't waste **yourself** time. (Your)
2. **Are** you like football ? (Do)
3. It isn't a car, **does** it ? (is)
4. He is going to travel **in** bus. (by)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Sea animals"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 4

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did you watch the TV programme ?
   a. Last weekend b. Next week c. Yesterday d. Tomorrow
2. .... is the author of Robinson Crusoe.
   a. Shakespeare b. Daniel Defoe c. Charles Dickens d. Conan Doyle
3. Alexander Selkirk was a ....
   a. teacher b. doctor c. sailor d. carpenter
4. Alexander Selkirk spent .... years on the island alone.
   a. forty b. fourteen c. four d. three

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sami is talking to Adel about his visit to Sinai.

Sami : Where are you going ?

Adel : I am going to Sinai.

Sami : (1) Why do you visit Sinai?

Adel : To spend some time there.

Sami : (2) What are you going to do there ?

Adel : I am going to go mountain climbing.

Sami : Oh, no . It's (3) dangerous

Adel : I know, but I'd (4) Like to try.

Sami : So, is your bag ready for this ?

Adel : (5) Yes, it is.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places. The Valley of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists to visit. We went early

darsenglizy.com

because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is **fantastic**!" I am sure it gets busier later on during the day.

The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall, a 5,000-square-metre "room" with 134 stone columns. I think **it** was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.

In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple. It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

A holiday in Egypt.

2. What are the places mentioned in the passage ?

The vally of the kings, Habu Temple and Karnak Temple.

3. Why do you think people like to visit these places ?

Because it's wonderful placas

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**fantastic**" means ....
   a. harmful b. traditional c. wonderful d. expensive
5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. the Karnak Temple b. the holiday c. the stone d. the Hypostyle Hall
6. Many people visit the Valley of the Kings ....
   a. early in the morning b. late in the evening c. during the day d. early at night

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Most windows are made of ....
   a. wool b. glass c. cotton d. paper
2. It is important to .... older people.
   a. recycle b. respect c. design d. imagine

darsenglizy.com

3. A/An .... is someone who is good at numbers.
   a. architect   b. accountant
   c. computer programmer   d. sailor
4. Basem is 22. He is a/an ....
   a. child   b. adult   c. baby   d. old man
5. A/An .... is a very large sea.
   a. coral reef   b. laboratory   c. ocean   d. result
6. Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun.
   a. plants   b. stars   c. planets   d. machines
7. It never .... in Egypt but it often rains.
   a. snows   b. blows   c. pours   d. drips
8. If we add red and yellow, we .... orange colour.
   a. gets   b. got   c. getting   d. get
9. This is the dentist .... looks after people's teeth.
   a. what   b. which   c. where   d. who
10. Cairo is one of .... cities in Africa.
   a. big   b. biggest   c. the biggest   d. bigger

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. You **must to** wash your hands before eating food. (..........................)
2. Ashraf **doesn't** buy an ice cream yesterday. (..........................)
3. Ayman is a pupil, isn't **she** ? (..........................)
4. **Are** there any friends in yesterday's party ? (..........................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Transport today"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Mr. Ahmed Shata
معلم لغة إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

5 Sample Test

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. We are going to visit the nature reserve ....
   a. today b. yesterday c. tomorrow d. next week
2. Many .... things live in the nature reserve.
   a. unimportant b. important c. dangerous d. wild
3. Plants, animals and birds live in the ....
   a. home b. sea c. nature reserve d. house
4. We must be .... of what we do.
   a. careful b. careless c. angry d. sad

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Bassem asks Mazen about his interests.

Bassem : How is your school ?

Mazen : It's a good one.

Bassem : (1) ....which.... subject is the easiest one ?

Mazen : I think English is the easiest.

Bassem : I (2) ....disagree.... with you. I think maths is the easiest.

Mazen : So what do you (3) ....think.... about sports ?

Bassem : (4) ....I think.... football is the most popular sport.

Mazen : I (5) ....agree.... with you, most people like it.

Bassem : Do you play it ?

Mazen : Of course.

darsenglizy.com

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education is very important. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject. I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an **apartment** near the Red Sea. I'll get married but, how many children will I have ? I don't know!

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   Education is very important.
2. What do you think about the writer ?
   He likes eduction ?
3. What is the writer's favourite job ?
   His Favourite Job is teaching.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. After finishing .... school, you can go to university.
   a. primary b. preparatory c. secondary d. nursery
5. The underlined word "**apartment**" means a ....
   a. flat b. park c. garden d. beach
6. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. maths b. subject c. university d. work

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like playing on the big .... at the funfair.
   a. wall b. whale c. wheel d. hole
2. Terrible means very ....
   a. good b. relaxed c. bad d. relaxing

darsenglizy.com

3. To earn means to get money by ....
a. working b. stealing c. playing d. drinking

4. Assuit is not a very big ....
a. country b. city c. town d. island

5. The .... is the person who shows a place to tourists.
a. sailor b. engineer c. guide d. farmer

6. It is usually very .... in August.
a. sunny b. windy c. foggy d. stormy

7. You can turn the .... to get water.
a. top b. tap c. tape d. lap

8. There .... trains in 1900, but there weren't any TVs.
a. was b. were c. are d. is

9. I think we .... more robots in our schools.
a. had b. have c. will have d. would have

10. .... was your weekend ? – It was great.
a. How b. What c. When d. Why

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She doesn't want to travel, **didn't** she ? (does)
2. Last weekend, we **go** to the club. (went)
3. I passed the exam **so** it was difficult. (but)
4. Mona is **oldest** than Hala. (older)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"How to protect our environment"

Mr. Ahmed Shata

....
....
....
....
....
....

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 6

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where did Dareen spend her holiday? - In ....
   a. Sydney b. Delhi c. Cairo d. Tokyo
2. Did they climb the bridge?
   a. Yes, they did. b. No, they didn't. c. I don't know. d. Sure.
3. Dareen .... water sports.
   a. loves b. doesn't love c. dislikes d. hates
4. Dareen went ....
   a. swimming b. trekking c. sailing d. windsurfing

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :



Roaa and Ayman are talking about nature.

Roaa : What are you doing?
Ayman : I am (1) reading a book.
Roaa : What is the book (2) about ?
Ayman : It is about nature.
Roaa : So, do you like nature?
Ayman : Yes, I do.
Roaa : (3) What must we do to protect animals in danger?
Ayman : We must put them in a nature (4) Reserve
Roaa : What is a nature reserve?
Ayman : It is an area of land where we can (5) Protect endangered animals and plants.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons!

darsenglizy.com

A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. **It** is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or a square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the best title for this passage?
   A round houses .
2. What's your opinion about round houses?
   It's strong, Cool and warm
3. Find a word in the passage which means **"not old"**.
   modern .

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun " **It**" refers to ....
   a. roof b. a round house
   c. rain d. snow
5. It is .... inside a round house.
   a. noisy b. quiet c. bad d. very cold
6. It is important for houses to be strong when there is ....
   a. wind b. rain c. an earthquake d. a, b and c

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. We can see a lot of ancient objects in a ....
   a. supermarket b. hospital c. gym d. museum
2. People have different .... about music.
   a. opinions b. classes c. rocks d. mountains
3. Cairo .... is very amazing with its view from its top.
   a. Bridge b. Tower c. Tour d. Tunnel

darsenglizy.com

4. How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert .... ?

a. street b. way c. line d. road

5. It's not polite to tell a girl that she is ....

a. harmful b. amazing c. fantastic d. ugly

6. Rock climbing is very .... I am afraid to do it.

a. scary b. easy c. interesting d. exciting

7. .... are used in cooking or heating food.

a. Fridges b. Washing machines
c. Ovens d. Turbines

8. If we work hard, Egypt .... the richest country in the world.

a. is b. will be c. was d. were

9. What about .... the Pyramids at Giza?

a. visits b. visited c. visiting d. to visit

10. Do you and your brother do the washing .... ?

a. yourself b. ourselves c. themselves d. yourselves

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. He went **shop** yesterday. (Shopping)
2. Sally is the **taller** girl in the class. (tallest)
3. Books are **making** of paper. (made)
4. Toka likes pop music, **does** she? (doesn't)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Life in the future"

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

....
....
....
....
....
....

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 7

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. What is the important part of African culture? - Making ....
   a. shirts b. gloves c. baskets d. pots
2. Making baskets is a way to .... money.
   a. earn b. lose c. waste d. spend
3. What is the African country mentioned in the passage?
   a. Somalia b. Ghana c. Guinea d. Egypt
4. There are a lot of .... who make and sell baskets in Ghana.
   a. boys b. men c. women d. children

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nour asks Adel some questions about materials.

Nour : Hi Adel. Are you good at science?

Adel : Hi Nour. Yes, I am (1) ....good.... .

Nour : Do you know about materials?

Adel : Yes, I do.

Nour : (2) ....what.... are cars made of ?

Adel : Most parts are made of (3) ....metal.... .

Nour : Good! What are coats made of ?

Adel : Coats are made of (4) ....wool.... .

Nour : (5) ....where.... do we get wool?

Adel : We get wool from sheep.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Sunday 8th May

Yesterday, our family moved to our new house in Alexandria. It took three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

darsenglizy.com

Monday 9th May

This morning, mum and I went shopping to buy a new school uniform for me. I hope students are friendly in my new school!

Tuesday 10th May

Today, I went to my new school. I was quite **nervous**, but I sat next to a boy called Sami and **he** was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen.

Adam

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea in this email ?

   Adam's diary.

2. What do you think Adam felt at the end of Tuesday? Why?

   He felt happy because his friend was kind.

3. Why did Adam and his mum go shopping?

   To buy a new school uniform.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**nervous**" means very ....
   a. worried b. happy c. relaxed d. quiet

5. The canteen is the place where we can ....
   a. practise sports b. read books
   c. have meals or drinks d. sleep

6. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to ....
   a. Adam b. Adam's father c. Sami d. a student

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What is .... about your school?
   a. cheap b. special c. fast d. expensive

2. Is your house .... or modern?
   a. traditional b. colourful c. technological d. big

3. There is a .... over the river .
   a. bridge b. city c. pyramid d. tunnel

darsenglizy.com

4. We can get water from .... at home.
a. tapes b. taps c. canals d. clouds

5. My father .... married in 1994.
a. gave b. made c. got d. passed

6. The .... is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean.
a. camel b. shark c. jellyfish d. octopus

7. Walaa saw the .... of Ramses II out of the museum.
a. statue b. bed c. room d. entrance

8. It is cloudy, it .... rain.
a. going to b. will c. won't d. is going to

9. Kareem will buy a car for Shimaa , ... he?
a. don't b. isn't c. won't d. didn't

10. I will get a reward if I .... first in the final exam.
a. comes b. came c. coming d. come

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I was sad **so** my team lost the game. (because)
2. What **will** you do last weekend? (did)
3. Dalia is the **older** in our family. (oldest)
4. The cat is cleaning **myself**. (itself)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your plans for your summer holiday"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did you first go to your new school? - Last ....
   a. Sunday b. Monday c. Tuesday d. Thursday
2. You were quite ....
   a. nervous b. pleased c. happy d. sad
3. Who did you sit by?
   a. Sami b. Sam c. Samir d. Seif
4. What meal did you have with Sami?
   a. Breakfast b. Dinner c. Lunch d. Snack

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ramy asks Hany about his visit to the zoo.

Ramy : Good morning.

Hany : Good morning .

Ramy : Did you (1) .... the zoo?

Hany : Yes , I did.

Ramy : What did you see there?

Hany : A lot of (2) ....

Ramy : Were there any elephants?

Hany : (3) .... Did you know that elephants eat (4) .... ?

Ramy : No, I (5) ....

Hany : Thanks for your time.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the

darsenglizy.com

museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,575 designs from more than 80 different countries.

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is **further** from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. **It** has more space for valuable objects. More people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

The Grand Egyption museum

2. What do you think of The Grand Egyptian Museum?

It has more Space for many objects.

3. How old is the oldest museum?

187 Years

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

4. The underlined word "**further**" is the opposite of ....

a. nearer b. far c. open d. ancient

5. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....

a. GEM b. Giza
c. the old museum d. the city centre

6. The museum is a place to keep .... on display.

a. pyramids b. treasures c. visitors d. designs

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like the .... of Amr Diab. He sings well.

a. voice b. noise c. silence d. sound

2. There are a lot of .... in the mountains of Sinai.

a. carpets b. materials c. islands d. caves

3. "Ancient" is the opposite of ".........................."

a. expensive b. beautiful c. dangerous d. modern

darsenglizy.com

The Valley of the Kings is one of the most .... places for tourists to visit in Egypt.

a.popular b.crowded c.empty d.quickest

A/An .... can swim fast and has got eight legs.

a.shark b.jellyfish c.octopus d.coral reef

. When I am .... , I have something to eat.

a.hot b.tired c.hungry d.thirsty

'. Cars are made of ....

a.cotton b.paper c.metal d.leather

3. The person .... lives next door is my neighbour.

a.who b.which c.what b.where

9. Tomorrow, Mrs Azza .... her students how to divide numbers.

a.teaches b.will teach c.taught d.are teaching

10. Hala is a teacher, ... she?

a.doesn't b.didn't c.can't d.isn't

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Did you **gave** your uncle his jacket? (give)
2. Adel **are** going to visit Luxor next week. (is)
3. Hana and Asmaa washed the carpets **herself**. (themselves)
4. You **mustn't** obey your teachers. (must)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite job"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 9

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Hoda is a/an .... teacher.
   a. maths b. French c. English d. science
2. She works at a .... school.
   a. secondary b. primary c. preparatory d. kindergarten
3. She helps her students .... their lessons.
   a. understand b. work c. write d. read
4. **A :** What does Miss Hoda do when her students do well?
   B : She .... them.
   a. punishes b. visits c. rewards d. hits

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rashad asks Ziad about his weekend in Alexandria.

Rashad : Good morning.
Ziad : (1) Good morning
Rashad : Where did you (2) spend your weekend?
Ziad : I spent it in Alexandria.
Rashad : How was the weather like there?
Ziad : It was (3) Sunny.
Rashad : Fantastic! What (4) kind of food did you eat there?
Ziad : I ate fish .
Rashad : What else did you do there?
Ziad : I (5) swam in the sea.

darsenglizy.com

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions :**

To : Karim
From : Maher
Subject : Future plans
Dear Karim,

I am really excited that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I am looking forward to seeing you again. **What time** does your train arrive? We can meet at the station. Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving? On Thursday , Grandad is going to visit us. Let's get **him** a special present. Why don't we take photos of ourselves and our cousins? We can make him a photo album.

See you on Saturday!
Maher

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this email.
   .... Future Plans. ....
2. When is Grandad going to visit Maher's family?
   .... On Thursday. ....
3. Why do you think they can go swimming every day ?
   Because maher's home is by the beach.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word **"him"** refers to ....
   a. Karim b. Maher c. Grandad d. Maher's brother
5. Maher suggested going ....
   a. only windsurfing b. only diving
   c. diving and swimming d. none of them
6. The underlined words **"What time"** means ....
   a. Where b. Why c. When d. How

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. People can practise a sport in a sports ....
   a. aquarium b. funfair c. centre d. alley

darsenglizy.com

2. A / An .... is a piece of land in a sea , a river or an ocean.
   a. island b. field c. station d. uniform
3. He dug a .... under his house to leave in time of danger.
   a. bridge b. city c. pyramid d. tunnel
4. There is no water in the glass. The glass is ....
   a. narrow b. wide c. empty d. crowded
5. The Great Pyramid is 146 metres ....
   a. wide b. high c. heavy d. long
6. Marwa .... married in 2011.
   a. gave b. made c. got d. passed
7. Bags and shoes are made of ....
   a. cotton b. paper c. metal d. leather
8. Abd el Rahman didn't .... bowling last week.
   a. goes b. went c. go d. going
9. I like jazz, ... it's exciting.
   a. because b. and c. or d. but
10. Reem is .... than Rana.
   a. older b. old c. oldest d. the oldest

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. The street is 4 metres **widest**. (wide)
2. Menna made the bed **himself**. (herself)
3. Let's **eating** some apples. (eat)
4. An architect is someone **which** designs buildings. (Who)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"How to plant a tree"

....
....
....
....
....
....

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. My .... was last Saturday.
   a. weekend b. birthday c. holiday d. wedding
2. Last Saturday, we went to the ....
   a. citadel b. museum c. pyramids d. park
3. I went there with my ....
   a. mum b. sister
   c. mum and sister d. father
4. We saw some old .... there.
   a. statues b. birds c. tourists d. buildings

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Huda asks Mona about her first visit to Cairo.

Huda : Is this your first visit to Cairo ?

Mona : Yes, it is. Can you (1) ..tell.......... me where Qasr El-Nil Bridge is ?

Huda : It's (2) ..in.......... the city centre.

Mona : Is it near the River Nile ?

Huda : (3) ..yes,.......... it is.

Mona : Is it only for cars and buses to go across it ?

Huda : No, people can (4) ..go.......... across it , too.

Mona : (5) ..What.......... do people enjoy there ?

Huda : People enjoy walking on its pavements.

Mona : Thanks for your help.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time.

darsenglizy.com

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can **recycle** some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100.000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Dolphins and sea birds also swim into plastic fishing lines.

We must try to use other materials such as paper and glass, for example, because **these** are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we should try to use it more than once. We mustn't throw away these bags.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

Plastic

2. What do you think about plastic ?

We use it for many things but it is dangerous

3. Why is plastic dangerous for animals and birds ?

Because it's poisonous when animals eat.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**these**" refers to ....
   a. dolphins   b. paper and glass
   c. fishing lines   d. animals
5. The word "**recycle**" means ....
   a. use again   b. wash
   c. stay   d. find out
6. It's better to use paper than ....
   a. glass   b. bags   c. fishing   d. plastic

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How long is the Cairo - Alexandria desert .... ?
   a. way   b. road   c. street   d. land
2. Don't worry, there's enough .... to build your house.
   a. piece   b. space   c. peace   d. sand

darsenglizy.com

3. My brother likes mountain ....
   a. diving b. lining c. climbing d. sailing
4. I slept in a .... when I went camping in the desert.
   a. bedroom b. hostel c. tent d. hotel
5. He fell over as the street was very ....
   a. paved b. cloudy c. dry d. wet
6. My teacher was angry as I .... a lot of mistakes.
   a. gave b. made c. did d. took
7. That .... easy to practise your sport in your free time.
   a. sounds b. comes c. means d. makes
8. He's going to go ....
   a. sail b. sailed c. to sail d. sailing
9. There .... any children in the cinema.
   a. are b. aren't c. is d. isn't
10. You want to be an engineer, ... ?
   a. do you b. are you c. aren't you d. don't you

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I'll study maths if I **am going** to the university. (go)
2. You mustn't **to cross** the road when the traffic light is red. (cross)
3. Did he **hurts** himself ? (hurt)
4. Salah is the **good** player in our national football team. (best)

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A day at school"

....

....

....

....

....

....

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 11

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. I'm going to Sinai next ....
   a. holiday b. Saturday c. Monday d. Tuesday
2. I'm going to Sinai with my ....
   a. friends b. brother c. family d. father
3. .... looks scary.
   a. Diving b. Climbing c. Zip lining d. Sailing
4. I'm going to .... zip lining.
   a. help b. try c. visit d. see

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Adam asks Esam about his favourite story.

Adam : What are you reading ?

Esam : I'm reading a (1) ....

Adam : What kind of story is it ?

Esam : It's an (2) .... story.

Adam : Oh! I know you like adventure stories. What is it (3) .... ?

Esam : "Robinson Crusoe".

Adam : Who is Robinson Crusoe ?

Esam : He is a (4) .... His ship sank and he swam to an island.

Adam : Were there any (5) .... with him on the island ?

Esam : No, he was alone on the island.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Although Karim and Ramzy are twins, they are different in some ways. For example, Karim's favourite hobby is playing football. He plays it with

his friends at school and in a club near their school. He also watches football matches on TV at home after finishing his homework. On the other side, Ramzy is very interested in music. He plays it in a **band** at school. At home, he likes listening to music on the radio or plays the guitar. Their parents help **them** study hard for school and also let them enjoy their hobbies.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Where does Karim play football ?

In a club near his school.

2. Do you think Ramzy is interested in music ? How ?

Yes, Because he plays in a band at school.

3. What is the main idea of this passage ?

Different hobbies.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. How are Karim and Ramzy different ?

a. In their hobbies. b. They have different classes.
c. In their schools. d. With their friends.

5. The underlined pronoun **"them"** refers to ....

a. schools b. their parents c. hobbies d. the twins

6. A "**band**" is ....

a. some people who play music together
b. some people who play a sport together
c. some people who have the same sport
d. some people who cook together

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We went to the .... to enjoy seeing planets and stars.

a. planetarium b. sports centre c. funfair d. aquarium

2. I write what happens to me every day in a ....

a. photo b. diary c. dairy d. search

3. There will be a .... over the river.

a. line b. road c. tunnel d. bridge

darsenglizy.com

4. We must protect our ....
   a. environment   b. smoke   c. fire   d. dust
5. Tourists usually have a .... to show them where to go.
   a. passenger   b. manager   c. traveller   d. guide
6. I bought a/an .... to cook food inside.
   a. top   b. spoon   c. oven   d. kitchen
7. .... are machines which can do many things for us.
   a. Solar panels   b. Turbines   c. Robots   d. Rabbits
8. What must you .... before exams ?
   a. do   b. to do   c. doing   d. to doing
9. She made a very nice cake, ... she ?
   a. did   b. didn't   c. does   d. don't
10. I like playing football, ... I don't like playing tennis.
   a. and   b. but   c. because   d. so

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What is the **better** time to walk across the bridge ? (best)
2. Are you going **trying** rock climbing ? (to try)
3. My uncle Samy hurt **themselves**. (himself)
4. This wallet is made **by** leather. (of)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"What job you want to do"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 12

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Basel was born in ....
   a. 2007 b. 2012 c. 2000 d. 2016
2. Basel is talking about the important .... in his life.
   a. accidents b. months c. events d. times
3. Basel was born in ....
   a. Luxor b. Cairo c. Alexandria d. Aswan
4. Basel .... school in 2012.
   a. started b. finished c. ended d. built

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Asem asks his friend Nabil about his last weekend.

Asem : Did you enjoy your last weekend ?

Nabil : Yes, I (1) ....did.... .

Asem : Where did you spend it ?

Nabil : In a (2) ....Sport.... centre.

Asem : (3) ....Who.... did you go with ?

Nabil : With my friends.

Asem : What did you enjoy doing there ?

Nabil : I enjoyed (4) ....Swimming.... and diving.

Asem : Is there a swimming (5) ....Pool.... ?

Nabil : Yes, there is.



C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains

darsenglizy.com

from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The **journey** is going to take me 43 days.

Here's my plan :

3rd March leaves Ras Shetan

14th March arrives at Ein Kidd

30th March arrives at St. Catherine

1st April climbs Mount Catherine

15th April arrives at Serabit el Khadem

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

A big adventure .

2. Do you like trekking ? Why ?

Yes, It's exciting .

3. What do you think about this journey ?

Its a nic journey .

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. Sinai b. trekking c. next year d. 500 km
5. The underlined word "**journey**" means a ....
   a. long trip b. short trip c. stay d. visit
6. The writer is going to sleep in a .... in Sinai.
   a. tent b. skyscraper c. flat d. room

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like mountain .... very much although it's difficult.
   a. driving b. climbing c. diving d. riding
2. Buses, cars and trains are means of ....
   a. railways b. stations c. transport d. machines
3. I gave a special .... to my father on his birthday party.
   a. present b. prize c. value d. scene

darsenglizy.com

4. The view from the top of the tower is very .... I like it.
   a. dangerous b. fantastic c. terrible d. tiring
5. The television is made of ....
   a. glass b. plastic
   c. glass and plastic d. wood and plastic
6. The .... is at the top of a house or a building.
   a. ground b. wall c. roof d. floor
7. .... cars won't need drivers.
   a. Electric b. Driverless c. Traditional d. Modern
8. If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you.
   a. sting b. stings c. stung d. would sting
9. It isn't hot today, ... ?
   a. is it b. isn't it c. it isn't d. it is
10. When did they .... building it ?
   a. start b. started c. to start d. starting

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The children made these toys **itself**. (themseleye)
2. Trains are **fast** than buses. (Faster)
3. I'm going **visit** Sinai. (To visit)
4. You **must** play with the knives. (mustnt)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sport"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 13

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Our planet is the ....
   a. Earth b. Mars c. Jupiter d. Uranus
2. .... trees keeps our air healthy.
   a. Buying b. Climbing c. Selling d. Planting
3. Throwing rubbish is ....
   a. safe b. healthy c. dangerous d. good
4. We should help to .... our planet.
   a. save b. throw c. plant d. draw

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer asks his friend Tarek about his favourite hobby.

Tamer : What's your favourite hobby ?

Tarek : I (1) ....like.... playing music.

Tamer : When did you start playing it ?

Tarek : (2) ....when.... I was 7 years old.

Tamer : (3) ....what.... do you like playing ?

Tarek : I like playing the trumpet.

Tamer : Why do you like it ?

Tarek : Because it is (4) ....nice.... .

Tamer : Who (5) ....taught.... you to play the trumpet ?

Tarek : My uncle. He is a famous musician.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects.

darsenglizy.com

About six million visitors go **there** every year. The museum has the largest collection of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian **hieroglyphics** for the first time.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of this passage ?

The British museum.

2. Do you think museums are wonderful ? Why ?

Yes, because it has many important objects.

3. When did the Rosetta Stone arrive at the British Museum ?

In 18.2.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. **"Hieroglyphics"** is a ....
   a. statue b. language c. temple d. museum
5. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ....
   a. visitors b. Italy
   c. Egypt d. the British Museum
6. London is a famous .... in Europe.
   a. museum b. city c. country d. statue

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There are trees in a park near my house, but in Al-Azhar Park, the trees are ....
   a. tall b. taller c. the tallest d. taller than
2. I made this cake ....
   a. ourselves b. myself c. himself d. herself
3. The pupils won't be late again, ... ?
   a. won't they b. don't they c. will they d. they will

darsenglizy.com

4. I wrote the most important events in my life in a .... :
   a. calendar   b. timetable   c. timeline   d. research

5. He put on a hat to .... himself from the sun.
   a. please   b. protect   c. find   d. hurt

6. **A :** What's your .... about the new hotel ?
   B : Wonderful.
   a. hobby   b. sight   c. opinion   d. view

7. .... are dangerous birds.
   a. Pigeons   b. Eagles   c. Flies   d. Snakes

8. When was the Stone .... ?
   a. Statue   b. Time   c. Mountain   d. Age

9. We use a .... to stir sugar and tea.
   a. teaspoon   b. wallet   c. knife   d. bag

10. They wanted to make the walls more beautiful, so they .... them in bright colours.
   a. built   b. moved   c. painted   d. stayed

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They bought a new car because they **have** anyone before. (haven't)
2. You should **takes** care when walking in the street. (take)
3. She was here yesterday, **isn't** she ? (wasn't)
4. My brother is **old** than my friend. (older)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"The Egyptian Museum"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 14

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Marvin is a famous ....
   a. musician b. player c. writer d. teacher
2. Marvin .... songs.
   a. listens to b. sings c. writes d. records
3. He learned to play music when he was ....
   a. ten b. twelve c. eleven d. seven
4. He plays the.......................... in a jazz band.
   a. piano b. guitar c. trumpet d. drums

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hana and Sama are talking about houses in China.

Hana : Did you travel to any place ?

Sama : Yes, I travelled to (1) ....china..........

Hana : What (2) ....kinds.... of houses are in China ?

Sama : They are (3) ....round

Hana : Strange! You mean they are looking like a circle.

Sama : Yes, because there is a strong wind.

Hana : What are they (4) ....made.... of ?

Sama : Wood, but strong and cheap.

Hana : I hope I can (5) ....built.... one.

Sama : So, get an architect to do it for you.

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In **ancient** Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. The people from that village worked in the Valley of the Kings. **There** were 68 houses. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors were

darsenglizy.com

made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night. There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps. People got their water from the Nile Valley, about two kilometres away.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

   Ancient Egypt.

2. What do you think about life in that village ?

   It's beautiful.

3. What does the underlined word "**There**" refer to ?

   Houses in Deir-elmedina.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Taps are used to ....

   a. get water   b. bake bread   c. sleep on   d. buy bread

5. People in Deir el-Medina used to sleep ....

   a. in tents   b. on the roofs
   c. in the bedrooms   d. in the kitchens

6. The underlined word "**ancient**" is the opposite of ....

   a. colourful   b. dangerous   c. modern   d. further

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Many people use .... bags to put their things in.

   a. wood   b. metal   c. glass   d. plastic

2. To build a house, you think of the design and the .... you will use.

   a. rooms   b. roofs   c. materials   d. parts

3. They stood under the building to .... themselves from the rain.

   a. help   b. protect   c. jump   d. walk

darsenglizy.com

4. When they finish their work, they .... back home before sunset.

a. return b. turn c. wave d. learn

5. He bought a new modern camera to take the best photos. He is a good ....

a. programmer b. photographer c. designer d. architect

6. Last summer, I went .... in the Red Sea.

a. diving b. riding c. climbing d. flying

7. WB I loved the fish, but I didn't see any whales at the ....

a. planetarium b. park c. aquarium d. garden

8. A teacher is a person .... teaches students.

a. when b. where c. who d. whose

9. How .... your day ? - It was nice.

a. were b. was c. be d. being

10. WB What .... the cities be like in the future ?

a. have b. had c. are d. will

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. There weren't **some** women in the party. (..........................)
2. My uncle is **oldest** than my father. (..........................)
3. You **must** write on the wall of the class. (..........................)
4. He reads English books a lot, **did** he ? (..........................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your future job"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

darsenglizy.com

Sample Test 15

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Lina talks about her ....
   a. birthday b. holiday c. weekend d. vocation
2. Lina's team .... the match.
   a. won b. lost c. got d. arrived
3. Lina watched a .... match.
   a. football b. basketball c. volleyball d. tennis
4. Lina watched the match ....
   a. on TV b. at school c. at the stadium d. at the park

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Manar asks Samya about her visit to Dalia last Friday.

Manar : Where were you last Friday ?
Samya : At Dalia's house.
Manar : Why did you visit Dalia ?
Samya : It was her (1) ....
Manar : (2) .... were there ?
Samya : All our (3) ....
Manar : How (4) .... is she ?
Samya : She's 12.
Manar : Did you give her a present ?
Samya : Yes, I (5) ....

Mr. Ahmed Sheta
معلم لغة إنجليزية

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Dear Grandma,

We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.

darsenglizy.com

Yesterday was an adventure day. **We** went trekking in the mountains. t was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top of the nountain, we saw dark clouds. On the way down, the rain started! Then there was a storm. The rocks were wet and Tamer fell over and hurt himself. But it's OK - his leg is better today.

Tomorrow, the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try zip lining! I'm a bit **frightened**, but I'm excited, too.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?
Holiday in South Africa.
2. Why do you think that they are enjoying their holiday in South Africa ?
Because it's beautiful and there are alot To do.
3. What happened to Tamer ?
He fell over and hurt himself.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**frightened**" means ....
a. afraid b. strong c. brave d. weak
5. The underlined pronoun "**We**" refers to ....
a. Tamer b. the writer
c. the writer and Tamer d. grandparents
6. There was a storm ....
a. before it rained b. after it rained
c. when it was sunny d. after Tamer fell over

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An .... shows places to tourists.
a. trainer b. guide c. driver d. adventurer
2. We sat by the fire to keep ourselves ....
a. angry b. hot c. warm d. cold
3. My new jumper is made of ....
a. wood b. wool c. plastic d. stone

darsenglizy.com

4. WB What will the cities be .... in the future ?
   a. love   b. want   c. like   d. give
5. My best .... is reading. I like it best.
   a. activity   b. study   c. hobby   d. trip
6. The .... is everything around us. We must keep it clean.
   a. environment   b. sea   c. planet   d. plant
7. Our neighbours are .... We like them a lot.
   a. worried   b. sad   c. friendly   d. nervous
8. .... did you feel at the end of the match ?
   a. When   b. How   c. Why   d. Who
9. SB People won't all .... electric cars.
   a. used   b. uses   c. using   d. use
10. WB When it is very cold, water .... into ice.
   a. turns   b. turning   c. turned   d. turn

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My uncle helped his daughter with her homework **tomorrow**. (yesterday)
2. Aswan is **hottest** than Cairo. (hotter)
3. Tomorrow, they will build the house **ourselves**. (themselves)
4. You must **listened** to others' ideas. (Listen)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A day you spent with your friends"

....

....

....

....

....

....

darsenglizy.com

٣. أهم الفقرات الإنشائية

III Important Paragraphs

- **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

يكتب الطالب موضوعًا إنشائيًا من ثمانين كلمة ويعتبر هذا السؤال من الأسئلة التى تحتاج إلى مزيد من التدريب ولذلك نقدم لك موضوعات إنشائية هامة لكل وحدة كما يمكنك مراجعة موضوعات أخرى بإجاباتها النموذجية فى نهاية كتاب الشرح.

Unit 7

1 "A new house"

Last month our family moved to a new house in Cairo. The house is big and has a nice garden. I liked it very much. My family planted some trees and flowers in the garden. I went to buy a new school uniform for my new school. People there were nice and kind. I made many new friends in the school. My best friend is called Ahmed. He was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen. I was very happy.

2 "Your last weekend"

My last weekend was fantastic. I went to Ahmed 's house on Sunday and we played football in the park. It was a lot of fun. We had lunch together. It was delicious. In the afternoon, we went to the sports centre. We played tennis. There was a really big swimming pool. We swam in it. We had a nice time at the sports centre. In the evening, we went shopping. I bought a T-shirt and shoes for my young sister.

3 "Music"

Music is very nice. I like music very much. There are many kinds of music like jazz, pop, rock and traditional. I like jazz music. I play the trumpet in a jazz band. When I was seven, I learned to play the piano. I like it too much. When I was ten, I learned the trumpet. I like the sound of the trumpet. I don't like pop or rock music. They are very loud. I want to be a musician one day. My favourite musician is Marvin Allstar.

darsenglizy.com

4

"Your day"

Yesterday was a terrible day for me. My baby sister woke me up at 5 a.m. I felt so tired. I went to the kitchen, but there was no milk or bread. I went to buy food, but the shops were all closed. I didn't do my homework because my laptop stopped working. I planned to have a barbecue but there was a lot of wind. In the evening, I went to the stadium to watch a football match. My team lost the match. I was very sad.

Unit 8

5

"The Tahya Masr Bridge"

Tahya Masr Bridge is the world 's widest suspension bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. More than 4.000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finished it in 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile 's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

6

"The Egyptian Museum"

The Egyptian Museum is the oldest museum in Cairo. It opened in 1835. There were more than 16,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum didn't have space for 100,000 other objects. So we needed a new bigger museum. In 2019, the Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors. It is further from the city centre than the old museum. But it is two km from the Pyramids at Giza. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance.

7

"A wonderful holiday"

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. We visited the Valley of the Kings in Luxor. It is one of the most popular places for tourists. We saw many of them there. The place is quiet in the early morning but it gets busier later

darsenglizy.com

during the day. The biggest place there is the Karnak Temple. There 's a nice and quiet place called Habu Temple. It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but it is less crowded. I liked it most.

Unit 9

"A future plan for holiday"

8

Next year, I am going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a great adventure. I'm going to go with my friends. We are going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families. We are going to have a guide to help us find the way and a camel to carry food and water. We are going to climb Mount Catherine. The journey is going to take me around forty five days.

9

"An adventure sport"

Last year, I went to South Africa with my family. It was beautiful there. Our first day was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. When we started, it was sunny. But when we reached the top of the mountain, there were dark clouds. After that, the rain began and there was a storm. The rocks were wet and my brother fell down and hurt himself. The following days, the weather was better. I went zip lining. I was a bit frightened, but I was excited.

Unit 10

10

"Deir el-Medina"

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt. The people in this village worked in the Valley of the Kings. The doors of their houses were made of wood and the walls were made of bricks. The people painted their houses white and the doors red. The houses had a kitchen and a living room. People slept on the roof because there weren't any bedrooms. It was very hot at night. They got their water from the Nile valley because there weren't any taps.

darsenglizy.com

11 "Technology in the future"

In the future, we will go to the moon for our holiday instead of the beach. There will be rockets that leave Earth every day. The rockets will be very fast, so the journey will take only around twelve hours. There will be also driverless cars. People will not drive a car. It will be safer. People will read a book or watch TV when the computer in the car drives it. There will be drones to bring food and parcels to the houses.

Unit 11

12 "Sea animals"

There are a lot of animals that live in the sea. Some sea animals are dangerous like sharks. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life. A stingray is a big, flat fish. When it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. Some sea animals are poisonous and sting you when you touch it like the jellyfish.

13 "Plastic"

Plastic is important ! We use it for many things. We must put the plastic in the trash bin. We mustn't throw plastic on the beaches. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. More than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. We must use other materials like paper and glass. Paper and glass are easier to recycle. We must do our best to save our planet.

14 "Planting a tree"

We plant trees to keep our environment clean. Trees make the air healthy. There are many steps to plant a tree. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot. Press your finger to make a hole and put the seed in the hole and cover it with

darsenglizy.com

soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. Water it every day but don't give it too much water.

15

"Nature reserve"

We have nature reserves to protect our birds, plants and animals. Many animals live here so we must be careful about what we do. We mustn't make a lot of noise. Noise makes animals feel frightened. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve because there are animals and birds that live in the plants next to the road. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. We must take all our rubbish with us when we leave.

Unit 12

16

"My dream job"

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He is an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines and engines. My uncle designs engines for planes. I like his job so much. I'd like to be an engineer one day. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard to achieve my dream. I want to get a good job and do many projects.

17

"A marine biologist's job"

A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it. He is good at science and he loves the ocean. The ocean has many animals that are really beautiful and interesting. So the marine biologist does many researches to help protect the plants and animals in the ocean. In his job, every day is different ! Some days, he goes diving around coral reefs. On other days, he tests water from the ocean in the laboratory.

darsenglizy.com